

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>1</b>	<b>Before driving</b>	Adjusting and operating features such as door locks, mirrors, and steering column.
<b>2</b>	<b>When driving</b>	Driving, stopping and safe-driving information.
<b>3</b>	<b>Interior features</b>	Air conditioning and audio systems, as well as other interior features for a comfortable driving experience.
<b>4</b>	<b>Maintenance and care</b>	Cleaning and protecting your vehicle, performing do-it-yourself maintenance, and maintenance information.
<b>5</b>	<b>When trouble arises</b>	What to do if the vehicle needs to be towed, gets a flat tire, or is involved in an accident.
<b>6</b>	<b>Vehicle specifications</b>	Detailed vehicle information.
<b>7</b>	<b>For owners</b>	Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners and seat belt instructions for Canadian owners
	<b>Index</b>	Alphabetical listing of information contained in this manual.

## 1 Before driving

- |   |     |   |     |
|---|-----|---|-----|
| 1-1. Key information .....  | 26  | 1-5. Refueling .....                                    | 105 |
| Keys .....  | 26  | Opening the fuel tank cap .....                         | 105 |
| 1-2. Opening, closing and locking<br>the doors .....                    | 30  | 1-6. Theft deterrent system .....                       | 108 |
| Smart access system with<br>push-button start .....                     | 30  | Engine immobilizer system .....                         | 108 |
| Wireless remote control .....   | 44  | Alarm .....   | 110 |
| Side doors .....  | 47  | Theft prevention labels .....                           | 113 |
| Back door .....   | 52  | 1-7. Safety information .....                           | 114 |
| 1-3. Adjustable components<br>(seats, mirrors, steering<br>wheel) ..... | 58  | Correct driving posture .....                           | 114 |
| Front seats .....   | 58  | SRS airbags .....                                       | 116 |
| Rear seats .....  | 60  | Front passenger occupant<br>classification system ..... | 131 |
| Driving position memory<br>system .....                                 | 77  | Child restraint systems .....                           | 137 |
| Head restraints .....   | 81  | Installing child restraints .....                       | 142 |
| Seat belts .....  | 85  |   |     |
| Steering wheel .....  | 94  |   |     |
| Anti-glare inside rear view<br>mirror .....                             | 96  |   |     |
| Outside rear view mirrors .....   | 97  |   |     |
| 1-4. Opening and closing the<br>windows and moon roof .....             | 100 |   |     |
| Power windows .....   | 100 |   |     |
| Moon roof .....   | 102 |   |     |

## 2 When driving

- |  |     |
|--|-----|
| 2-1. Driving procedures .....          | 156 |
| Driving the vehicle .....              | 156 |
| Engine (ignition) switch .....         | 166 |
| Automatic transmission .....           | 170 |
| Turn signal lever .....                | 175 |
| Parking brake .....                    | 176 |
| 2-2. Instrument cluster .....          | 177 |
| Gauges and meters .....                | 177 |
| Indicators and warning<br>lights ..... | 180 |
| Multi-information display .....        | 183 |

<b>2-3. Operating the lights and wipers.....</b>	<b>186</b>
Headlight switch.....	186
Fog light switch .....	189
Windshield wipers and washer.....	190
Rear window wiper and washer.....	193
Headlight cleaner switch .....	195
<b>2-4. Using other driving systems....</b>	<b>196</b>
Cruise control .....	196
Dynamic radar cruise control.....	200
Intuitive parking assist .....	211
Rear view monitor system.....	221
Wide view front & side monitor.....	224
4-Wheel AHC (Active Height Control Suspension).....	235
AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension).....	246
Four-wheel drive system.....	247
Crawl Control .....	254
Driving assist systems.....	258
Pre-Collision System.....	265

<b>2-5. Driving information .....</b>	<b>269</b>
Off-road precautions .....	269
Cargo and luggage.....	274
Vehicle load limits.....	281
Winter driving tips .....	282
Trailer towing.....	286
Dinghy towing .....	300

### **3 Interior features**

<b>3-1. Using the touch screen .....</b>	<b>304</b>
Touch screen .....	304
Setting the touch screen .....	307
<b>3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger .....</b>	<b>314</b>
Front air conditioning system.....	314
Rear air conditioning system.....	326
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers .....	330
Windshield wiper de-icer.....	331

<b>3-3. Using the audio system .....</b>	<b>332</b>	<b>3-4. Using the rear seat</b>	
Audio system type .....	332	<b>entertainment system.....</b>	<b>412</b>
Using the radio.....	335	Rear seat entertainment	
Using the CD/DVD player.....	344	system features .....	412
Playing an audio CD.....	347	Using the radio.....	420
Playing MP3 and		Using the DVD player .....	421
WMA discs.....	351	Playing an audio	
Playing DVD video/audio		CD/CD text.....	422
(with DVD player).....	355	Playing WMA/MP3 discs .....	423
Playing a video CD		Playing the HDD audio	
(with DVD player).....	368	(with navigation system).....	424
CD/DVD player and DVD		Playing DVD video/audio.....	425
video disc information.....	372	Playing a video CD.....	438
Optimal use of the audio/video		DVD player and DVD video	
system .....	382	disc information .....	442
Recording to the sound library		Using the video mode.....	444
(with DVD player).....	387	Changing other settings.....	446
Listening to a track recorded			
to the sound library		<b>3-5. Using the hands-free system</b>	
(with DVD player).....	392	<b>(for cellular phone).....</b>	<b>448</b>
Editing data recorded		Hands-free system	
to the sound library		(for cellular phone)	
(with DVD player).....	396	(without navigation	
Sound library information		system).....	448
(with DVD player).....	403	Using a Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> phone .....	453
Using the AUX adapter .....	407	Setting the hands-free system	
Using the steering wheel		(for cellular phone).....	468
audio switches .....	408		

**3-6. Using the interior lights ..... 494**

- Interior lights list..... 494
- Interior lights ..... 495
- Personal lights ..... 496
- Luggage compartment light..... 497

**3-7. Using the storage features.... 498**

- List of storage features..... 498
- Glove box ..... 499
- Console box/cool box..... 500
- Overhead console ..... 502
- Cup holders..... 503
- Bottle holders ..... 504
- Auxiliary boxes..... 506

**3-8. Other interior features ..... 508**

- Sun visors..... 508
- Vanity mirrors..... 509
- Clock..... 510
- Ashtrays ..... 512
- Cigarette lighters ..... 513
- Power outlets..... 514
- Climate control seats/seat heaters..... 516
- Armrest ..... 519
- Floor mat..... 520
- Luggage compartment features..... 521
- Garage door opener..... 523
- Lexus Link System ..... 529

**4 Maintenance and care**

**4-1. Maintenance and care ..... 544**

- Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior..... 544
- Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior ..... 547

**4-2. Maintenance ..... 550**

- Maintenance requirements .... 550
- General maintenance..... 552
- Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs ..... 555

**4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance ..... 556**

- Do-it-yourself service precautions..... 556
- Hood ..... 560
- Engine compartment..... 561
- Tires ..... 579
- Tire inflation pressure..... 588
- Wheels ..... 592
- Air conditioning filter..... 594
- Electronic key battery ..... 597
- Checking and replacing fuses..... 599
- Light bulbs..... 615

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

**5 When trouble arises**

**5-1. Essential information..... 628**  
 If your vehicle needs  
 to be towed..... 628  
 If you think something is  
 wrong ..... 634  
 Fuel pump shut off system ..... 635  
 Event data recorder ..... 636

**5-2. Steps to take in an  
 emergency..... 638**  
 If a warning light turns on or a  
 warning buzzer sounds... ..... 638  
 If a warning message is  
 displayed..... 648  
 If you have a flat tire..... 651  
 If the engine will not start ..... 664  
 If the shift lever cannot be  
 shifted from P ..... 666  
 If you lose your keys ..... 667  
 If you cannot operate  
 back door opener ..... 668  
 If the electronic key does not  
 operate properly ..... 669  
 If the battery is discharged ..... 672  
 If your vehicle overheats ..... 676  
 If the vehicle becomes stuck ... 679

**6 Vehicle specifications**

**6-1. Specifications ..... 682**  
 Maintenance data  
 (fuel, oil level, etc.)..... 682  
 Fuel information..... 692  
 Tire information..... 695

**6-2. Customization ..... 706**  
 Customizable features..... 706

**6-3. Initialization ..... 712**  
 Items to initialize ..... 712

**7 For owners**

Reporting safety defects  
 for U.S. owners..... 714  
 Seat belt instructions for  
 Canadian owners  
 (in French)..... 715

## Index

Abbreviation list ..... 718

Alphabetical index ..... 720

What to do if..... 730

1

2

3

4

5

6

7





\*: If equipped

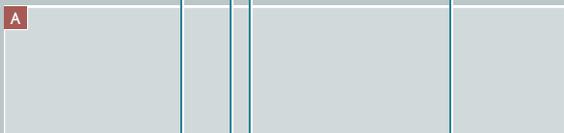
Head restraints P. 81

Seat belts P. 85

Power window switches P. 100

SRS driver airbag P. 116

SRS front passenger airbag P. 116



Ashtray P. 512



Armrest P. 519

Rear seats P. 60

Rear air conditioning controls P. 326

Floor mat P. 520

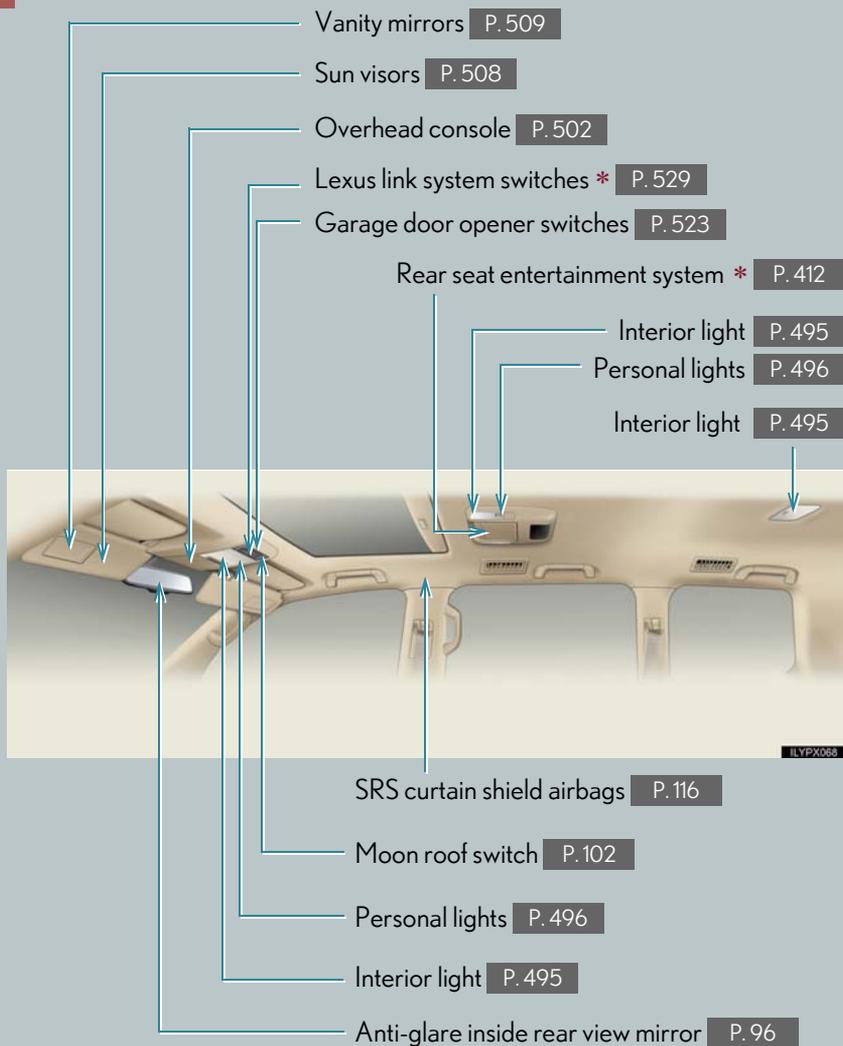
Front seats P. 58

SRS side airbags P. 116

Console box P. 500

Cool box \* P. 501

A



\*: If equipped

B

Driving position memory switches P. 77



Door lock switch P. 47

Power window switches P. 100

Window lock switch P. 100

C

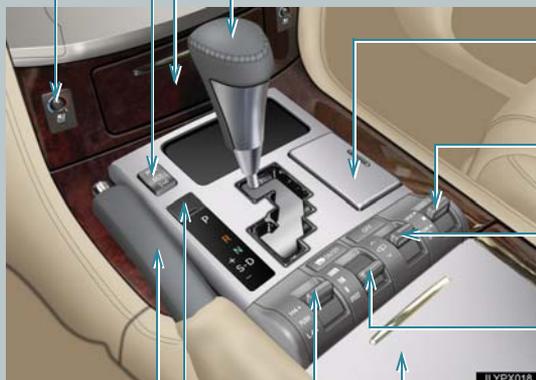
Climate control seats/seat heaters \* P. 516

ECT switch P. 171

Ashtray P. 512

Cigarette lighter P. 513

Shift lever P. 170



AUX adapter P. 407

Power outlet P. 514

Damping mode select switch P. 246

Height select switch P. 235

Crawl Control switch P. 254

Cup holders P. 503

Four-wheel drive control switch P. 247

Shift lock override button P. 666

Parking brake lever P. 176

\*: If equipped

- Headlight switch P. 186
- Turn signal lever P. 175
- Fog light switch P. 189

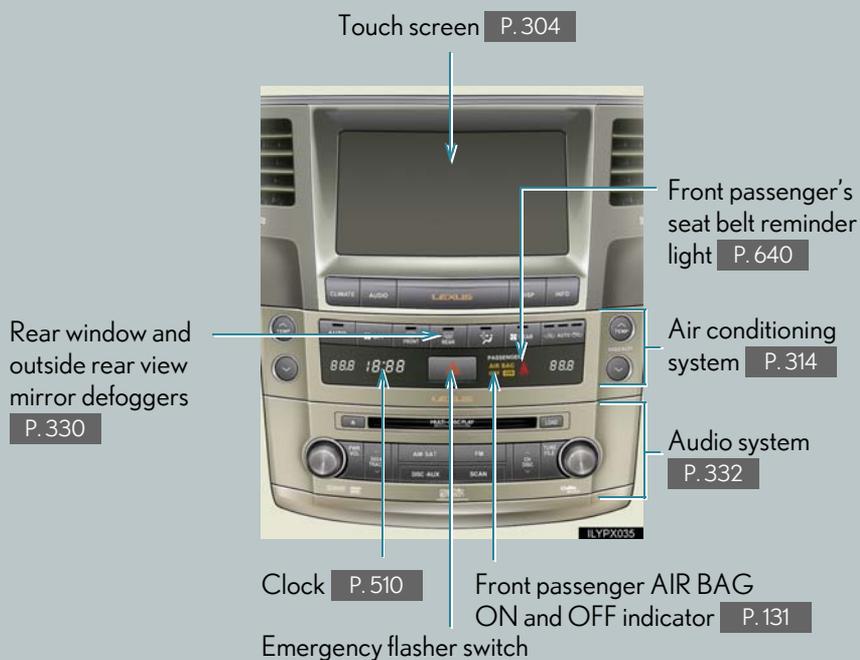
- Gauges and meters P. 177
- Multi-information display P. 183
- Windshield wipers and washer switch P. 190
- Rear window wiper and washer switch P. 193
- Glove box P. 499



- SRS knee airbags P. 116
- Tire pressure warning reset switch P. 581
- Hood opener P. 560
- Fuel filler door opener P. 105
- Bottle holder P. 504

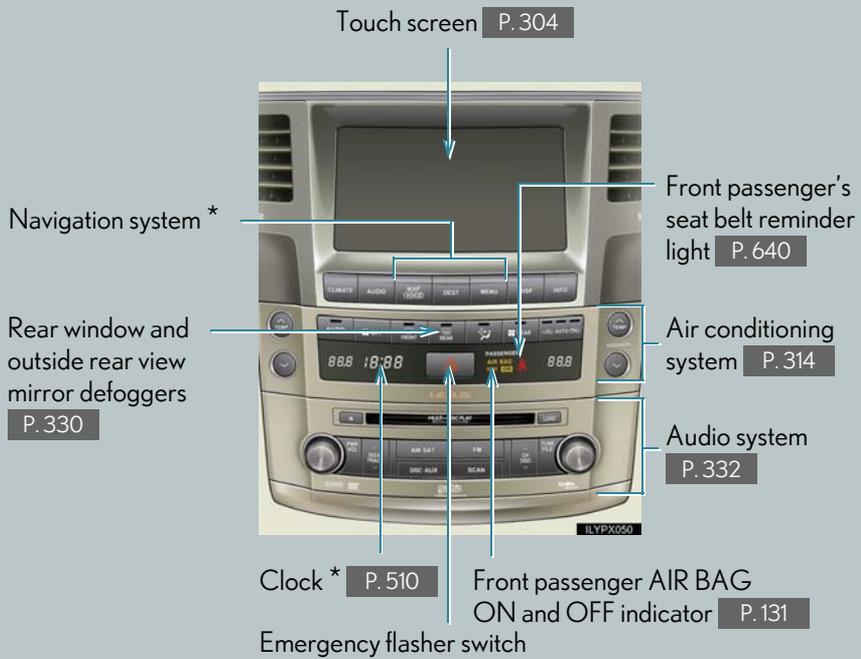
**A**

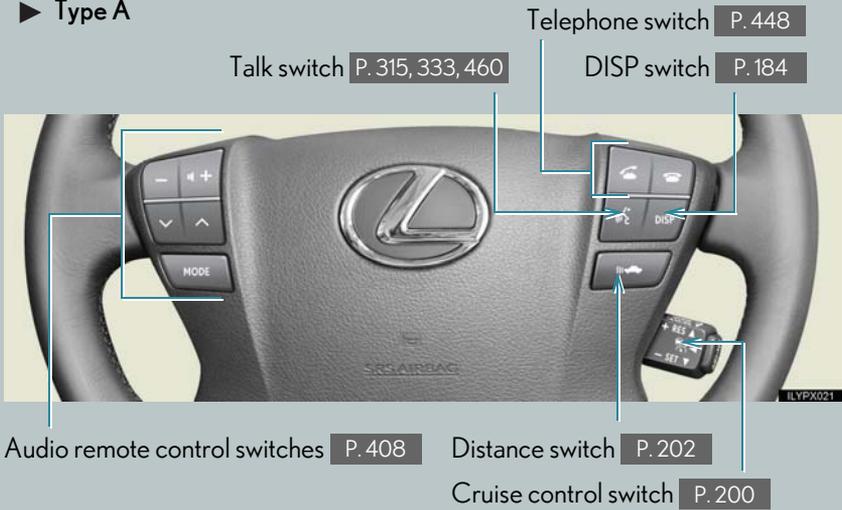
► Without navigation system



**A**

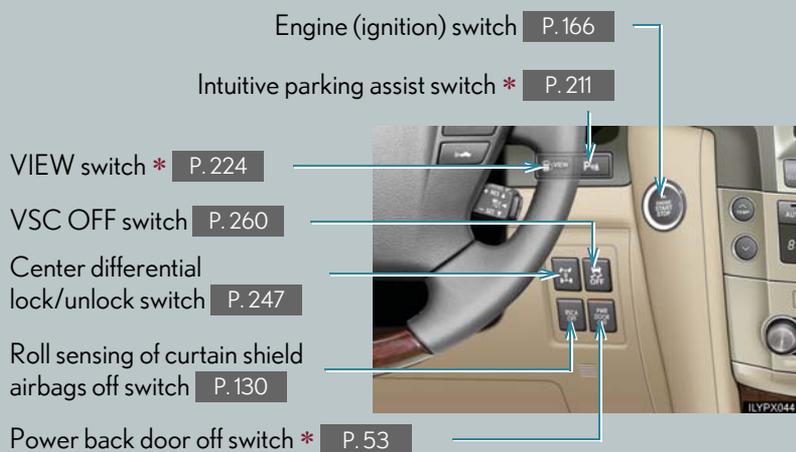
► With navigation system



**B****► Type A****► Type B**

\*: Refer to "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

C



D

Headlight cleaner switch \* P.195

Instrument panel light control P.178

Odometer/trip meter and trip meter reset button P.178



Tilt and telescopic steering control switch P.94

Power back door switch \* P.53

AFS OFF switch P.187

Auxiliary box P.506

Easy access mode switch P.238

Power outlet main switch P.514

Outside rear view mirror control switches P.97

\*: If equipped

Head restraint angle lever P. 82

Seatback handles P. 66



Power outlet P. 514

Tools P. 651

Seatback angle lever P. 60

Warning reflector holder P. 521

**A**

► With manual switches



Third seat tumbling switch P. 71

Third seat table mode switch P. 71

Third seat lock release lever P. 71

► With automatic switches



Third seat return switch P. 65

Third seat tumbling switch P. 65

Third seat table mode switch P. 65

Luggage compartment light P. 497

## For your information

### Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustration may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

### Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

A wide variety of non-genuine spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available in the market. You should know that Toyota does not warrant these products and is not responsible for their performance, repair, or replacement, or for any damage they may cause to, or adverse effect they may have on, your Lexus vehicle.

This vehicle should not be modified with non-genuine Lexus products. Modification with non-genuine Lexus products could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under warranty.

### Installation of a mobile two-way radio system

As the installation of a mobile two-way radio system in your vehicle may affect electronic systems such as the multi-port fuel injection system/sequential multi-port fuel injection system, cruise control system, dynamic radar cruise control system, anti-lock brake system, SRS airbag system and seat belt pretensioner system, be sure to check with your Lexus dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation.

## Scrapping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by your Lexus dealer before you scrap your vehicle.

## Perchlorate Material

Special handling may apply, See [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate). Your vehicle has components that may contain perchlorate. These components may include airbag, seat belt pretensioners, and wireless remote control batteries.

### CAUTION

#### ■ General precautions while driving

**Driving under the influence:** Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that will hurt or kill you, your occupants or others.

**Defensive driving:** Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

**Driver distraction:** Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

#### ■ General precautions regarding children's safety

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the cigarette lighter, the windows, the moon roof, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

## Symbols used throughout this manual

### Cautions & Notices

#### CAUTION

This is a warning against anything which may cause injury to people if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to reduce the risk of injury to yourself and others.

#### NOTICE

This is a warning against anything which may cause damage to the vehicle or its equipment if the warning is ignored. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to your Lexus and its equipment.

### Symbols used in illustrations



#### Safety symbol

The symbol of a circle with a slash through it means “Do not”, “Do not do this”, or “Do not let this happen”.



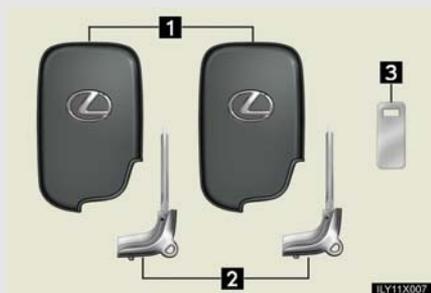
#### Arrows indicating operations

-  Indicates the action (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.
-  Indicates the outcome of an operation (e.g. a lid opens).

## 1-1. Key information

# Keys

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.



### 1 Electronic keys

- Operating the smart access system with push-button start (→P. 30)
- Operating the wireless remote control function (→P. 44)

### 2 Mechanical keys

### 3 Key number plate

## ■ Card key (if equipped)



### 1 Electronic key

Operating the smart access system with push-button start (→P. 30)

### 2 Mechanical keys

The card key comes with an information card that includes instructions for use, Lexus recommends that you carry the information card with the card key.

## Using the mechanical key



### Take out the mechanical key.

The mechanical key can only be inserted in one direction, as the key only has grooves on one side. If the key cannot be inserted in a lock cylinder, turn it over and re-attempt to insert it.

After using the mechanical key, store it in the electronic key. Carry the mechanical key together with the electronic key. If the electronic key battery is depleted or the smart access system with push-button start does not operate properly, you will need the mechanical key. (→P.669)

1

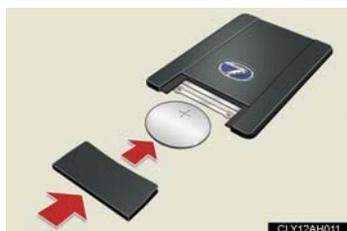
Before driving

### ■ Card key

- The mechanical key that is stored inside the card key should be used only in an emergency, such as when the key does not operate properly.
- If it is difficult to take out the mechanical key, push down the lock release button using a pen tip etc. If it is difficult to pull it out, use a coin etc.



- To store the mechanical key in the card key, insert it inside while pressing the lock release button.



- If the battery cover is not installed and the battery falls out or if the battery was removed because the key got wet, reinstall the battery with the positive terminal facing the Lexus emblem.

- The card key is not waterproof.

### ■ Key number plate

Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle. In the event that a key is lost, a new mechanical key can be made by your Lexus dealer, using the key number plate. (→P. 667)

 NOTICE

### ■ To prevent key damage

Observe the following:

- Do not drop the keys, subject them to strong shocks or bend them.
- Do not expose the keys to high temperatures for a long period of time.
- Do not get the keys wet or wash them in a ultrasonic washer etc.
- Do not attach metallic or magnetic materials to the keys or place the keys close to such materials.
- Do not disassemble the keys.
- Do not place the key near objects that produce magnetic fields, such as TVs, audio systems, glass top ranges, or medical electrical equipment, such as low-frequency therapy equipment.

### ■ Precautions for handling the card keys

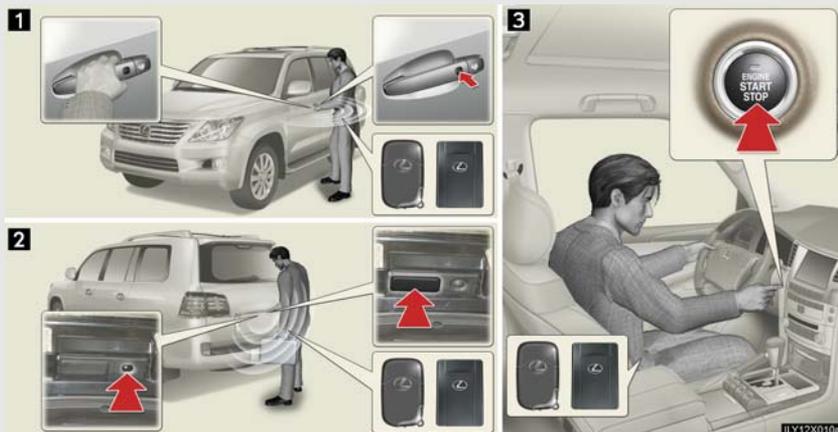
- Do not apply excess force when inserting the mechanical key to the card key. Doing so may damage the card key.
- If the battery or card key terminals get wet, the battery may corrode. If the key is dropped into water, or if drinking water etc. is spilled on the key, immediately remove the battery cover and wipe the battery and terminals. (To remove the battery cover, lightly grasp it and pull.) If the battery is corroded, by your Lexus dealer, replace the battery.
- Do not crush the battery cover or use a screwdriver to remove the battery cover. Forcibly removing the battery cover may bend or damage the key.
- If the battery cover is frequently removed, the cover may become loose.
- When installing the battery, make sure to check the direction of the battery. Installing the battery in the wrong direction may cause the battery to deplete rapidly.
- The surface of the card key may be damaged, or its coating may peel off in the following situations:
  - The card key is carried together with hard objects, such as coins or keys.
  - The card key is scraped with a sharp objects, such as a tip of mechanical pencil.
  - The surface of the card key is wiped with thinners or benzene.

## 1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

# Smart access system with push-button start

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key on your person, for example in your pocket.

(The driver should always carry the electronic key.)



**1** Locks and unlocks the doors (→P. 31)

**2** Locks and unlocks the doors (→P. 31)

**3** Starts and stops the engine (→P. 166)

## Locking and unlocking the doors

### ▶ Side door handle



Press the lock button to lock the doors.

Pressing and holding the button closes the windows and moon roof.



Grip the handle to unlock the doors.

Make sure to touch the sensor on the back of the handle.

The door cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the door is locked.

### ▶ Back door handle



Press the lock button to lock the doors.

1

Before driving

## 1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors



Press the unlock button to unlock the doors.

The door cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the door is locked.

Lock the back door again when you leave the vehicle. The back door will not lock automatically after it has been opened and then closed.

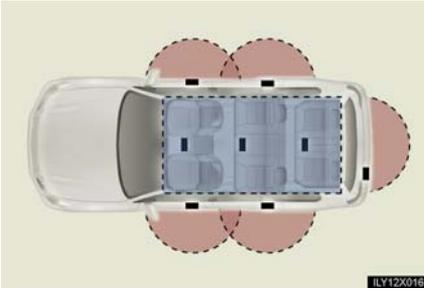
## Antenna location and effective range

### ■ Antenna location



- 1 Antennas outside cabin
- 2 Antennas inside cabin
- 3 Antenna outside luggage compartment

## ■ Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected)



- When locking or unlocking the doors

The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 2.3 ft. (0.7 m) of an outside door handle. (Only the doors detecting the key can be operated.)

- When starting the engine or changing “ENGINE START STOP” switch modes

The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

1

Before driving

## ■ Operation signals

- Door: A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)
- Windows and moon roof: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the windows and moon roof are closing.

## ■ Door lock buzzer

If a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously if an attempt to lock the door is made. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

### ■ Conditions affecting operation

The smart access system with push-button start uses weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the smart access system with push-button start, wireless remote control and engine immobilizer system from operating properly. (Way of coping: →P. 669)

- When the electronic key battery is depleted
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication devices
- When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic object
  - Card to which aluminum foil is attached
  - Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
  - Metallic wallets or bags
  - Coins
  - Hand warmers made of metal
  - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When multiple electronic keys are in the vicinity
- When other wireless keys (that emit radio waves) are being used nearby
- When carrying or using the electronic key together with the following devices that emit radio waves
  - Another vehicle's electronic key or a wireless key that emits radio waves
  - Personal computers or personal digital assistants (PDAs)
  - Digital audio players
  - Portable game systems
- If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window

### ■ Switching the door unlock function

If it is possible to set which doors the entry function unlocks using the wireless remote control.

**STEP 1** Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.

**STEP 2** When the indicator on the key surface is turned off, press and hold  for approximately 5 seconds while pressing  on the key.

The setting changes each time an operation is performed, as shown below. (When changing the setting continuously, release the buttons, wait for at least 5 seconds, and repeat step 2.)

Multi-information display	Unlocking function	Beep
	Hold the driver's door handle to unlock only the driver's door.	Exterior: Beeps three times Interior: Rings once
	Hold either door handle to unlock all doors.	Exterior: Beeps twice Interior: Rings once

**STEP 3** Unlock the doors using the wireless remote control and open one of the doors.

If a door is not opened within 60 seconds after  is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set. In case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P. 111)

### ■ Battery-saving function

In the following circumstances, the entry function is disabled in order to prevent the vehicle and electronic key batteries from discharging.

- When the entry function has not been used for 2 weeks or more
- When the electronic key has been left within approximately 3 ft. (1 m) of the vehicle for 10 minutes or more

The system will resume operation when...

- The vehicle is locked using the door handle lock switch.
- The vehicle is locked/unlocked using the wireless remote control function (→P. 44) or the mechanical key. (→P. 669)

### ■ Electronic key battery depletion

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years.  
(The card key battery life is about a year and a half.)
- The battery becomes depleted even if the electronic key is not used because the key always transmits radio waves. If the smart access system with push-button start or the wireless remote control function does not operate, or the detection area becomes smaller, the battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary. (→P. 597)
- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key within 3 ft. (1 m) of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field:
  - TVs
  - Personal computers
  - Cellular phones, cordless phones and battery chargers
  - Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
  - Glass top ranges
  - Table lamps

### ■ To operate the system properly

Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.

Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention may not function.)

### ■ Note for the entry function

- Even when the electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases.
  - The electronic key is too close to the window or outside door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
  - The electronic key is near the ground or in a high place, or too close to the rear bumper center when the back door is locked or unlocked.
  - The electronic key is on the instrument panel, luggage cover, floor or in the glove box when the engine is started or “ENGINE START STOP” switch modes are changed.
- As long as the electronic key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by anyone.
- Even if the electronic key is not inside the vehicle, it may be possible to start the engine if the electronic key is near the window.
- The doors may unlock if a large amount of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash. (The doors will automatically be locked after approximately 60 seconds if the doors are not opened and closed.)
- Gripping the door handle when wearing a glove may not unlock the door.
- If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the entry function. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)
- A sudden approach to the effective range or door handle operation may prevent the doors from being unlocked. In this case, return the door handle to the original position and check that the doors unlock before pulling the door handle.

### ■ When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods

To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 6 ft. (2 m) of the vehicle.

### ■ Security feature

If a door is not opened within approximately 60 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the security feature automatically locks the vehicle again.

### ■ Alarms and warning indicators

A combination of exterior and interior alarms as well as warnings displayed on the multi-information display are used to prevent theft of the vehicle and unforeseeable accidents resulting from erroneous operation. Perform the appropriate correction procedure described in the following table.

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Exterior alarm sounds once for 2 seconds	An attempt was made to lock the doors using the entry function while the electronic key was still inside the passenger compartment	Retrieve the electronic key from the passenger compartment and lock the doors again
Exterior alarm sounds once for 60 seconds	An attempt was made to exit the vehicle and lock the doors without first turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF	Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and lock the doors again
Exterior alarm sounds once for 10 seconds	An attempt was made to lock the vehicle while a door is open	Close all of the doors and lock the doors again

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Interior alarm pings continuously <sup>*1</sup>	The “ENGINE START STOP” switch was turned to ACCESSORY mode while the driver’s door was open (or the driver’s door was opened while the “ENGINE START STOP” switch was in ACCESSORY mode)	Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF and close the driver’s door
	The “ENGINE START STOP” switch was turned OFF while the driver’s door was open	Close the driver’s door
Interior alarm sounds continuously <sup>*1</sup>	When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON or ACCESSORY mode, an attempt was made to open the door and exit the vehicle, and the shift lever was not in “P”	Shift the shift lever to “P” and turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF
Interior and exterior alarms sound continuously <sup>*1</sup>	When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON or ACCESSORY mode, the driver’s door was closed after the key was carried outside the vehicle, and the shift lever not in “P”	Shift the shift lever to “P”, turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF and close the driver’s door again

## 1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Interior alarm pings once <sup>*1</sup>	The electronic key has a low battery	Replace the electronic key battery
	An attempt was made to start the engine without the electronic key being present, or the electronic key was not functioning normally	Start the engine with the electronic key present <sup>*2</sup>
Interior alarm pings once and exterior alarm sounds 3 times <sup>*1</sup>	The driver's door was closed after the key was carried outside the vehicle, and the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was not turned OFF	Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and close the driver's door again
	An occupant carried the electronic key outside the vehicle and closed the door while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was not OFF	Bring the electronic key back into the vehicle

\*1: A message will be shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.

\*2: If the engine does not start when the electronic key is inside the vehicle, the electronic key battery may be depleted or there may be difficulties receiving signal from the key. (→P. 34)

### ■ If the smart access system with push-button start does not operate properly

- Locking and unlocking the doors: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 669)
- Starting the engine: →P. 670

### ■ When the electronic key battery is fully depleted

→P. 597

### ■ Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer

Settings (e.g. smart access system with push-button start) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 706)

■ Certification for the smart access system with push-button start

▶ U.S.A.

FCC ID:NI4TMLF-5

NOTE:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**TCB**

**GRANT OF EQUIPMENT  
AUTHORIZATION**

**TCB**

**Certification  
Issued Under the Authority of the  
Federal Communications Commission  
By:**

**PHOENIX TESTLAB GmbH  
Koenigswinkel 10  
D-32825 Blomberg,  
Germany**

**Date of Grant: 10/05/2006  
Application Dated: 10/05/2006**

**Toyota Motor Corporation  
1, Toyota-Cho  
Toyota Aichi, 471-71  
Japan**

**Attention: Kazunori Sakai , General Manager**

**NOT TRANSFERABLE**

**EQUIPMENT AUTHORIZATION is hereby issued to the named GRANTEE,  
and is VALID ONLY for the equipment identified hereon for use under the  
Commission's Rules and Regulations listed below.**

**FCC IDENTIFIER: N14TMLF-5**

**Name of Grantee: Toyota Motor Corporation**

**Equipment Class: Part 15 Low Power Transmitter Below 1705 kHz**

**Notes: Smart LF Oscillator**

<b>Grant Notes</b>	<b>FCC Rule Parts</b>	<b>Frequency Range (MHZ)</b>	<b>Output Watts</b>	<b>Frequency Tolerance</b>	<b>Emission Designator</b>
	<b>15C</b>	<b>0.1342 - 0.1342</b>			

## ► Canada

## NOTE:

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

 **CAUTION**
**■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices**

- People with implanted pacemakers or cardiac defibrillators should keep away from the smart access system with push-button start antennas. (→P. 33)

The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. If necessary, smart access system with push-button start can be disabled. Ask your Lexus dealer for details, such as the frequency of radio waves and timing of emitting the radio waves. Then, consult your doctor to see if you should disable smart access system with push-button start.

- User of any electrical medical device other than implanted pacemakers and implanted cardiac defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves.

Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

Ask your Lexus dealer for details for disabling smart access system with push-button start.

## 1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

### Wireless remote control

The wireless remote control can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle.



- 1 Locks all doors
- 2 Unlocks all doors
- 3 Opens the windows and moon roof (press and hold)
- 4 Opens/closes the back door\* (press and hold)
- 5 Sounds alarm (press and hold) (→P. 112)

\*:If equipped

## ■ 2-step unlocking function

When you push the  button, the driver's door is unlocked. Pushing the button again within 3 seconds unlocks the other doors.

## ■ Operation signals

Doors: A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

Windows and moon roof: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the windows and moon roof are opening.

## ■ Door lock buzzer

→P. 33

## ■ Alarm

Using the wireless remote control to lock the door will set the alarm system.

## ■ Electronic key battery depletion

→P. 36

## ■ Security feature

→P. 38

## ■ If the wireless remote control does not operate properly

● Locking and unlocking the doors: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 669)

● Starting the engine: →P. 670

## ■ When the electronic key battery is fully depleted

→P. 597

## ■ Conditions affecting operation

→P. 34

## ■ Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer

Settings (e.g. unlocking function) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 707)

### ■ Certification for wireless remote control

#### ► U.S.A.

FCC ID:HYQ14AAB FCC ID:HYQ13BZS FCC ID:HYQ14ABB
---

#### NOTE:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

#### NOTICE:

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

#### FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

#### ► Canada

#### NOTE:

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

## 1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

### Side doors

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the entry function, wireless remote control or door lock switch.

#### ■ Entry function

→P. 31

#### ■ Wireless remote control

→P. 44

#### ■ Door lock switch



- 1 Locks all doors
- 2 Unlocks all doors

#### ■ Inside lock button



- 1 Locks the door
- 2 Unlocks the door

The driver's door can be opened by pulling the inside handle even if the lock button is in the lock position.

### Locking the driver's door from the outside without a key

**STEP 1** Move the inside lock button to the lock position.

**STEP 2** Close the door while pulling the door handle.

The door cannot be locked if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

The key may not be detected correctly and the door may be locked.

### Rear door child-protector lock



The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the locks are set.

These locks can be set to prevent children from opening the rear doors. Push down on each rear door switch to lock both rear doors.

## Automatic door locking and unlocking systems

The following functions can be set or canceled:

Function	Operation
Shift position linked door locking function	Shifting the shift lever out of "P" locks all doors.
Shift position linked door unlocking function	Shifting the shift lever to "P" unlocks all doors.
Speed linked door locking function	All doors are locked when the vehicle speed is approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) or higher.
Driver's door linked door unlocking function	All doors are unlocked when the driver's door is opened within 10 seconds after turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.

1

Before driving

### ■ Setting and canceling the functions

To switch between setting and canceling, follow the procedure below:

**STEP 1** Close all the doors and switch the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode. (Perform step 2 within 20 seconds.)



Shift the shift lever to "P" or "N", and press and hold the driver's door lock switch (1 or 2) for approximately 5 seconds then release.

The shift lever and switch positions corresponding to the desired function to be set or canceled are shown as follows:

Function	Shift lever position	Switch position
Shift position linked door locking function	"P"	1
Shift position linked door unlocking function		2
Speed linked door locking function	"N"	1
Driver's door linked door unlocking function		2

When the setting or canceling operation is complete, all doors are locked and then unlocked.

---

### ■ Using the mechanical key

The doors can also be locked and unlocked with the mechanical key. (→P. 669)

### ■ Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer

Settings (e.g. unlocking function using a key) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 706)

 **CAUTION****■ To prevent an accident**

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.

Failing to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant falling out, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Always use a seat belt.
- Always lock all doors.
- Ensure that all doors are properly closed.
- Do not pull the inside handle of the driver's door while driving.  
The doors will open even if it is locked.
- Set the rear door child protector locks when children are seated in the rear seat.

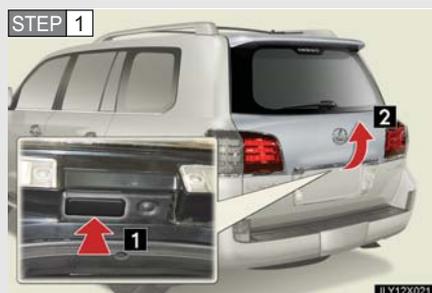
## 1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors

### Back door

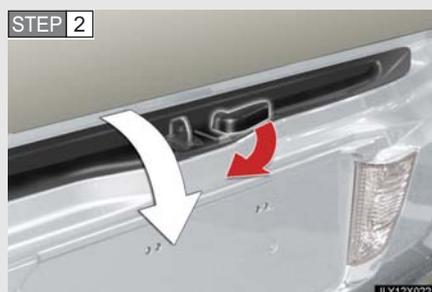
The back door can be opened using the back door opener.

The back door can be locked and unlocked using the entry function, wireless remote control or door lock switch.

#### ■ Back door opener



- 1 Unlocks the back door
- 2 Raise the back door



#### ■ Entry function

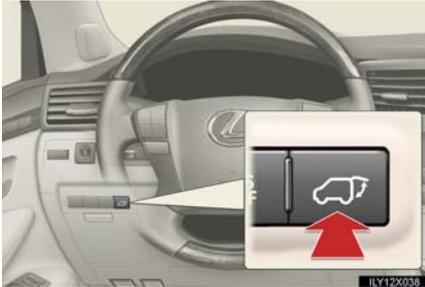
→P. 30

#### ■ Wireless remote control

→P. 44

## Power back door (if equipped)

### ▶ Instrument panel



The power back door can be opened/closed using the power back door switch or wireless remote control. (→P. 44)

Push and hold the switch to close or open. (A buzzer sounds.)

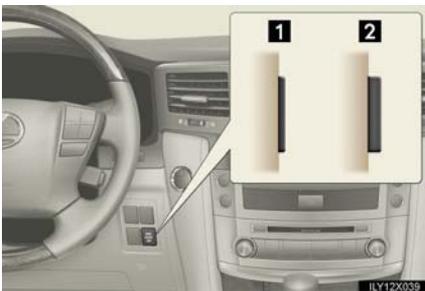
### ▶ Back door



Pressing the switch closes upper back door automatically. (A buzzer sounds)

Pressing the switch while the upper back door is closing opens it again.

## Canceling the power back door system (if equipped)



Turn the main switch to disable the power back door system.

- 1** Inoperative
- 2** Operative

The back door cannot be operated even with the wireless remote control or power back door switch.

### Rear step bumper



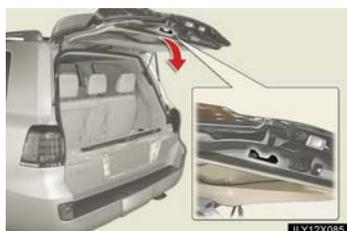
The rear step bumper is for rear end protection and easier step-up loading.

#### ■ The power back door can be opened/closed when

- The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode, and the shift lever is in P, and lower side of the back door is closed.
- The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in OFF or ACCESSORY mode, and lower side of the back door is closed.

#### ■ When closing the back door

- Make sure that the lower side of the back door is closed before closing the upper side of the back door.



- Lower the back door using the back door handle, and make sure to push the back door down from the outside to close it.
- The buzzer sounds once when the power back door closer begins to close the lower side of the back door.

#### ■ If the back door opener is inoperative

→P. 668

### ■ Jam protection function (vehicle with power back door)

- If anything obstructs the power back door while it is closing/opening, the back door will automatically operate in the opposite direction.
- If the lower back door is opened while the upper back door is in a closing operation, it automatically opens again.

### ■ If the power back door does not work

The back door must be initialized. To initialize, close the back door completely by hand.

### ■ Back door closer (vehicle with power back door)

In the event that upper side and lower side of the back door are left slightly open, the back door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position.

### ■ Fall-down protection function (vehicle with power back door)

While the power back door is opening automatically, applying excessive force to it will stop the opening operation to prevent the power back door from rapidly falling down.

### ■ Customization that can be configured at Lexus dealer

Settings (e.g. switch operation) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 708)

## CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.  
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

### ■ While driving

- Keep the back door closed.  
This not only keeps personal belongings from being thrown out, but also prevents exhaust gases from entering the vehicle.
- Do not get on the rear step bumper.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Operating the power back door

- Check to make sure that passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught or hit when the back door is being operated
- Careful attention is needed so as not to get your fingers trapped as the back door automatically closes when it has not been fully closed.
- Do not allow children to operate the back door.  
Closing the back door on someone can cause serious injury, and in some instances, even death.

#### ■ Jam protection function (vehicles with power back door)

- Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the back door is fully closed.

#### ■ Back door closer (vehicle with power back door)



When the back door is not completely closed, the back door easy closer will automatically close it. Be careful not to catch your fingers or anything else in the back door. Failure to do so may result in a serious injury.

The warning label is on the back door.

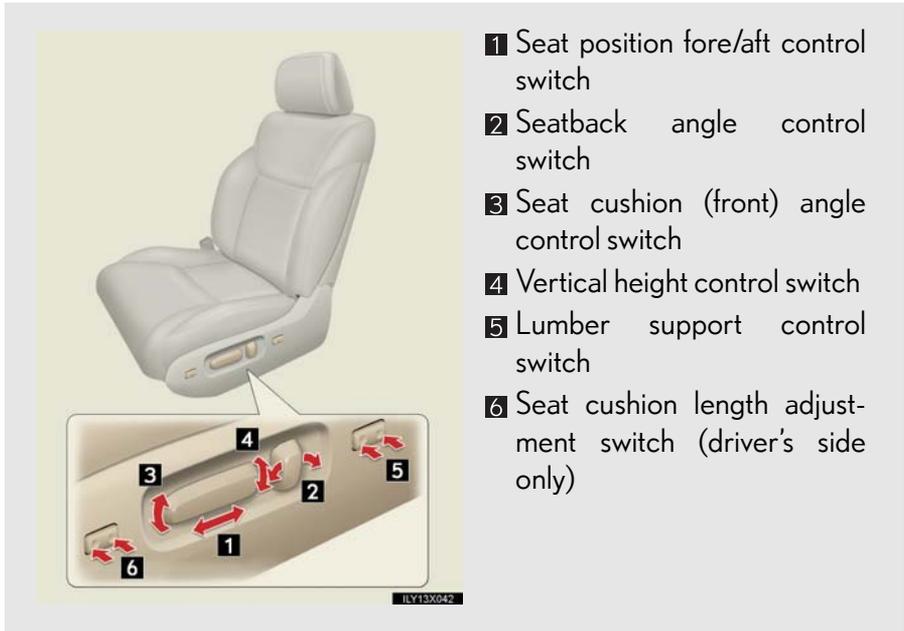
 NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the back door components**

- Do not apply force to the back door dumpers and keep the dumpers free of paint and other foreign matter.
- Make sure there is nothing in the doorway before closing.
- Do not allow more than one person to get on the rear step bumper at a time.

## 1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

### Front seats



### Active head restraint



When a front seatback receives a strong impact, the head restraint moves slightly forward and upward to help reduce the risk of whiplash on the seat occupant.

■ **Active head restraint**

Even small forces applied to the seatback may cause the head restraint to move. This does not indicate a problem.

 **CAUTION**

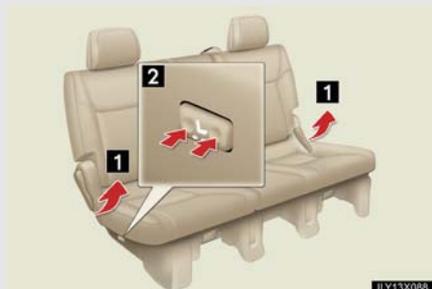
■ **Seat adjustment**

- Be careful that the seat does not hit passengers or luggage.
- Do not recline the seat more than necessary when the vehicle is in motion to reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt.  
If the seat is too reclined, during an accident the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury.

## 1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

### Rear seats

#### ► Second seat



**1** Seatback angle adjustment lever

**2** Seat position adjustment switch

#### ► Third seat



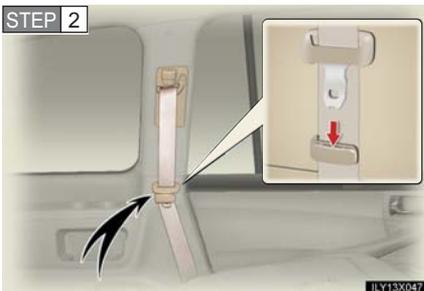
## Tumbling the second seats and third seat entry

For easy access to the third seat, perform **STEP 1** in “Tumbling the second seats” (→P.62).

### ■ Before tumbling second seats



Stow the seat belt buckles and lower the head restraints to the lowest position.



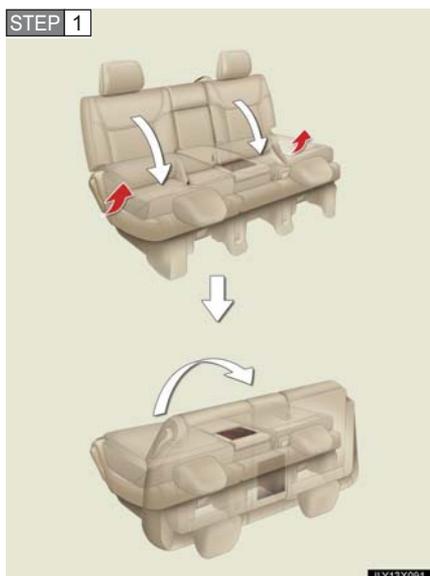
Pass the outer seat belts through the seat belt hangers and secure the seat belt plates.

This prevents the shoulder belt from being damaged.

Make sure that the seat belts are removed from the hangers before using them.

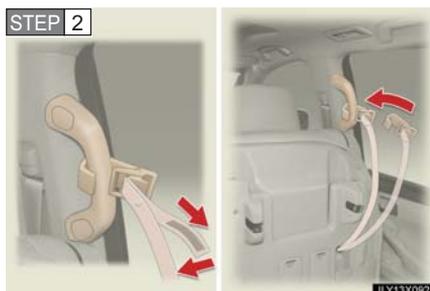
## ■ Tumbling the second seats

STEP 1



Fold down the seatback while pulling the seatback angle adjustment lever, and swing the whole seat up and forward.

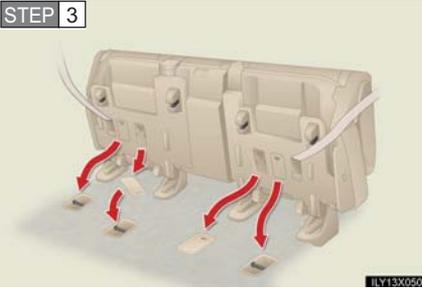
STEP 2



Hook the holding strap to the assist grip and secure the seat by pulling its free end.

When returning the second seat to its original position, stow the holding strap.

STEP 3



Remove the seat hook covers from the back of the seat cushion, and install them on the seat hooks.

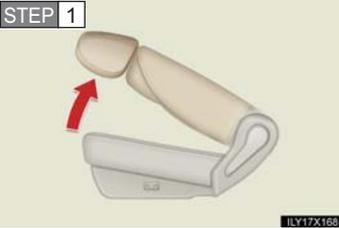
When returning the second seat to its original position, remove the seat hook covers from the floor and install them in the back of the seat cushion.

1

Before driving

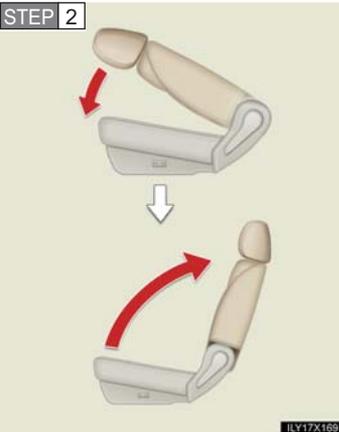
■ If you cannot raise the left side seatback

STEP 1



Lift the seat back until it stops.

STEP 2

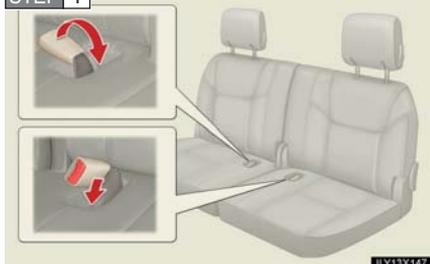


Lower the seat back a little then lift it again.

## Folding the third seats (Automatic type)

### ■ Before folding the third seats

STEP 1

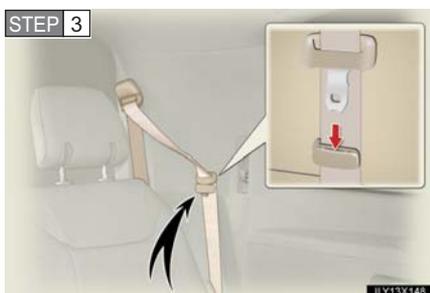


Stow the seat belts buckles.

STEP 2

Stow the center head restraint in the seat back. (→P. 84)

STEP 3



Pass the outer seat belts through the seat belt hangers and secure the seat belt plates.

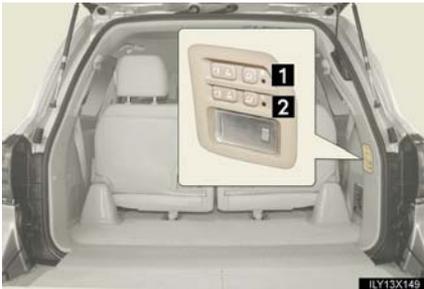
This prevents the shoulder belt from being damage.

Make sure that the seat belts are removed from the hangers before using them.

STEP 4

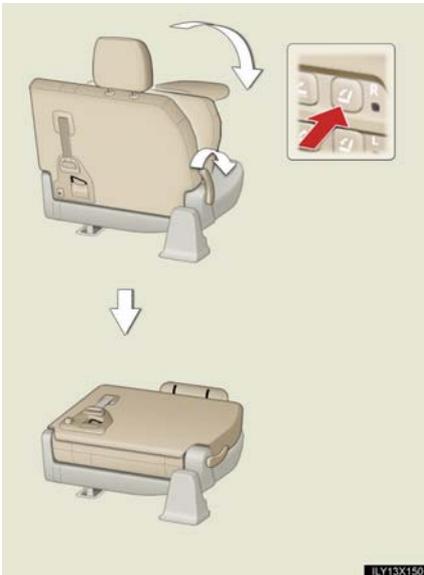
Stow the center seat belt tabs in the cover set in the roof. (→P. 87)

### ■ Folding the third seats



1 For right side

2 For left side



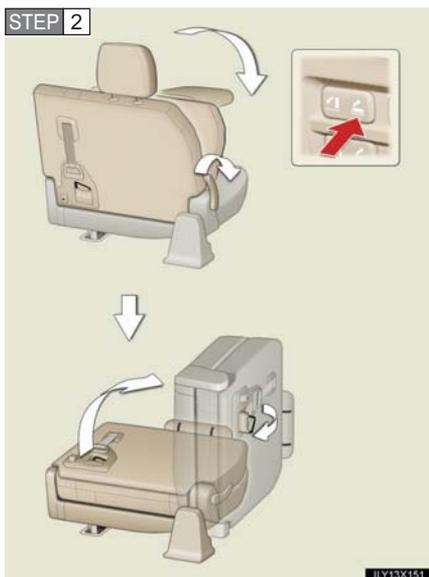
The seat will automatically fold when the switch is pressed.

1

Before driving

## ■ Tumbling the third seats

**STEP 1** Perform following steps in “Before folding the third seats”.  
(→P. 64)



If the switch is pressed and held, the seat will automatically fold and lift sideward. (The buzzer sounds twice when the seat is about to lift.)

If the switch is released while the seat is lifting sideward, operation will stop and a buzzer will sound continuously.

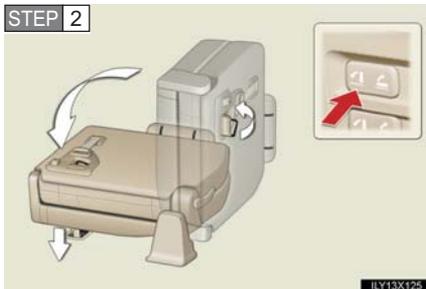


Remove the seat hook covers from the underside of the seat cushion, and install them on the seat hooks.

■ Returning the third seats

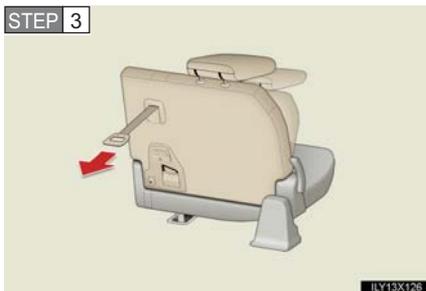


Remove the seat hook covers from the floor and install them into the underside of the seat cushion.



If the switch is held down the seat will automatically return to the folding position. (Buzzer sounds twice)

If the switch is released while returning to the folding position, operation will stop and a buzzer will sound continuously.



Pull the handle and raise the seat-backs.



Raise the head restraints.

### ■ Alarms and indicators

The following table describes circumstances and correction procedures when only alarms are sound.

Indicator light and buzzer	Situation	Correction procedure
Buzzer sounds for 10 seconds Indicator light on*	Shift lever is not in the "P" position with the engine start stop switch is in the ignition on mode. Stop the switch operation during the automatic third seat is in motion.	Move the shift lever in the "P" position with the engine start stop switch in ignition on mode. Return the third seat from a halfway position to tumbling position or the original position with the third seat return switch or third seat tumbling switch.
Indicator light flashes*	The seat movement is stopped in a half way when the back door is opened.	

Indicator light and buzzer	Situation	Correction procedure
Buzzer sounds for 10 seconds Indicator light flashes*	Automatic tumbling or return operation is stopped because of a system problem.	Have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.
	The seat is not moved to the table mode from the original position after 10 seconds the tumbling switch is pressed.	Check something is caught between the seat cushion and seat back. If nothing is caught, have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.
Buzzer sounds for 10 seconds Indicator light blinks slowly*	Automatic closing operation is stopped because of a system problem.	Have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.

### 1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Indicator light and buzzer	Situation	Correction procedure
Indicator light flashes	Any of the tumbling or return switch is pushed when shift lever is not in the "P" position with the engine start stop switch is in the ignition on mode.	Move the shift lever in the "P" position with the engine start stop switch in ignition on mode.
Indicator light flashes 3 times	Table mode switch is pushed when shift lever is not in the "P" position with the engine start stop switch is in the ignition on mode.	

\*: A warning will be shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.

## Folding the third seats (Manual type)

### ■ Before folding the third seats

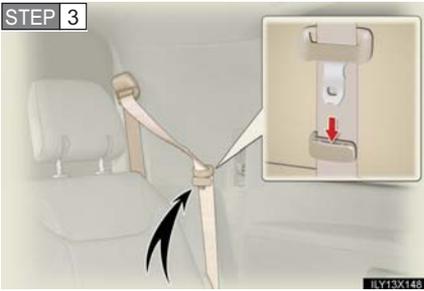
STEP 1



Stow the seat belts buckles.

STEP 2 Stow the center head restraint in the seat back.(→P. 84)

STEP 3



Pass the outer seat belts through the seat belt hangers and secure the seat belt plates.

This prevents the shoulder belt from being damage.

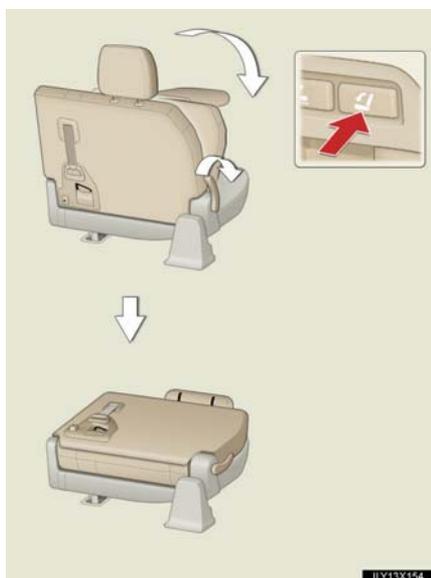
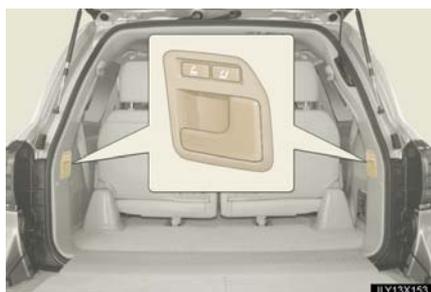
Make sure that the seat belts are removed from the hangers before using them.

STEP 4 Stow the center seat belt tabs in the cover set in the roof. (→P. 87)

1

Before driving

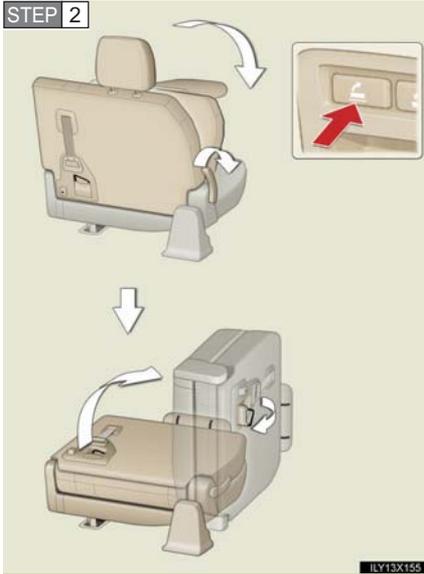
### ■ Folding the third seats



The seat will automatically fold when the switch is pressed.

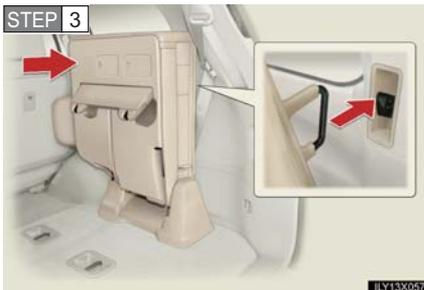
■ **Tumbling the third seats**

**STEP 1** Perform following steps in “Before folding the third seats”.  
(→P. 64)



If the switch is pressed and held, the seat will automatically fold and lift sideward.

When the third seat tumble switch is pressed with the seat is in fold position, the seat lifts sideward.



Push and lock the seat securely.

1  
Before driving

## 1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

STEP 4



Remove the seat hook covers from the underside of the seat cushion, and install them on the seat hooks.

### ■ Returning the third seats

STEP 1

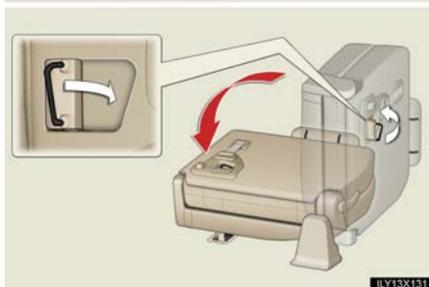


Remove the seat hook covers from the floor and install them into the underside of the seat cushion.

STEP 2

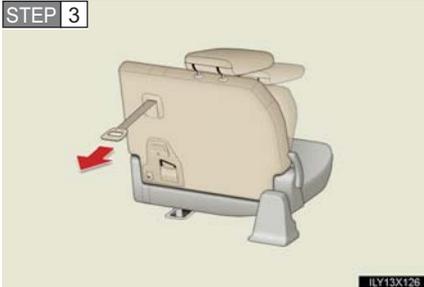


Pull the seat lock release lever and lower the seat, then lock the seat leg lock to the floor.



The seatback striker will be automatically stowed when the seat is lowered.

STEP 3



Pull the handle and raise the seat-backs.

STEP 4



Raise the head restraints.

**CAUTION**

■ **Seat adjustment**

Do not recline the seat more than necessary when the vehicle is in motion to reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt.

If the seat is too reclined, during an accident the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury.

■ **When the seatback is folded**

- Do not sit on or place anything on the seatback while driving.
- Be sure to install the seat hook covers on the seat hooks, or you may get burned when they become hot.

### CAUTION

#### ■ **When returning the seatbacks to their original position**

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Be careful not to get your hands or feet pinched in the seat.
- Make sure the seats are securely locked. Failure to do so will prevent the seat belt from operating properly.
- Check that the seat belts are not twisted or caught under the seat.
- Arrange the seat belts in the proper positions for ready use.

#### ■ **Avoiding damage to seat components**

Do not hang or attach anything on the seat back striker.

### NOTICE

#### ■ **Before tumbling, folding up the seats**

The seat belts and buckles must be stowed.

# Driving position memory system

Your preferred driving position (the position of the driver's seat, steering wheel and outside rear view mirrors) can be entered into the computer's memory and recalled with the touch of a button. It is also possible to set this function to activate automatically when the doors are unlocked.

Three different driving positions can be entered into memory.

### ■ Entering a position to memory

Check that the shift lever is set in "P".

**STEP 1** Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.

**STEP 2** Adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel, and outside rear view mirrors to the desired positions.



While pressing the "SET" button, press button "1", "2" or "3" until the signal beeps.

If the selected button has already been preset, the previously recorded position will be overwritten.

### ■ Recalling the memorized position

Check that the shift lever is set in "P".

**STEP 1** Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.



Press button "1", "2" or "3" to recall the desired position.

### Linking driving position memory with door unlock operation

Record your driving position to button “1”, “2” or “3” before performing the following:

► Using the wireless remote control

**STEP 1** Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to OFF and close the driver’s door.



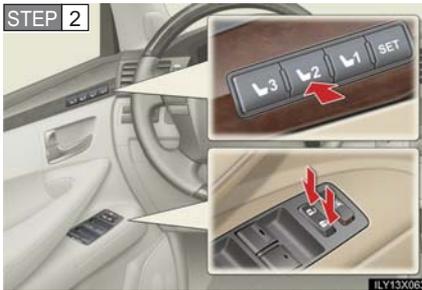
While pressing the desired button (“1”, “2” or “3”), press  on the wireless remote control until the signal beeps.

The driving position is recalled when the driver’s door is unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control and the driver’s door is opened.

► Using the door lock switch

Carry only the key (including the card key) to which you want to link the driving position. If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be linked properly.

**STEP 1** Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to OFF mode and close the driver’s door.



While pressing the desired button (“1”, “2” or “3”), press the lock or unlock side on the door lock switch (either the driver or passenger side) until the signal beeps.

The driving position is recalled when the driver’s door is unlocked using the enter function or wireless remote control and the driver’s door is opened.

■ **Canceling the linked door unlock operation**

**STEP 1** Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to OFF and close the driver’s door.

**STEP 2** Using the wireless remote control: While pressing “SET” button, press  button on the wireless remote control until the signal beeps.

Use the door lock switching: While pressing “SET” button, press the lock or unlock side on the door lock switch until the signal beeps.

### ■ Retained accessory power

Each memorized position (except for the steering wheel position) can be activated within 30 seconds after the driver's door is opened, even if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off.

### ■ To cancel seat position recall

Perform any one of the following operations.

- Press the "SET" button
- Press button "1", "2" or "3".
- Adjust the seat using the switches (only cancels seat position recall)

### ■ If the battery is disconnected

The memorized positions must be reset because the computer's memory is erased when the battery is disconnected.

### CAUTION

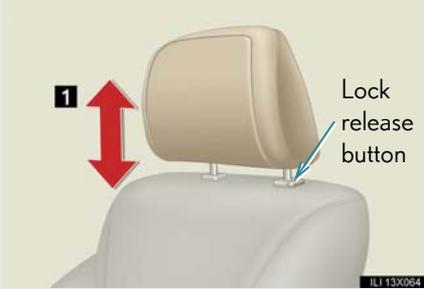
#### ■ Seat adjustment caution

Take care during seat adjustment that the seat does not strike the rear passenger or squeeze your body against the steering wheel.

## 1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

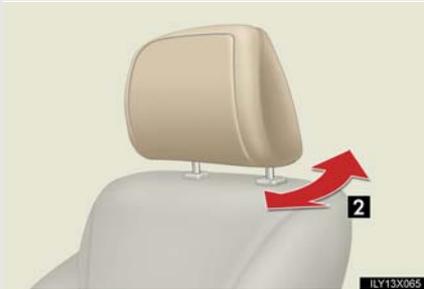
### Head restraints

#### ► Front seats

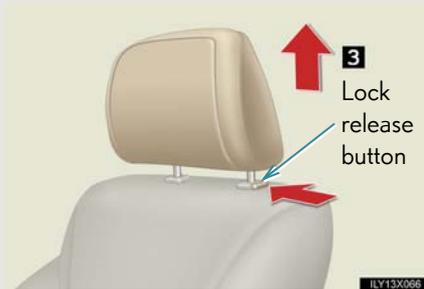


#### 1 Vertical adjustment

Press and hold the lock release button when lowering the head restraint.



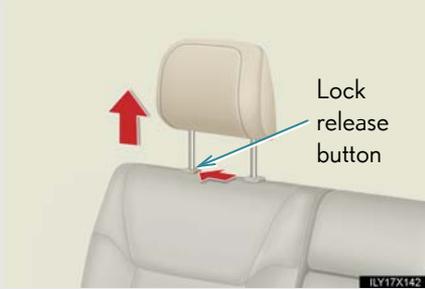
#### 2 Angle adjustment (front seats only)



#### 3 Removal

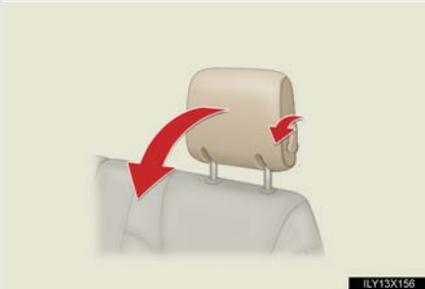
Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release button.

► Second seats



Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release button.

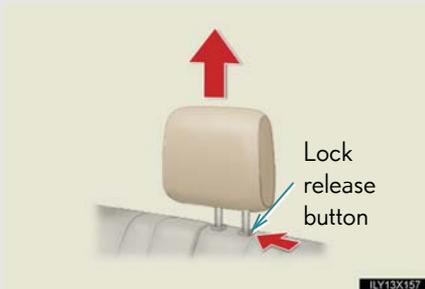
► Third outside seats



To fold

Pull the head restraint angle lever to fold the head restraint.

► Third center seat



Removal

Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release button.

■ Adjusting the height of the head restraints

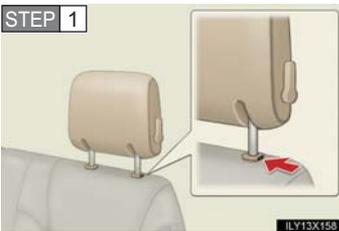


Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.

■ Adjusting the second center seat head restraint

Always raise the head restraint one level from the stowed position when using.

■ Removing the third outside seat head restraints



STEP 1

Push a flathead screwdriver into the slot. The slot is located on the left side of the left head restraint anchor.

STEP 2

While pressing in the screwdriver, pull up the head restraint.

■ Installing the third outside seat head restraints

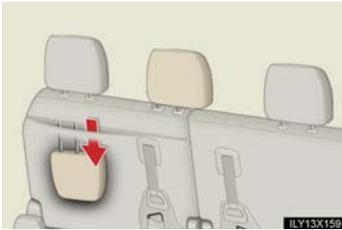
STEP 1

Align the head restraint with the installation holes.

STEP 2

Push down the head restraint to the lock position.

### ■ When not using the third center seat head restraint



Open the zipper on the back of the third seat and stow the head restraint inside.

### ⚠ CAUTION

#### ■ Head restraint precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Use the head restraints designed for each respective seat.
- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- After adjusting the head restraints, push down on them and make sure they are locked in position.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

## Seat belts

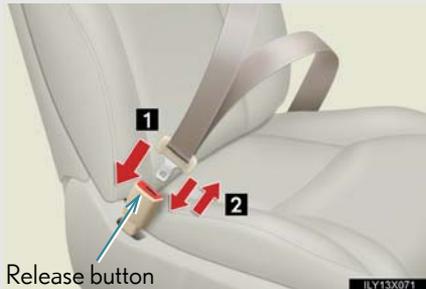
Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

### ■ Correct use of the seat belts



- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seatback. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.
- Do not twist the seat belt.

### ■ Fastening and releasing the seat belt



#### 1 Fastening the belt

Push the tab into the buckle until a clicking sound is heard.

#### 2 Releasing the belt

Press the release button.

### ■ Adjusting the height of the belt (front, second outboard seats)



1 Down

2 Up

Move the height adjuster up and down as needed until you hear a click.

### Third center seat belt

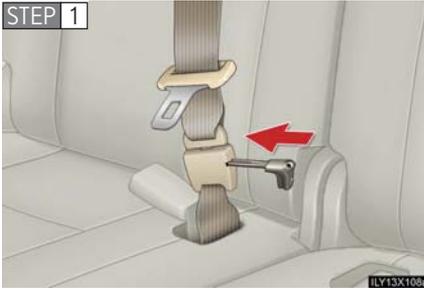
The third center seat belt is a 3-point type restraint with 2 buckles. Both seat belt buckles must be correctly located and securely latched for proper operation.



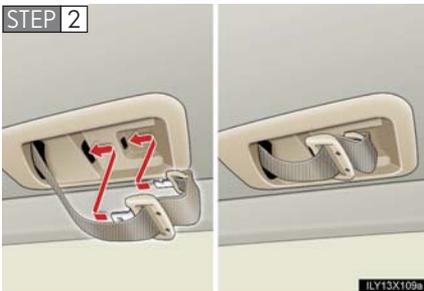
Make sure that the buckle with the gray buckle release button is securely latched for ready use of the center seat belt.

### ■ Release method

The belt can be completely released when not required, such as when removing the third seat.



To release the hooked tab, insert the mechanical key into the hole on the buckle with the light gray buckle release button.



Stow the seat belt tabs as shown.

### ■ Extracting the belt

Pull the belt out partially, then remove the tabs from the cover.

### Seat belt pretensioners (front, second outside seats)



The pretensioner helps the seat belt to quickly restrain the occupant by retracting the seat belt when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal collision.

The pretensioner may not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a side impact or a rear impact.

### Pre-collision seat belts (front seats of vehicles with pre-collision system)

When operating in the event of sudden braking, the seat belts lessen collision injury by retracting the slack in the front seat belts before the collision, thus restraining the driver and passenger at an earlier stage.

(→P. 265)

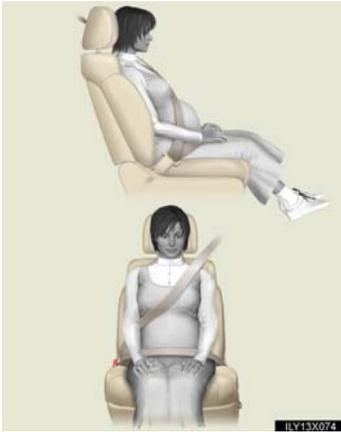
### ■ Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend so that you can move around fully.

### ■ Automatic locking retractor (ALR)

When a second seat passenger's shoulder belt is completely extended and then retracted even slightly, the belt is locked in that position and cannot be extended. This feature is used to hold the child restraint system (CRS) firmly. To free the belt again, fully retract the belt and then pull the belt out once more. (→P. 142)

### ■ Pregnant women



Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 85)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and position the belt across the chest. Avoid belt contact over the rounding of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only a pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.

### ■ People suffering illness

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way.

### ■ Child seat belt usage

The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child become large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 137)
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions on P. 85 regarding seat belt usage.

### ■ Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

### ■ Seat belt extender



If your seat belts cannot be fastened securely because they are not long enough, a personalized seat belt extender is available from your Lexus dealer free of charge.

 **CAUTION**

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or an accident.

Failing to do so may cause death or severe injury.

**■ Wearing a seat belt**

- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- Lexus recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- Do not recline the seat any more than necessary to achieve a proper seating position. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

**■ Seat belt pretensioners**

- Do not place anything, such as a cushion, on the front passenger's seat. Doing so will disperse the passenger's weight, which prevents the sensor from detecting the passenger's weight properly. As a result, the seat belt pretensioner for the front passenger's seat may not activate in the event of a collision.
- If the pretensioner has activated, the seat belt becomes locked: it cannot be further extended, nor will it return to the stowed position. The seat belt cannot be used again and must be replaced at your Lexus dealer.

**⚠ CAUTION**

■ **When using the third center seat belt**



Do not use the third center seat belt with either buckle released. Fastening only one of the buckles may result in death or serious injury in case of sudden braking or a collision.

■ **Seat belt damage and wear**

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate, or buckle to be jammed in the door.
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belt cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.
- Ensure that the belt and tab are locked and the belt is not twisted. If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there is no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by your Lexus dealer. Inappropriate handling of the pretensioner may prevent it from operating properly resulting in death or serious injury.

 **CAUTION****■ Using a seat belt extender**

- Do not wear the seat belt extender, if you can fasten the seat belt without the extender.
- Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system, because the belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.
- The personalized extender may not be safe on another vehicle, when used by another person, or at a different seating position other than the one originally intended.

**■ Precaution for pre-collision seat belts**

Do not rely on the pre-collision system to avoid accidents. Always pay attention to the surrounding conditions, and drive safely and responsibly.

 **NOTICE****■ When using a seat belt extender**

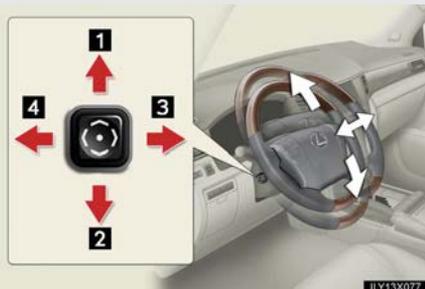
When releasing the seat belt, press on the buckle release button on the extender, not on the seat belt.

This helps prevent damage to the vehicle interior and the extender itself.

## 1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

### Steering wheel

The steering wheel can be adjusted to a comfortable position while the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.



- 1 Up
- 2 Down
- 3 Toward the driver
- 4 Away from the driver

### Auto tilt away



When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned OFF, the steering wheel returns to its stowed position by moving up and away to enable easier driver entry and exit.

Switching to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode will return the steering wheel to the original position.

■ **Automatic adjustment of the steering position**

A desired steering position can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P. 77)

 **CAUTION**

■ **While driving**

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

## 1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

### Anti-glare inside rear view mirror

In automatic mode, sensors are used to detect the headlights of vehicles behind and automatically reduces the reflected light.

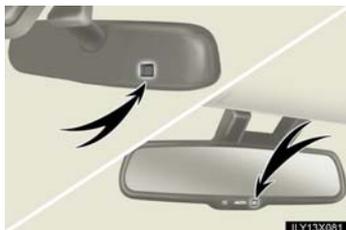


Turns auto mode on/off

The indicator comes on when auto mode is turned on.

The mirror will revert to the auto mode each time the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

#### ■ To prevent sensor error



To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

##### ■ While driving

Do not adjust the position of the mirror while driving.

Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

## 1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

### Outside rear view mirrors

Mirror angle can be adjusted using the switch when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

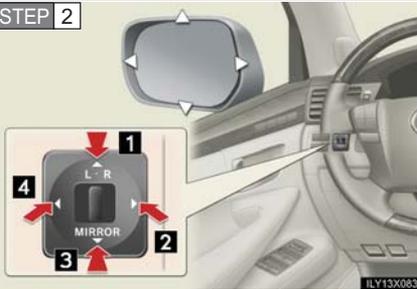
#### STEP 1



Select a mirror to adjust

- 1 Left
- 2 Right

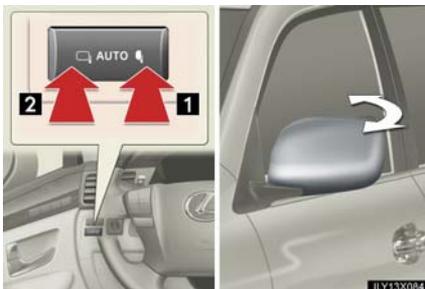
#### STEP 2



Adjust the mirror

- 1 Up
- 2 Right
- 3 Down
- 4 Left

### Folding back the mirrors



- 1 Folds the mirrors
- 2 Extends the mirrors

Putting the outside rear view mirror folding switch in the neutral position sets the mirrors to automatic mode. Automatic mode allows the folding or extending of the mirrors to be linked to locking/unlocking of the doors.

### ■ When the mirrors are fogged up

Turn on the outside rear view mirror defogger to defog the mirrors. (→P. 330)

### ■ Auto anti-glare function

When the anti-glare inside rear view mirror is set to auto mode, the outside rear view mirrors will activate in conjunction with the anti-glare inside rear view mirror to reduce reflected light. (→P. 96)

### ■ Linked mirror function when reversing

The outside rear view mirrors will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing in order to give a better view of the ground. However, this function will not operate when the mirror select switch is in the neutral position (between “L” and “R”).

### ■ Automatic adjustment of the mirror angle

A desired mirror face angle can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P. 77)

 **CAUTION****■ When driving the vehicle**

Observe the following precautions while driving.

Failing to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded back.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

**■ When the mirror defoggers are operating**

Do not touch the surface of the mirror, as it may be hot.

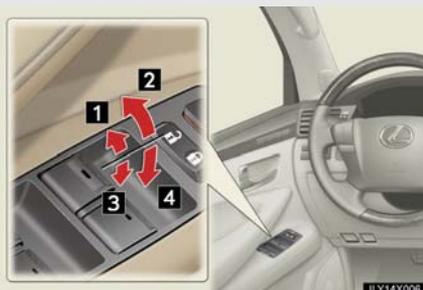
**■ If ice should jam the mirror**

Do not operate the control or scrape the mirror face. Use a spray de-icer to free the mirror.

## 1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

### Power windows

The power windows can be opened and closed using the following switches.



- 1 Closing
- 2 One-touch closing\*
- 3 Opening
- 4 One-touch opening\*

\*:Pressing the switch in the opposite direction will stop window travel partway.

### Lock switch



Press the switch down to lock passenger window switches.

Use this switch to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.

#### ■ The power windows can be operated when

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

#### ■ Door lock linked window operation

- The power windows can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. (→P. 669)
- The power windows can be opened using the wireless remote control. (→P. 44)
- The power windows can be closed using the entry function. (→P. 31)

### ■ Operating the power windows after turning the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned OFF. They cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

### ■ Jam protection function

If an object becomes caught between the window and the window frame, window travel is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

### ■ Customization that can be configured at your Lexus dealer

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 708)

## CAUTION

### ■ Closing the windows

Observe the following precautions.

Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the power windows.  
Closing a power window on someone can cause death or serious injury.

### ■ Jam protection function

- Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window fully closes.

## 1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

### Moon roof

Use the overhead switches to open, close, and tilt the moon roof up and down.

#### ■ Opening and closing



#### 1 Open

Stops just before it is opened fully. Press the switch again to fully open.

#### 2 Close

To stop partway, press the switch lightly.

#### ■ Tilt up and down



#### 1 Tilt up

#### 2 Tilt down

To stop partway, press the switch lightly.

---

**■ The moon roof can be operated when**

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

**■ Door lock linked moon roof operation**

- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. (→P. 669)
- The moon roof can be opened using the wireless remote control. (→P. 44)
- The moon roof can be closed using the entry function. (→P. 31)

**■ Operating the moon roof after turning the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF**

The moon roof can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned OFF. It cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

**■ Jam protection function**

If an object is detected between the moon roof and the frame while closing or tilting down, travel is stopped and the moon roof opens slightly.

**■ If the moon roof cannot be closed automatically**

Keep the switch depressed.

**■ To reduce moon roof wind noise**

Drive with the moon roof at first opened position (just before fully opened position).

**■ Sunshade**

The sunshade can be opened and closed manually. However, the sunshade will open automatically when the moon roof is opened.

### ■ Moon roof open warning buzzer

The buzzer sounds and message is shown on the multi-information display in the instrument panel when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned OFF and the driver’s door is opened with the moon roof open.

### ■ Customization that can be configured at your Lexus dealer

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 710)

## CAUTION

### ■ Opening the moon roof

Observe the following precautions.

Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on top of the moon roof.

### ■ Closing the moon roof

Observe the following precautions.

Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their bodies in a position where they could be caught when the moon roof is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the moon roof.  
Closing the moon roof on someone can cause death or serious injury.

### ■ Jam protection function

- Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof fully closes.

## 1-5. Refueling

# Opening the fuel tank cap

Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap.

### ■ Before refueling the vehicle

Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF and ensure that all the doors and windows are closed.

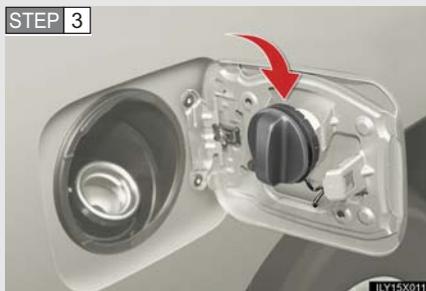
### ■ Opening the fuel tank cap



Pull the lever.



Turn the fuel tank cap slowly to open.



Hang the fuel tank cap on the back of the fuel filler door.

## Closing the fuel tank cap



When replacing the fuel tank cap, turn it until a clicking sound is heard.

After releasing your hand, the cap will turn slightly to the opposite direction.

---

### ■ Fuel types

Use premium unleaded gasoline. (91 Octane Rating [Research Octane Number 96] or higher)

### ■ Fuel tank capacity

Approximately 24.5 gal. (93 L, 20.4 Imp.gal.)

 **CAUTION**
**■ Refueling the vehicle**

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle.  
Failure to do so, may result in death or serious injury.

- Touch the vehicle or some other metal surface to discharge any static electricity.  
Sparks resulting from discharging static electricity may cause the fuel vapors to ignite.
- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it.  
A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap.  
In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out of the filler neck and cause injury.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their bodies to come close to an open fuel tank.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel.  
Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle.  
Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged.  
This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

**■ When replacing the fuel cap**

Do not use anything but a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle.  
Failure to do so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

 **NOTICE**
**■ Refueling**

Do not spill fuel during refueling.  
Failure to do so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the exhaust systems to operate abnormally or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.

## 1-6. Theft deterrent system

### Engine immobilizer system

The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the engine from starting if the key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.

Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.



The indicator light flashes after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned OFF to indicate that the system is operating.

#### ■ System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type of engine immobilizer system.

#### ■ Conditions that may cause the system to malfunction

- If the key is in contact with a metallic object
- If the key is in close proximity to or touching a key to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle

## ■ Engine immobilizer certification

### ▶ U.S.A.

FCC ID: NI4TMIMB-1

#### NOTE:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

#### FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

### ▶ Canada

#### NOTE:

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

## CAUTION

### ■ Certifications for the engine immobilizer system

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## NOTICE

### ■ For proper system operation

Do not modify, remove or disable the engine immobilizer system. If any unauthorized changes or modifications are made, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

# Alarm

The system sounds the alarm and flashes lights when forcible entry is detected.

### ■ Triggering of the alarm

The alarm is triggered in the following situations.

- A locked door is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function or the wireless remote control. (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- The hood is opened while the vehicle is locked.
- The battery is reconnected.

### ■ Setting the alarm system



Close the doors and hood, and lock all doors. The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.

### ■ Deactivating or stopping the alarm

Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarm.

- Unlock the doors using the entry function or the wireless remote control.
- Start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

### ■ Items to check before locking the vehicle

To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following.

- Nobody is in the vehicle.
- The windows and moon roof are closed before the alarm is set.
- No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

### ■ Triggering of the alarm

The alarm may be triggered in the following situations. (Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.)

- A person inside the vehicle opens a door or hood.
- The battery is reconnected.

### ■ Panic mode

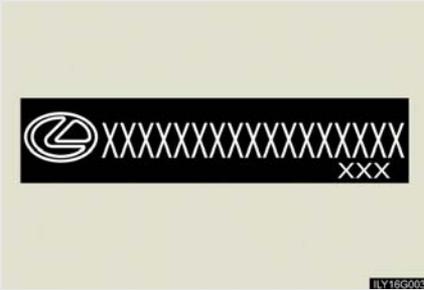


When  is pressed for longer than about one second, the head lights/tail lights/emergency flashers will flash, the front and rear interior lights will come on, and an alarm will sound for about 60 seconds to deter any person from trying to break into or damage your vehicle.

To stop the alarm, press any button on the wireless remote control.

## 1-6. Theft deterrent system

### Theft prevention labels (U.S.A.)



These labels are attached to the vehicle to reduce vehicle theft by facilitating the tracing and recovery of parts from stolen vehicles. Do not remove under penalty of law.

1

Before driving

# Correct driving posture

Drive with a good posture as follows:



- 1 Sit upright and well back in the seat. (→P. 58)
- 2 Adjust the position of the seat forward or backward to ensure the pedals can be reached and easily depressed to the extent required. (→P. 58)
- 3 Adjust the seatback so that the controls are easily operable.
- 4 Adjust the tilt and telescopic positions of the steering wheel downward so the air-bag is facing your chest. (→P. 94)
- 5 Lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P. 81)
- 6 Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P. 85)

 **CAUTION****■ While driving**

- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat while driving.  
Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback.  
A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint, increasing the risk of death or serious injury to the driver or passenger.
- Do not place anything under the front seats.  
Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident. The adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.
- Do not recline the seat more than necessary when the vehicle is in motion, to reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt.  
If the seat is too reclined during an accident, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury.

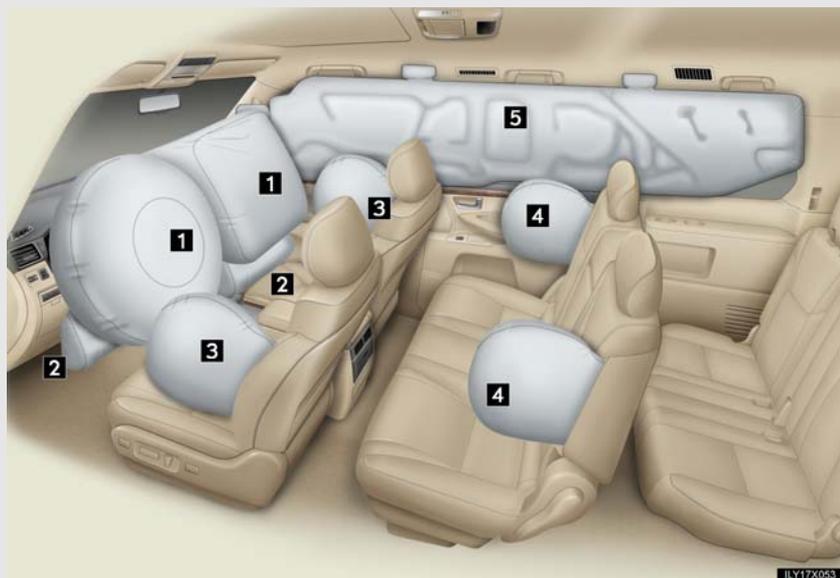
**■ Adjusting the seat position**

- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury.  
Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.

## 1-7. Safety information

### SRS airbags

The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



#### ► Front airbags

##### 1 Driver airbag/front passenger airbag

Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components.

##### 2 Knee airbags

Can help provide driver and front passenger protection.

► Side and curtain shield airbags

3 Side airbags

Can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants.

4 Side airbags

Can help protect the torso of the second outboard seat occupants.

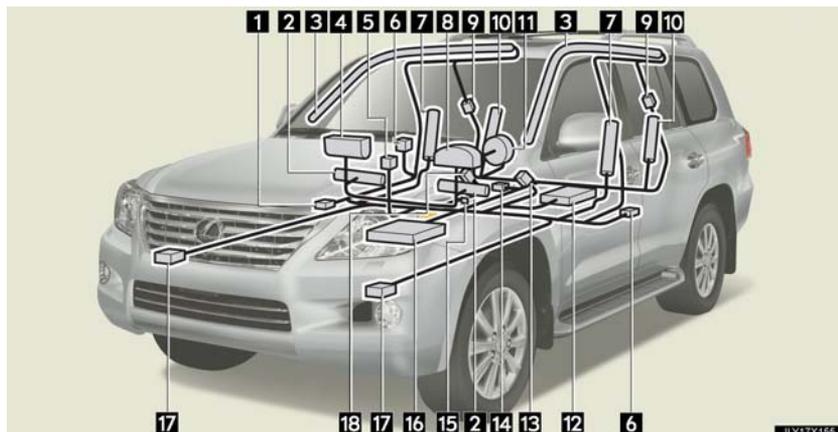
5 Curtain shield airbags

● Can help protect primarily the head of front seat occupants.

● Can help protect primarily the head of second outboard seat occupants.

● Can help protect primarily the head of third seat occupants.

## Airbag system components



- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>1</b> Occupant detection sensor                               | <b>10</b> Side airbag<br>(second outboard seat)             |
| <b>2</b> Knee airbag   | <b>11</b> Driver airbag                                     |
| <b>3</b> Curtain shield airbag                                   | <b>12</b> Driver's seat position sensor                     |
| <b>4</b> Front passenger airbag                                  | <b>13</b> Driver's seat belt buckle switch                  |
| <b>5</b> Front passenger occupant classification indicator light | <b>14</b> Floor sensor                                      |
| <b>6</b> Side and curtain shield airbag sensor                   | <b>15</b> Roll sensing of curtain shield airbags off switch |
| <b>7</b> Side airbag (front seat)                                | <b>16</b> Airbag sensor assembly                            |
| <b>8</b> SRS warning light and "RSCA OFF" indicator light        | <b>17</b> Front airbag sensor                               |
| <b>9</b> Curtain shield airbag sensor                            | <b>18</b> Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch         |

Your vehicle is equipped with ADVANCED AIRBAGS designed based on US motor vehicle safety standards (FMVSS208). The airbag system controls airbag deployment power for the driver and front passenger. The driver airbag system consists of the driver seat's position sensor etc. The front passenger's airbag system consists of the front passenger occupant classification sensor etc.

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. The airbag sensor assembly consists of a safing sensor and an airbag sensor.

In certain types of severe frontal or side impacts, the SRS airbag system triggers the airbag inflators. A chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

---

#### ■ If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)

- Bruising and slight abrasions may result from contact with a deploying (inflating) SRS airbag.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the front seats, second seats may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The front windshield may crack.

### ■ Operating conditions (front airbags)

- The SRS front airbags will deploy if the severity of the frontal impact is above the designed threshold level, comparable to an approximate 15 mph (25 km/h) collision when the vehicle impacts straight into a fixed barrier that does not move or deform.

However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher if the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact, or if the vehicle is involved in an underride collision (e.g. a collision in which the front of the vehicle “underrides”, or goes under, the bed of a truck, etc.).

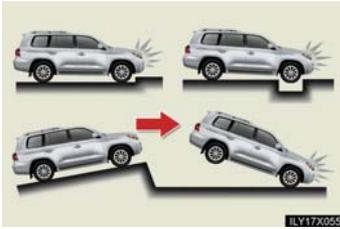
- It is possible that in some collisions where the forward deceleration of the vehicle is very close to the designed threshold level, the SRS front airbags and the seat belt pretensioners may not activate together.
- The SRS front passenger airbag will not activate if there is not a passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the front passenger airbag may deploy if luggage is put in the seat or the seat belt is fastened, even if the seat is unoccupied.

### ■ Operating conditions (side airbags and curtain shield airbags)

- The SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags are designed to inflate when the passenger compartment is subjected to a severe impact from the side.
- The SRS side airbag on the passenger seat will not activate if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the side airbag on the passenger seat may deploy if luggage is put in the seat or the seat belt is fastened, even if the seat is unoccupied.

### ■ Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision

The SRS front, side and curtain shield airbags may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.



- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or vehicle falling

The SRS curtain shield airbags may also deploy under the situations shown in the illustration.



- The angle of vehicle tip-up is marginal.
- The vehicle skids and hits curb stone.

### ■ Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbag (front airbags)

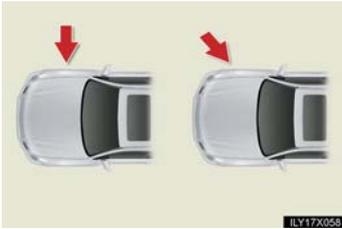
The SRS front airbags are generally not designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags may occur.



- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

■ **Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbag (side airbags and curtain shield airbags)**

The SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag system may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.



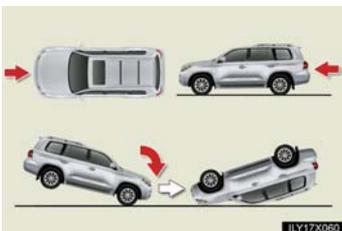
- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle

The SRS side airbags are not generally designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.



- Collision from the front
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

The SRS curtain shield airbags are not generally designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it pitches end over end, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.

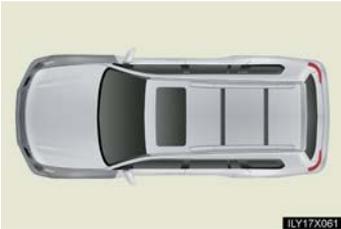


- Collision from the front
- Collision from the rear
- Pitching end over end

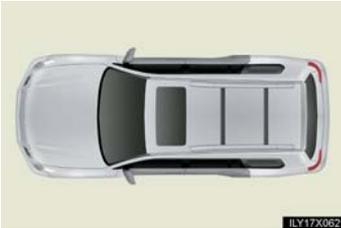
## ■ When to contact your Lexus dealer

In the following cases, contact your Lexus dealer, as soon as possible. Do not disconnect the battery cables before contacting your Lexus dealer.

- Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.



- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS airbags to inflate.



- A portion of a door is damaged or deformed, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags to inflate.



- The pad section of the steering wheel, dashboard near the front passenger airbag or lower portion of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- The surface of the seats with the side airbag is scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.
- The portion of the front, center and rear pillar garnish, or roof interior containing the curtain shield airbags inside is scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.

 **CAUTION**

■ **SRS airbag precautions**

Observe the following precautions regarding the airbags. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly. The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.
- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (“NHTSA”) advises:

Since the risk zone for the driver’s airbag is the first 2 - 3 in. (50 - 75 mm) of inflation, placing yourself 10 in. (250 mm) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 10 in. (250 mm) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Slightly recline the back of the seat. Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 10 in. (250 mm) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
- If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

The seat should be adjusted as recommended by NHTSA above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.

 CAUTION

**■ SRS airbag precautions**


- If the seat belt extender has been connected to the driver's seat belt buckle but the seat belt extender has not also been fastened to the latch plate of the driver's seat belt, the SRS driver's airbag system will judge that the driver is wearing the seat belt even though the seat belt has not been connected. In this case, the driver's airbag may not activate correctly in a collision, resulting in death or serious injury in the event of collision. Be sure to wear the seat belt with the seat belt extender.
- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.
- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are the safest for infants and children. (→P.137)

**!** CAUTION



- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.



- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a front passenger.
- Do not drive the vehicle while the driver or passenger have items resting on their knees.

 CAUTION

 SRS airbag precautions


- Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, center and rear pillars.



- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seats toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.



- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad or lower portion of the instrument panel.  
These items can become projectiles when SRS driver, front passenger and knee airbags deploy.

**! CAUTION**

**■ SRS airbag precautions**



- Do not attach anything to areas such as the door, windshield glass, side door glass, front, center and rear pillars, roof side rail or assist grip.
- Do not hang coat hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. All of these items could become projectiles and seriously injure or kill you, should the SRS curtain shield airbag deploy.
- If the vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS knee airbag will deploy, be sure to remove it.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the airbags.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components shown on P. 118.  
Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbag has deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.

 **CAUTION****■ SRS airbag precautions**

- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad and front and rear pillar garnishes, are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by your Lexus dealer.

**■ Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components**

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting your Lexus dealer.

The SRS airbags may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags.
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, front, center and rear pillars or roof side rail.
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment.
- Installation of snow plows, winches, etc. to the front grille (bull bars, kangaroo bar etc.).
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system.
- Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios or CD players.
- Modifications to your vehicle for a person with a physical disability.

## Deactivating the curtain shield airbags in a vehicle rollover



### On/off (Pressing longer)

The “RSCA OFF” (roll sensing of curtain shield airbags off) indicator light turns on.

(Only when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.)

#### ■ This switch only should be used

In a situation where the inflation is not desired (such as during extreme off road driving).

#### ■ Operating conditions when the “RSCA OFF” indicator turns on

- The curtain shield airbag and seat belt pretensioner will not activate in a vehicle rollover.
- The curtain shield airbag will activate in a severe side impact.

### ⚠ CAUTION

#### ■ While normal driving

Make sure the “RSCA OFF” indicator light is not turned on. If it is left on, the curtain shield airbag will not activate in the event of an accident, which may cause death or serious injury.

## Front passenger occupant classification system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger occupant classification system. This system detects the conditions of the front passenger seat and activates or deactivates the devices for front passenger.



- 1 SRS warning light
- 2 AIR BAG OFF indicator light
- 3 AIR BAG ON indicator light
- 4 Front passenger's seat belt reminder light

## Condition and operation in the front passenger occupant classification system

### ■ Adult\*1

Indicator/ warning light	AIR BAG ON and AIR BAG OFF indicator lights	On
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Flashing*2
Devices	Front passenger airbag and knee airbag	Activated
	Side airbag in the front passenger seat	
	Curtain shield airbag on the front passenger side	
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	

### ■ Child\*3 or child restraint system\*4

Indicator/ warning light	AIR BAG ON and AIR BAG OFF indicator lights	Off*5
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Flashing*2
Devices	Front passenger airbag and knee airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag in the front passenger seat	
	Curtain shield airbag on the front passenger side	Activated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	

## ■ Unoccupied

Indicator/ warning light	AIR BAG ON and AIR BAG OFF indicator lights	Not illuminated
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	
Devices	Front passenger airbag and knee airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag in the front passenger seat	
	Curtain shield airbag on the front passenger side	Activated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	Deactivated

1

Before driving

## ■ System malfunction

Indicator/ warning light	AIR BAG ON and AIR BAG OFF indicator lights	Off
	SRS warning light	On
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Off
Devices	Front passenger airbag and knee airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag in the front passenger seat	
	Curtain shield airbag on the front passenger side	Activated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	

- \*1: The system judges a person of adult size as an adult. When a smaller adult sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as a child depending on his/her physique and posture.
- \*2: In the event the front passenger does not wear a seat belt.
- \*3: When a larger child who has outgrown a child restraint system sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as an adult depending on his/her physique or posture.
- \*4: Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. A rear-facing child restraint system should only be installed on the front passenger seat when it is unavoidable. (→P. 137)
- \*5: In case the indicator is not illuminated, consult this manual as for installing the child restraint system properly. (→P. 142)

 **CAUTION****■ Front passenger occupant classification system precautions**

Observe the following precautions regarding front passenger occupant classification system.

Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Wear the seat belt properly.
- Make sure the front passenger's seat belt tab has not been left inserted into the buckle before someone sits in the front passenger seat.
- Make sure the AIR BAG OFF indicator light is not illuminated when using the seat belt extender for the front passenger seat. If the AIR BAG OFF indicator light is illuminated, disconnect the extender tongue from the seat belt buckle, then reconnect the seat belt. Reconnect the seat belt extender after making sure the AIR BAG ON indicator light is illuminated. If you use the seat belt extender while the AIR BAG OFF indicator light is illuminated, the front passenger airbag and side airbag on the front passenger side may not activate correctly, which could cause death or serious injury in the event of collision.
- Do not apply a heavy load to the front passenger seat.
- Do not put weight on the front passenger seat by putting your hands or feet on the front passenger seat seatback from the second seat.
- Do not let a second seat passenger lift the front passenger seat with their feet or press on the seatback with their legs.
- Do not put objects under the front passenger seat.
- Do not recline the front passenger seatback so far that it touches a second seat. This may cause the AIR BAG OFF indicator light to be illuminated, which indicates that the passenger's airbags will not deploy in the event of a severe accident. If the seatback touches the second seat, return the seatback to a position where it does not touch the second seat. Keep the front passenger seatback as upright as possible when the vehicle is moving. Reclining the seatback excessively may lessen the effectiveness of the seat belt system.

 CAUTION

■ **Front passenger occupant classification system precautions**

- If an adult sits in the front passenger seat, the AIR BAG ON indicator light is illuminated. If the AIR BAG OFF indicator is illuminated, ask the passenger to sit up straight, well back in the seat, feet on the floor, and with the seat belt worn correctly. If the AIR BAG OFF indicator still remain illuminated, either ask the passenger to move to the second seat, or if that is not possible, move the front passenger seat fully rearward.
- When it is unavoidable to install the forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, install the child restraint system on the front passenger seat in the proper order. (→P. 142)
- Do not modify or remove the front seat.
- Do not kick the front passenger seat or subject it to severe impact. Otherwise, the SRS warning light may come on to indicate a malfunction in the detection system. In this case, contact your Lexus dealer immediately.
- Do not use a seat accessory, such as a cushion or seat cover, that covers the seat cushion surface.
- Child restraint systems installed on the second seat should not contact the front seat backs.

## Child restraint systems

A child restraint system for a small child or baby must itself be properly restrained on the seat with the lap portion of the lap/shoulder belt.

The laws of all 50 states of the U.S.A. and Canada now require the use of child restraint systems.

### Points to remember

Studies have shown that installing a child restraint on a rear seat is much safer than installing one to the front passenger seat.

- Choose a child restraint system appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- For installation details, follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system.  
General installation instructions are provided in this manual.  
(→P. 142)

## Types of child restraints

Child restraint systems are classified into the following 3 types according to the age and size of the child.

► Infant seat



► Convertible seat



► Booster seat



### ■ When installing the child restraint system on the front passenger seat



When you have to use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, adjust the following:

- The seatback to the most upright position
- The seat cushion to the fully rearward and highest position
- The seat belt height to the lowest position

### ■ Selecting an appropriate child restraint system

Get an appropriate child restraint system for the child. If a child is too large for a child restraint system, sit the child on a rear seat and use the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 85)

 **CAUTION**

■ **Using a child restraint system**

The use of a child restraint system not suitable for the vehicle may not properly secure the infant or child, resulting in serious injury or even death.

■ **Child restraint precautions**

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system depending on the age and size of the child. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle's interior.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.

 **CAUTION****■ Child restraint precautions**

- Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat even if the AIR BAG OFF indicator light illuminates. In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child if the rear-facing child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat.
- A forward-facing child restraint system should be allowed to be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. Always move the seat as far back as possible even if the AIR BAG OFF indicator light illuminates, because the front passenger airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.
- Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system on the front or rear passenger seat. If installing a child restraint system with the seat belt extender connected to the seat belt, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of collision.
- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front and rear pillars or roof side rail from which the side airbags or curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.
- Make sure you have complied with all installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and that the system is properly secured. If it is not secured properly, it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

**■ When the child restraint system is not in use**

- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the restraint unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the luggage compartment. This will prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

## 1-7. Safety information

# Installing child restraints

Follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions. Firmly secure the child restraints to the outboard second seats using a seat belt or a child restraint lower anchor. Attach the top strap when installing a child restraint.

1



1 Seat belts equipped with a child restraint locking mechanism (ALR/ELR belts except driver's seat belt)

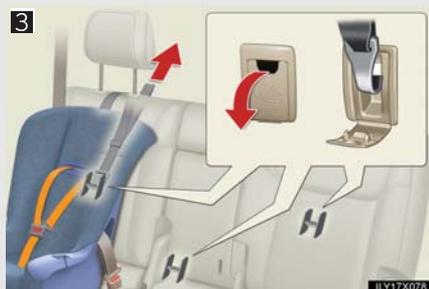
2



2 Child restraint lower anchors

Lower anchors are provided for the outboard second seats. (Buttons displaying the location of the anchors are attached to the seats.)

3



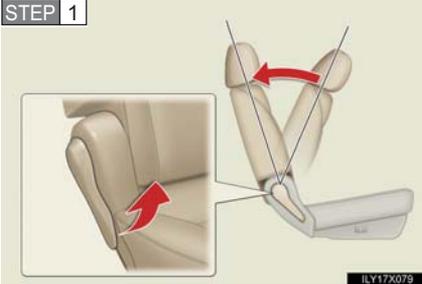
3 Anchor bracket (for top strap)

Anchor brackets are provided for all second seats.

## Installing child restraints using a seat belt (child restraint lock function belt)

### ■ Rear-facing — Infant seat/Convertible seat

#### STEP 1



Fold the seatback while pulling the seatback angle lever. Return the seatback and secure it at the first lock position. (→P. 60)

#### STEP 2



Place the Infant seat/Convertible seat on the second seat facing the rear of the vehicle.

#### STEP 3



Run the seat belt through the Infant seat/Convertible seat and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.



Fully extend the shoulder belt and then allow it to retract slightly in order to activate the ALR lock mode.

Lock mode allows the seat belt to retract only.

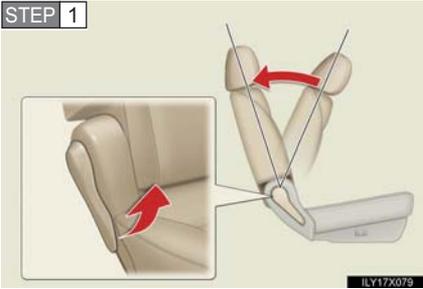


While pushing the infant seat/convertible seat down into the seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the infant seat/convertible seat is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

## ■ Forward-facing — Convertible seat

### STEP 1



Fold the seatback while pulling the seatback angle lever. Return the seatback and secure it at the first lock position. (→P. 60)

### STEP 2



Place the child seat on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

### STEP 3



Run the seat belt through the child seat and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

1

Before driving



Fully extend the shoulder strap and then allow it to retract slightly into the ALR lock mode.

Lock mode allows the seat belt to retract only.

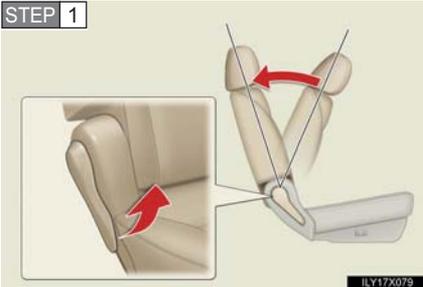


While pushing the child seat into the second seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child seat is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

## ■ Booster seat

### STEP 1



Fold the seatback while pulling the seatback angle lever. Return the seatback and secure it at the first lock position.

### STEP 2



Place the booster seat on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

### STEP 3



Sit the child in the booster seat. Fit the seat belt to the booster seat according to the manufacturer's instructions and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Check that the shoulder belt is correctly positioned over the child's shoulder, and that the lap belt is as low as possible. (→P. 85)

### Removing a child restraint installed with a seat belt



Push the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

### Installation with child restraint lower anchors



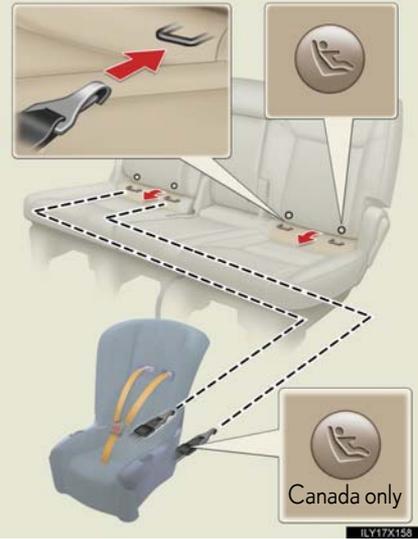
Fold the seatback forward and then back to the 1st lock position (most upright position) until it locks into place.



Take off the covers between the seat cushion and seatback, then confirm the position of the lower anchors below the symbol in the seatback.

## ► Type A

STEP 3



Latch the hooks of the lower straps onto the anchors.

If the child restraint has a top strap, the top strap should be latched onto the anchor.

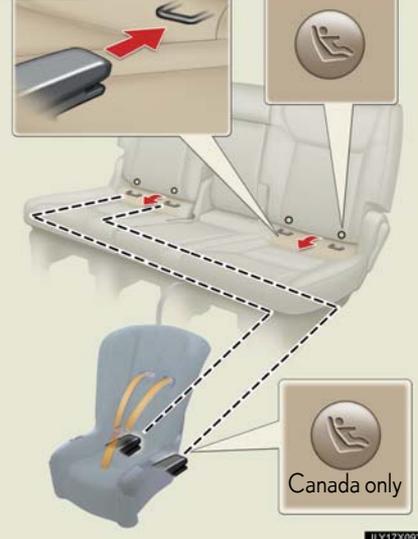
For owners in Canada:  
The symbol on a child restraint system indicates the presence of a lower connector system

1

Before driving

## ► Type B

STEP 3



Latch the buckles onto the anchors.

If the child restraint has a top strap, the top strap should be latched onto the anchor.

For owners in Canada:  
The symbol on a child restraint system indicates the presence of a lower connector system

## Child restraint systems with a top strap

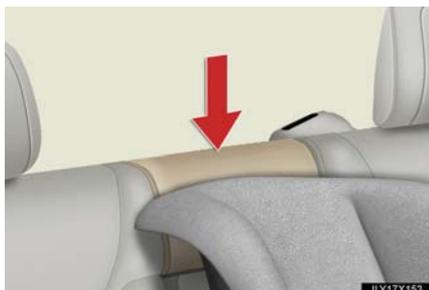
**STEP 1** Secure the child restraint using a seat belt or lower anchors, and do the following.

► Outside

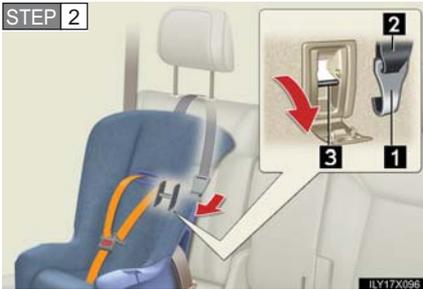


Adjust the head restraint to the upmost position.

► Center



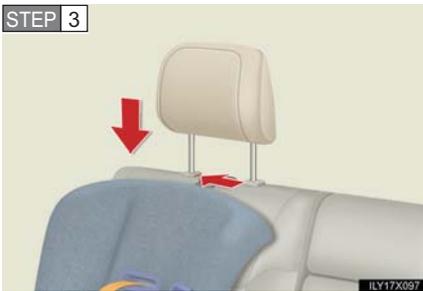
Lower the head restraint to the lowest position.



Open the anchor bracket cover, latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top strap.

Make sure the top strap is securely latched.

- 1 Hook
- 2 Top strap
- 3 Anchor bracket



Outside only: Adjust the head restraint to the downmost position.

1  
Before driving

### ■ Laws and regulations pertaining to Anchors

Anchors conform to FMVSS225 or CMVSS210.2.

Child restraint systems conforming to FMVSS213 or CMVSS213 specifications can be used.

This vehicle is designed to conform to the SAE J1819.

**! CAUTION**

**■ When installing a junior seat**

Do not fully extend the shoulder belt to prevent the belt from going to ALR lock mode: (→P. 89)

- ALR mode causes the belt to tighten only which could cause injury or discomfort to the child.
- Do not allow the child to play with the seat belt or the child could be killed or seriously injured.

**■ When installing a child restraint system**

Follow the directions given in the child restraint system installation manual and fix the child restraint system securely in place.

If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking or an accident.



- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand second seat.
- Child restraint system installed on the third seat should not contact the second seat-backs.
- Only put a forward-facing or booster child seat on the front seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward-facing or booster child restraint on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible even if the AIR BAG OFF indicator light illuminates. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).

 **CAUTION****■ When installing a child restraint system**

- When a booster seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking.
- Ensure that the belt and tab are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Push and pull the child seat in different directions to be sure it is secure.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

**■ Do not use a seat belt extender**

If a seat belt extender is used when installing a child restraint system, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of a collision.

**CAUTION**

**■ To correctly attach a child restraint system to the anchors**

- When using the lower anchors, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint. Make sure the child restraint system is securely attached, or it may cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident.



- When using the left side lower anchors for the child restraint system, do not sit in the center seat. Seat belt function may be impaired, such as being positioned overly high or loose-fitting, which may result in death or serious injury in the event of a collision.

## 2-1. Driving procedures

# Driving the vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving.

### ■ Starting the engine (→P. 166)

#### ■ Driving

**STEP 1** With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to “D”.  
(→P. 170)

**STEP 2** Release the parking brake. (→P. 176)

**STEP 3** Gradually release the brake pedal and gently push the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

#### ■ Stopping

**STEP 1** With the shift lever in “D”, push the brake pedal.

**STEP 2** If necessary, set the parking brake.

When the vehicle is stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to “P” or “N”. (→P. 170)

#### ■ Parking the vehicle

**STEP 1** With the shift lever in “D”, push the brake pedal.

**STEP 2** Set the parking brake. (→P. 176)

**STEP 3** Shift the shift lever to “P”. (→P. 170)

When parking on a hill, if necessary, block the wheels.

**STEP 4** Press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch and stop the engine.

**STEP 5** Lock the door, making sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

## Starting on a steep uphill

- STEP 1** Firmly set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to “D”.
- STEP 2** Gently depress the accelerator pedal.
- STEP 3** Release the parking brake.

### ■ Driving in the rain

- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an expressway in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

### ■ Breaking in your new Lexus

To extend the life of the vehicle, the following precautions are recommended to observe:

- For the first 200 miles (300 km):  
Avoid sudden stops.
- For the first 500 miles (800 km):  
Do not tow a trailer.
- For the first 600 miles (1000 km):
  - Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
  - Avoid sudden acceleration.
  - Do not drive continuously in the low gears.
  - Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

### ■ Drum-in-disc type parking brake system

Your vehicle has a drum-in-disc type parking brake system.

This type of brake system needs bedding-down of the brake shoes periodically or whenever the parking brake shoes and/or drums are replaced.

Have your Lexus dealer perform the bedding-down.

### ■ Operating your vehicle in a foreign country

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P. 684)

## CAUTION

### ■ When starting the vehicle

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

### ■ When driving the vehicle

- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
  - Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.
  - When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
  - Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly, allowing you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly.
  - Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal using your left foot may delay response in an emergency, resulting in an accident.

 CAUTION

- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials.  
The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot. This may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.
- Do not let the vehicle roll backwards while the shift lever is in a driving position, or roll forward while the shift lever is in “R”.  
Doing so may cause the engine to stall or lead to poor brake and steering performance, resulting in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
- If the smell of exhaust is noticed inside the vehicle, open the windows and check that the back door is closed.  
Large amounts of exhaust in the vehicle can cause driver drowsiness and an accident, resulting in death or a serious health hazard. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.
- Do not under any circumstances shift the shift lever to “P” or “R” while the vehicle is moving.  
Doing so can cause significant damage to the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to “N” while the vehicle is moving.  
Doing so may cause the engine brake not to operate properly and lead to an accident.
- Do not turn the engine off while driving.  
The power steering and brake actuator will not operate properly if the engine is not running.
- Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill.  
Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P. 172)

### CAUTION

- When stopped on an inclined surface, use the brake pedal and parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling backward or forward and causing an accident.
- Do not adjust the position of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving.  
Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control that can cause accidents that may result in death or serious injury.
- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their bodies are not outside the vehicle, as this may result in death or serious injury.
- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit. Even if the legal speed limit permits it, do not drive over 85 mph (140 km/h) unless your vehicle has high-speed capability tires. Driving over 85 mph (140 km/h) may result in tire failure, loss of control and possible injury. Be sure to consult a tire dealer to determine whether the tires on your vehicle are high-speed capability tires or not before driving at such speeds.
- If you drive through deep water over about 20 in. (500 mm) in depth, put the vehicle height in the high mode with the height select switch and then turn off the 4-Wheel AHC. Drive your vehicle at 19 mph (30 km/h) or lower speed.

 **CAUTION****■ When driving on slippery road surfaces**

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle, resulting in an accident.
- Sudden changes in engine speed, such as engine braking caused by up-shifting or down-shifting, may cause the vehicle to skid, resulting in an accident.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected, resulting in an accident.

**■ When shifting the shift lever**

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.

This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

**■ When the vehicle is stopped**

- Do not race the engine.  
If the vehicle is in any gear other than “P” or “N”, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, and may cause an accident.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running for a long time.  
If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and check that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
- Always keep a foot on the brake pedal while the engine is running to prevent an accident caused by the vehicle moving.

### CAUTION

#### ■ When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.

Failure to do so may result in the following:

- Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
- The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of eye glasses to deform or crack.
- Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.

- Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift lever to "P", stop the engine and lock the vehicle.

Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.

- Do not touch the exhaust pipe while the engine is running or immediately after turning the engine off.

Doing so may cause burns.

- Do not leave the engine running in an area with snow build up, or where it is snowing. If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the engine is running, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

 **CAUTION**
**■ Exhaust gases**

Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO) that is colorless and odorless. Inhaling exhaust gases may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area, stop the engine. In a closed area, such as a garage, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.
- The exhaust should be checked occasionally. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by your Lexus dealer. Failure to do so may allow exhaust gases to enter the vehicle, resulting in death or a serious health hazard.

**■ When taking a nap in the vehicle**

Always turn the engine off.

Otherwise, you may accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, which could cause an accident or fire due to abnormal engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

**■ When braking the vehicle**

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.  
Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.
- If the power brake assist function does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid downhills or sharp turns that require braking.  
In this case, braking is still possible, but it will require more force on the pedal than usual. Braking distance may also increase.
- Do not pump the brake pedal if the engine stalls.  
Each push on the pedal uses up the reserve for the power-assisted brakes.
- The brake system consists of 2 individual hydraulic systems: If one of the systems fails, the other will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and braking distance becomes longer.  
Do not drive your vehicle with only a single brake system. Have your brakes fixed immediately.

### NOTICE

#### ■ **When driving the vehicle**

Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress accelerator and brake pedals together to hold the vehicle on a hill.

#### ■ **When parking the vehicle**

Always put the shift lever in "P". Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

#### ■ **Avoiding damage to vehicle parts**

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for a long time.  
Doing so may damage the power steering pump.
- When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.

#### ■ **If you hear a squealing or scraping noise (brake pad wear limit indicators)**

Have your Lexus dealer check and replace the brake pads as soon as possible. The rotor damage can result if the pads are not replaced when needed.

It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or that of the brake discs are exceeded.

 NOTICE**■ If you get a flat tire while driving**

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually press the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds.
- The vehicle will behave abnormally.

Replace a flat tire with a new one. (→P. 655)

**■ When encountering flooded roads**

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle.

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have your Lexus dealer check the following.

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine, transmission, transfer, differentials, etc.
- Lubricant condition for the propeller shaft, bearings and suspension joints (where possible) and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.

## 2-1. Driving procedures

# Engine (ignition) switch

Modes can be switched by pressing the “ENGINE START STOP” switch when carrying the electronic key on your person. (The engine can be started in any mode by operating the switch at the same time as depressing the brake pedal.)

### ■ Starting the engine

**STEP 1** Check that the parking brake is set.

**STEP 2** Check that the shift lever is set in “P”.

**STEP 3** Sit in the driver’s seat and firmly depress the brake pedal.

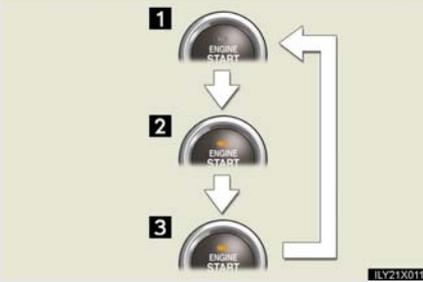
The “ENGINE START STOP” switch indicator turns green.



Press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch.

Continue depressing the brake pedal until the engine is completely started. The engine will crank until it starts or for up to 30 seconds, whichever is less.

## ■ Changing “ENGINE START STOP” switch mode



### 1 OFF mode\*

Emergency flashers can be used.

### 2 ACCESSORY mode

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch indicator turns amber.

### 3 IGNITION ON mode

All electrical components can be used.

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch indicator turns amber.

\*: If the shift lever is in a position other than “P” when turning off the engine, the “ENGINE START STOP” switch will be turned to ACCESSORY mode, not to OFF mode.

### ■ When the steering lock cannot be released



The green indicator light on the “ENGINE START STOP” switch will flash and a message will be shown on the multi-information display. Press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch again while turning the steering wheel left and right.

### ■ If the engine does not start

The engine immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P.108)

### ■ When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch indicator flashes in amber

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

### ■ Auto power off function

If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode for more than an hour with the shift lever in “P”, the “ENGINE START STOP” switch will automatically turn off.

### ■ Electronic key battery depletion

→P.36

### ■ When the electronic key battery is discharged

→P.669

### ■ Conditions affecting operation

→P.34

### ■ Note for the entry function

→P.37

 CAUTION**■ When starting the engine**

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not depress the accelerator while starting the engine under any circumstances.

Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

**■ Stopping the engine in an emergency**

If you want to stop the engine in an emergency while driving the vehicle, push and hold the "ENGINE START STOP" switch for more than 3 seconds.

However, do not touch the "ENGINE START STOP" switch while driving except in an emergency. If the engine stops while the vehicle is being driven, this could lead to an unexpected accident.

 NOTICE**■ To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods without the engine running.

**■ When starting the engine**

- Do not race a cold engine.
- If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have the engine checked immediately by your Lexus dealer.

## 2-1. Driving procedures

# Automatic transmission

Select a shift position appropriate for the driving conditions.

### ■ Shifting the shift lever



← While the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode, depress the brake pedal and move the shift lever.

## ■ Shift position uses

Shift position	Function
P	Parking the vehicle or starting the engine
R	Reversing
N	Neutral
D	Normal driving* <sup>1</sup>
S	"S" mode driving* <sup>2</sup> (→P.172)

\*<sup>1</sup>: To improve fuel consumption and reduce noises, set the shift lever in the "D" position for normal driving.

\*<sup>2</sup>: By selecting shift ranges using "S" mode, you can control engine braking forces.

## ■ Selecting a driving mode

The following patterns can be selected to suit current driving and operating conditions.



### 1 Power mode

For powerful acceleration and driving in mountainous regions.

### 2 Normal mode

### 3 Second start mode

For starting on slippery road surfaces, such as on snow.

Press "2nd" to return to normal mode.

### Changing shift ranges in “S” mode

Shift the shift lever to the “S” position and operate the shift lever.



- 1 Upshifting
- 2 Downshifting

The initial shift range in “S” mode is automatically set to “5” or “4” according to the vehicle’s speed. However, the initial shift range may be set to “3” or “2” if the AI-SHIFT has operated while the shift lever was in the “D” position. (→P. 174)

## ■ Shift ranges and their functions

Shift range	Function
6	Automatically selecting gears between 1 and 6 according to vehicle speed and driving conditions.
5	Automatically selecting gears between 1 and 5 according to vehicle speed and driving conditions.
4	Automatically selecting gears between 1 and 4 according to vehicle speed and driving conditions.
3	Automatically selecting gears between 1 and 3 according to vehicle speed and driving conditions.
2	Automatically selecting gears between 1 and 2 according to vehicle speed and driving conditions.
1	Setting the gear at 1.

A lower shift range will provide greater engine braking force than a higher shift range, and the engine revolutions will also increase.

### ■ “S” mode

When the shift range is “5” or lower, holding the shift lever toward “+” sets the shift range to “6”.

### ■ Downshifting restrictions warning buzzer (in the “S” mode)

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever is operated. (The warning buzzer will sound twice.)

### ■ When driving with the cruise control system

The engine brake will not operate in the “S” mode, even when downshifting to “5” or “4”. (→P.196, 200)

### ■ Second start mode automatic deactivation

Second start mode is automatically deactivated if the engine is turned off after driving in second start mode.

### ■ If the shift lever cannot be shifted from “P”

→P.666

### ■ If the “S” indicator does not come on even after shifting the shift lever to “S”

This may indicate a malfunction in the automatic transmission system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

(In this situation, the vehicle will operate as if the shift lever is in “D”.)

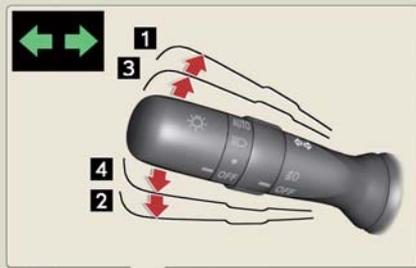
### ■ AI-SHIFT

The AI-SHIFT automatically shifts the gear to the optimal position according to the driver performance and driving conditions.

The AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift lever is in the “D” position. (Shifting the shift lever to the “S” position cancels the function.)

## 2-1. Driving procedures

### Turn signal lever



- 1 Right turn
- 2 Left turn
- 3 Move and hold the lever part-way to signal a lane change.

The right hand signal will flash until you release the lever.

- 4 Move and hold the lever part-way to signal a lane change.

The left hand signal will flash until you release the lever.

2

When driving

#### ■ Turn signals can be operated when

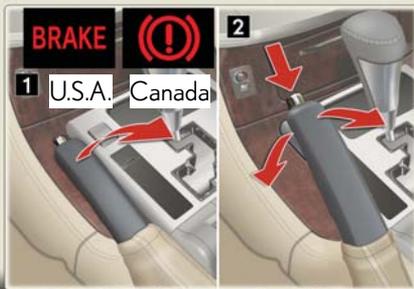
The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

#### ■ If the indicators flash faster than usual

Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.

## 2-1. Driving procedures

# Parking brake



- 1** Sets the parking brake  
Fully set the parking brake while depressing the brake pedal.
- 2** Releases the parking brake  
Slightly raise the lever and lower it completely while pressing the button.

### NOTICE

#### ■ Before driving

Fully release the parking brake.

Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear.

## 2-2. Instrument cluster

# Gauges and meters



The units used on the speedometer may differ depending on the target region.

The following gauges, meters and displays illuminate when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

- 1** Tachometer  
Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute.
- 2** Engine oil pressure gauge  
Displays the engine oil pressure.
- 3** Voltmeter  
Displays the charge state.
- 4** Speedometer  
Displays the vehicle speed.
- 5** Multi-information display  
→P.183
- 6** Fuel gauge  
Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank.

### 7 Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature.

### 8 Odometer and trip meter

Odometer: Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

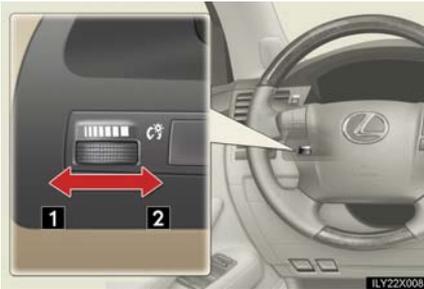
Trip meter: Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters A and B can be used to record and display different distances independently.

### 9 Odometer/trip meter and trip meter reset button

Switches between odometer and trip meter displays. Pushing and holding the button will reset the trip meter when the trip meter is being displayed.

## Instrument panel light control

The brightness of the instrument panel light can be adjusted.



1 Darker

2 Brighter

 NOTICE**■ To prevent damage to the engine and its components**

- Do not let the indicator needle of the tachometer enter the red zone, which indicates the maximum engine speed.
- The engine may be overheating if the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the red zone ("H"). In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P. 676)

**■ While driving**

- When the voltmeter indicates more than 19 V or less than 9 V, the battery may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked at your Lexus dealer.
- When the engine oil pressure gauge does not work properly, immediately stop the engine and contact your Lexus dealer.

## 2-2. Instrument cluster

### Indicators and warning lights

The indicator and warning lights on the instrument cluster and center panel inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.

#### ► Instrument cluster



The units used on the speedometer and some indicators may differ depending on the target region.

#### ► Center panel



## ■ Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.



Turn signal indicator  
(→P. 175)



Crawl Control indicator  
(→P. 254)



Headlight high beam indicator  
(→P. 186)



Roll sensing of curtain shield airbags off indicator  
(→P. 130)



(U.S.A.)

Headlight indicator  
(→P. 186)



"PWR" mode indicator  
(→P. 171)



(Canada)

Tail light indicator  
(→P. 186)



Automatic transmission second start indicator  
(→P. 171)



Fog light indicator  
(→P. 189)



Low speed four-wheel drive indicator light  
(→P. 247)



"AFS OFF" indicator  
(→P. 187)



Center differential lock indicator  
(→P. 247)



Cruise control indicator  
(→P. 196, 200)



Security indicator  
(→P. 108, 111)



Intuitive parking assist indicator  
(→P. 211)



Easy access mode indicator  
(→P. 238)



Slip indicator (→P. 259)



"AIR BAG ON/OFF" indicator  
(→P. 131)

### ■ Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in any of the vehicle's systems. (→P. 638)



\*: These lights turn on when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or if the lights do not turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer for details.

### ⚠ CAUTION

#### ■ If a safety system warning light does not come on

Should a safety system light such as Multi Terrain ABS and the SRS airbag warning light not come on when you start the engine, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.

# Multi-information display

The multi-information display presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data.



- Trip information (→P. 184)

Displays driving range, fuel consumption and other cruising-related information.

- Intuitive parking assist display (→P. 212)

Automatically displayed when using intuitive parking assist.

- Dynamic radar cruise control display (if equipped) (→P. 200)

Automatically displayed when using dynamic radar cruise control.

- 4-Wheel AHC display (→P. 236)

- Crawl Control display (→P. 254)

Automatically displayed when using Crawl Control.

- Shift position and shift range (→P. 172)

- Warning messages (→P. 648)

Automatically displayed when a malfunction occurs in one of the vehicle's system.

## Switch the display



Display items can be switched by pressing the “DISP” switch.

## Trip information

### ■ Outside temperature

Displays the outside air temperature.

The temperature range that can be displayed is from -22°F (-30°C) to 122°F (50°C).

### ■ Current fuel consumption

Displays the current rate of fuel consumption.

### ■ Average fuel consumption

Displays the average fuel consumption since the vehicle was last refueled.

### ■ Driving range

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining.

- This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.
- When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated.

### ■ Average vehicle speed

Displays the average vehicle speed since the engine was started.

### ■ Driving distance

Displays the driving distance since the engine was started.

### ■ Tire inflation pressure

Displays inflation pressure of each tire. There is no correlation between the order of the displayed values and the tire positions.

It may take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode. It may also take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after inflation pressure has been adjusted.

---

### ■ System check display

After switching the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode, "CHECKING" is displayed while system operation is checked. When the system check is complete, the normal screen will return.

### ■ Tire inflation pressure

Tire inflation pressure changes with temperature. The displayed values may also be different from the values measured using other gauges.

### ■ Liquid crystal display

Small spots or light spots may appear on the display. This phenomenon is characteristic of liquid crystal displays, and there is no problem to continue using the display.

### NOTICE

#### ■ The multi-information display at low temperatures

Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the liquid crystal information display. At extremely low temperatures, the information display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.

## 2-3. Operating the lights and wipers

# Headlight switch

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.

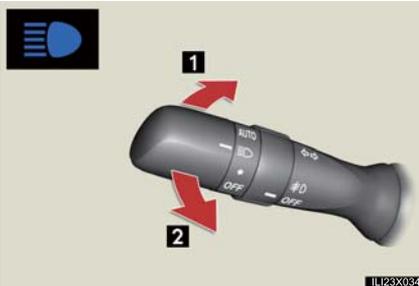


● The side marker, parking, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

☰ The headlights and all lights listed above turn on.

**AUTO** The headlights and all lights listed above turn on and off automatically. (When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.)

### Turning on the high beam headlights



1 With the headlights on, push the lever forward to turn on the high beams.

Pull the lever back to the center position to turn the high beams off.

2 Pull the lever toward you to turn on the high beams.

Release the lever to turn them off. You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

## AFS

AFS (Adaptive Front-lighting System) improves visibility at intersections and on curves by automatically adjusting the direction of the light axis of the headlights according to vehicle speed and the degree of the tire angle that are controlled by steering input.

Operates at speeds of 6 mph (10 km/h) or higher

### ■ Deactivating AFS



On/off

The indicator turns on when the AFS is deactivated.

2

When driving

### ■ Daytime running light system

To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers, the headlights turn on automatically (at a reduced intensity) whenever the engine is started and the parking brake is released. Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.

### ■ Headlight control sensor



The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield.

Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.

### ■ Automatic light off system

- When the headlights are on: The headlights and tail lights turn off 30 seconds after a door is opened and closed if the “ENGINE START STOP” switch has been switched to ACCESSORY or OFF mode.
- When only the tail lights are on: The tail lights turn off automatically if the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is switched to ACCESSORY or OFF mode and driver’s door is opened.

To turn the lights on again, turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to IGNITION ON mode, or turn the light switch off once and then back to the ● or  position.

### ■ Automatic headlight leveling system

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

### ■ If the “AFS OFF” indicator flashes

It may indicate a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

### ■ Customization that can be configured at your Lexus dealer

Settings of the light sensor sensitivity can be changed.  
(Customizable features →P. 708)

#### NOTICE

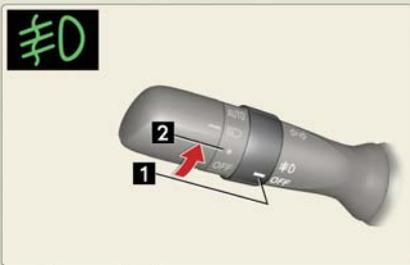
#### ■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

## 2-3. Operating the lights and wipers

### Fog light switch

The fog lights improve visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain or fog. The fog lights can be used when the headlights are on low beam.



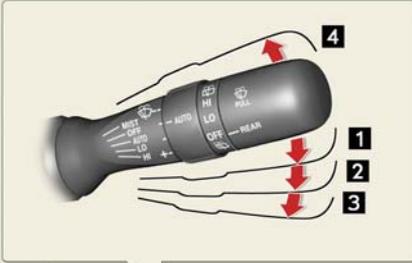
- 1 Off
- 2 On



## 2-3. Operating the lights and wipers

# Windshield wipers and washer

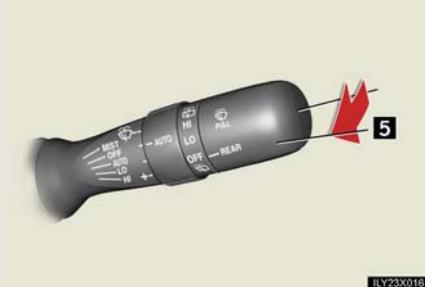
With "AUTO" selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing in accordance with rain volume and vehicle speed.



- 1 Rain-sensing wiper operation
- 2 Low speed wiper operation
- 3 High speed wiper operation
- 4 Temporary operation



JLY23X016



JLY23X016

- 5 Wash/wipe operation  
Wipers operate automatically.

### ■ The windshield wiper and washer can be operated when

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

### ■ Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation

Vehicle speed affects the wiper operation when the washer is being used (delay until drip prevention wiper sweep occurs) even when the wipers are not in “AUTO” mode.

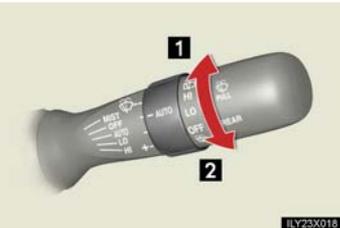
With “LO” selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation only when the vehicle is stationary.

(However, the mode cannot be switched when the adjustment band for the sensor sensitivity is set to the highest position.)

### ■ “AUTO” mode



The raindrop sensor judges the amount of raindrops.



The sensitivity of sensor can be adjusted by twisting the band.

- 1 Sensor sensitivity (low)
- 2 Sensor sensitivity (high)

If the wiper switch is turned to “AUTO” position while the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the wiper will operate once to show that “AUTO” mode is activated.

## 2-3. Operating the lights and wipers

### ■ If no windshield washer fluid sprays

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked and if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

### ■ In extremely hot or cold weather

The system will turn off if the windshield gets extremely hot (at more than 176°F [80 °C] or cold at less than 14°F [-10°C]).

### ■ Windshield wiper features

The rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers automatically turn on when you operate the wipers.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in "AUTO" mode

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in "AUTO" mode. Take care that your fingers or anything else do not become caught in the windshield wipers.

### NOTICE

#### ■ When the windshield is dry

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

#### ■ When there is no washer fluid spray from the nozzle

Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is pulled toward you and held continually.

#### ■ When a nozzle becomes block

Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

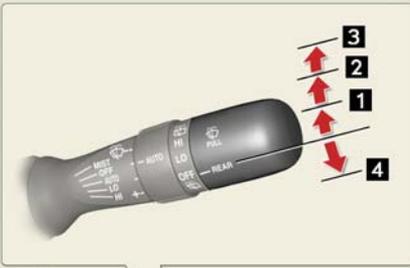
#### ■ When using an automatic car wash

Set the wiper switch to "OFF".

If the wiper switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.

## 2-3. Operating the lights and wipers

### Rear window wiper and washer



- 1 Intermittent window wiper operation
- 2 Normal window wiper operation
- 3 Washer operation
- 4 Washer/wiper dual operation



### ■ The rear window wiper and washer can be operated when

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

### ■ Dripping prevention wiper sweep

After washing and wiping operation several times, the wipers operate one more time after a short delay to prevent dripping.

### ■ Effect of vehicle and shift position on wiper operation

- With "HI" selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation only the vehicle is stationary.
- With "LO" or "OFF" selected, the rear window wiper sweeps once when you shift the shift lever to "R" while windshield wipers operating or with 17 seconds from their deactivation.

### ■ Customization that can be configured at your Lexus dealer

Settings (e.g. drip prevention function) can be changed.

(Customizable features →P. 709)



### NOTICE

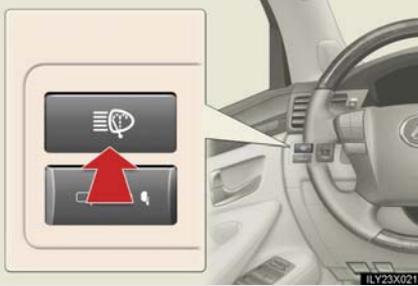
#### ■ When the rear window is dry

Do not use the wiper, as it may damage the rear window.

## 2-3. Operating the lights and wipers

### Headlight cleaner switch (if equipped)

Washer fluid can be sprayed on the headlights.



Press the switch to clean the headlights.

#### ■ The headlight cleaner can be operated when

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the headlight switch is turned on.

#### NOTICE

#### ■ When the washer fluid tank is empty

Do not use this function when the washer fluid tank is empty. This may cause the washer fluid pump to overheat.

## 2-4. Using other driving systems

### Cruise control (if equipped)

Use the cruise control to maintain a set speed without using the accelerator.



#### ■ Set the vehicle speed



Press the “ON-OFF” button to activate the cruise control.

Press the button once more to deactivate the cruise control.



Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed and push the lever down to set the cruise control speed.

### ■ Adjusting the speed setting



- 1 Increase speed
- 2 Decrease speed

Hold the lever until the desired speed setting is obtained.

Fine adjustment of the set speed (approximately 1.0 mph [1.6 km/h]) can be made by lightly pushing the lever up or down and releasing it.

### ■ Canceling and resuming regular acceleration



- 1 Cancel

Pull the lever towards you to cancel cruise control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied.

- 2 Resume

To resume cruise control and return to the set speed, push the lever up.

### ■ Cruise control can be set when

- The shift lever is in “D” or “4”, “5” or “6” range of “S”.
- Vehicle speed is more than approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

### ■ Accelerating

The vehicle can be accelerated normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes.

### ■ Automatic cruise control cancelation

The set speed is automatically canceled in any of the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below the preset vehicle speed.  
At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- Actual vehicle speed is below 25 mph (40 km/h).
- VSC is activated.

### ■ If the cruise control indicator light flashes

Turn the “ON-OFF” button off once, and then reactivate the system.

If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Contact your Lexus dealer and have your Lexus inspected.

 **CAUTION****■ To avoid operating the cruise control by mistake**

Keep the “ON-OFF” button off when not in use.

**■ Situations unsuitable for cruise control**

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations.

Doing so may result in control of the vehicle being lost and could cause serious or fatal accident.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep hills  
Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- On winding roads

## 2-4. Using other driving systems

### Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped)

Dynamic radar cruise control supplements conventional cruise control with a vehicle-to-vehicle distance control. In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates or decelerates in order to maintain a set following distance from vehicles ahead.



#### ■ Set the vehicle speed



Press the "ON-OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Press the button once more to deactivate.



Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed and press the lever down to set.

## ■ Selecting conventional constant speed control mode



**1** Press the “ON-OFF” button to activate the cruise control.

Press the button once more to deactivate the cruise control.

**2** Switch to constant speed control mode. (Push the lever away from you and hold for approximately 1 second.)

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is always reset when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is switched to IGNITION ON mode.

## ■ Adjusting the speed setting



**1** Increase speed

**2** Decrease speed

Hold the lever until the desired speed setting is displayed.

In the constant speed control mode, fine adjustment of the set speed (approximately 1.0 mph [1.6 km/h]) can be made by lightly pressing the lever up or down and releasing it.

### ■ Canceling and resuming the speed setting



#### 1 Cancel

Pull the lever towards you to cancel cruise control.

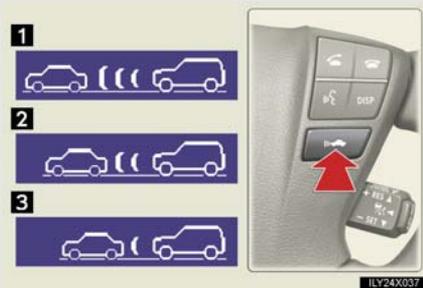
The setting is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed.

#### 2 Resume

To resume cruise control and return to the set speed, push the lever up.

Resuming is available when vehicle speed is 28 mph (45 km/h) or more.

### ■ Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance



Each press of the switch changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance.

#### 1 Long

#### 2 Medium

#### 3 Short

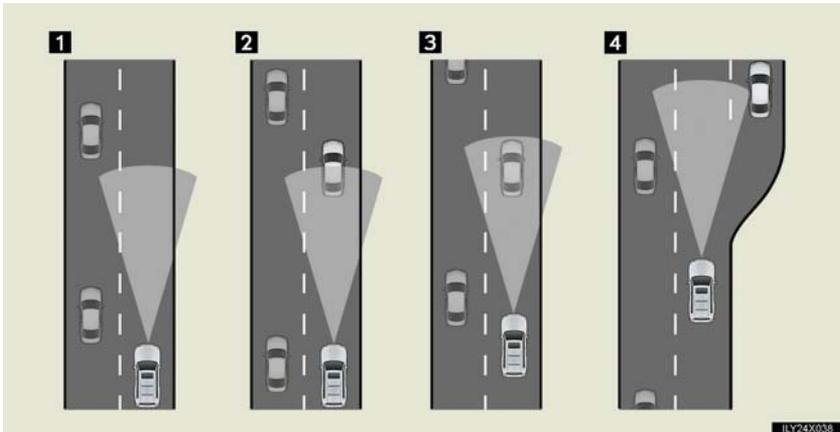
The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is automatically set to the long mode when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is set to IGNITION ON mode.

A mark will be displayed to indicate the presence of the vehicle if a vehicle is running ahead of you.

## Cruising in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar sensor to detect the presence of vehicles within 400 ft. (120 m) ahead and to judge the distance between your vehicle and those vehicles.

Note that vehicle-to-vehicle distance will close when traveling on long downhill slopes.



### 1 Example of constant speed cruising

When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the set speed by the driver. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch.

### 2 Example of deceleration cruising

When the vehicle ahead is driving slower than the set speed

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, in the same lane, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes. A warning tone warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing on the vehicle ahead.

### 3 Example of follow-up cruising

When following a vehicle driving slower than the set speed

The system continues follow-up cruising while adjusting for changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver.

### 4 Example of acceleration

When there are no longer vehicles driving slower than the set speed in the lane ahead

When the vehicle ahead of you executes a lane change, the system slowly accelerates until the set vehicle speed is reached. The system then returns to fixed speed cruising.

## Approach warning

When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Apply the brakes to ensure appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.

---

### ■ Warning lights and messages for dynamic radar cruise control

Warning lights, messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. (→P. 648)

### ■ Switching modes

The mode cannot be switched to constant speed control mode if vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode has been used. The mode also cannot be switched from constant speed control to vehicle-to-vehicle control mode. Turn the system off by pressing the "ON-OFF" button, and turn it on again.

### ■ The dynamic radar cruise can be set when

- The shift lever is in “D” or the “4”, “5” or “6” range of “S”.
- Vehicle speed is between approximately 28 mph (45 km/h) and 84 mph (135 km/h).

### ■ Accelerating

The vehicle can be accelerated normally.

### ■ Automatically canceling vehicle-to-vehicle distance control

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled in the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls below 25 mph (40 km/h)
- VSC is activated
- The windshield wipers are operating at high speed
- The driving mode select switch is set to second start mode
- The sensor cannot operate correctly because it is covered in some way  
Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving must be reset by turning the “ON-OFF” button on again.

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

### ■ Automatically canceling constant speed control

The set speed is automatically canceled in the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed is more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below the preset vehicle speed
- Actual vehicle speed falls below 25 mph (40 km/h)
- VSC is activated

### ■ Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 50 mph (80 km/h). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed.

Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 164 ft. (50 m)
Medium	Approximately 132 ft. (40 m)
Short	Approximately 100 ft. (30 m)

### ■ Radar sensor and grille cover



Always keep the sensor and grille cover clean to ensure that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control operates properly. (Some obstructions, such as snow, ice or plastic objects, cannot be detected by the obstruction sensor.)

Dynamic radar cruise control is canceled if an obstruction is detected.

If the dynamic radar cruise control is used on a road with very light traffic and very little to reflect the radar waves emitted by the radar sensor, the system may decide that the radar sensor is dirty, even if the sensor is not actually dirty. In this case, switch to the conventional constant speed control mode. (→P. 201)

### ■ Approach warning

In the following instances, there is a possibility that the warnings will not occur:

- When the speed of the vehicle ahead matches or exceeds your vehicle's speed
- When the vehicle ahead is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control speed has been set
- At the instant the accelerator is applied

**■ Certification**

- For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

**FCC WARNING**

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**FCC RF exposure Information**

This device complies with the FCC RF exposure requirements.

- For vehicles sold in Canada

Operation is subject to the following two conditions;

- (1) this device may not cause interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Before using dynamic radar cruise control

Do not overly rely on vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.

Be aware of the set vehicle speed. If automatic deceleration/acceleration is not appropriate, adjust the vehicle speed, as well as the distance between your vehicle and vehicles ahead by applying the brakes, etc.

#### ■ To avoid operating the dynamic radar cruise control by mistake

Keep the "ON-OFF" button off when not in use.

#### ■ Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control

Do not use dynamic radar cruise control in any of the following situations.

Doing so may result in inappropriate control of speed and could cause serious or fatal accident.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep downhills, where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients  
Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- At entrances to expressways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from functioning correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, etc.)
- When the approach warning buzzer can be heard often

 **CAUTION****■ When the radar sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead**

Apply the brakes as necessary when any of the following types of vehicles are in front of you.

As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the proximity alarm (→P. 204) will not be activated, and an accident may result.

- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board etc.)
- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane

**■ Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control may not function correctly**

Apply the brakes as necessary in the following conditions as the radar sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, and an accident may result.

- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the functioning of the sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the trunk, etc.)
- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow
- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable
- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly

### CAUTION

#### ■ To ensure the radar sensor functions correctly

Do not do the following to the sensor or grille cover as doing so may cause the sensor not to function correctly and could result an accident.

- Stick or attach anything to them
- Leave them dirty
- Disassemble, or subject them to strong shocks
- Modify or paint them
- Replace them with non-genuine parts

#### ■ Handling the radar sensor

Observe the following to ensure the cruise control system can function effectively.

- Keep the sensor and front grille clean at all times.  
Clean the sensor and front grille with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.  
If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille.

## 2-4. Using other driving systems

### Intuitive parking assist (if equipped)

Intuitive parking assist uses sensors in the corners and rear of the vehicle to detect the distance between the vehicle and any obstacles, and informs the driver of this distance using the multi-information display, the touch screen, and warning beeps.

#### ■ Sensor types



1 Front corner sensors

2 Rear corner sensors

3 Back sensors

#### ■ Intuitive parking assist switch

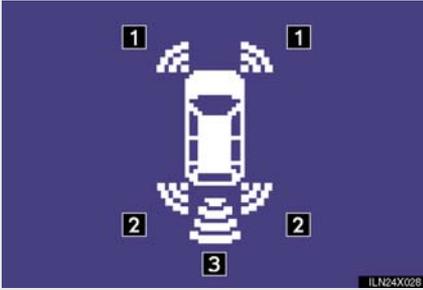


#### On/off

To turn the system on, press the switch. The indicator light comes on to inform the driver that the system is operational.

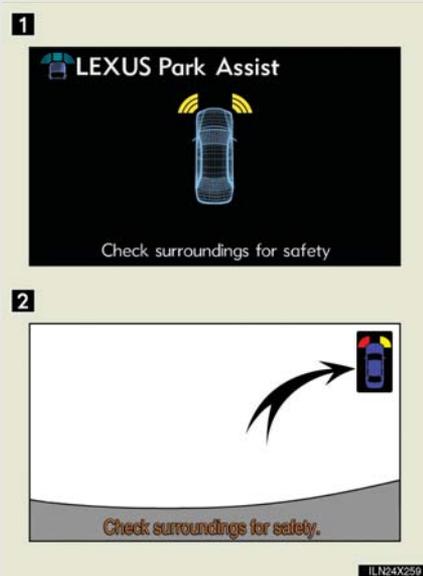
To turn the system off, press the switch again.

### ■ Multi-information display



- 1 Front corner sensor detection
- 2 Rear corner sensor detection
- 3 Back sensor detection

### ■ Touch screen



- 1 When the rear view monitor system or the wide view front & side monitor is not displayed

The graphic is automatically displayed when an obstacle is detected. The screen can be set so that the graphic is not displayed. (→P. 217)

- 2 When the rear view monitor system or the wide view front & side monitor is displayed (insert display)

A simplified image is displayed on the touch screen when an obstacle is detected.

## Sensor detection display, obstacle distance

## ■ Corner sensors

Approximate distance to obstacle	Multi-information display	Touch screen	
			Insert display
Front: 2.0 ft. (60 cm) to 1.6 ft. (47.5 cm) Rear: 2.0 ft. (60 cm) to 1.1 ft. (37.5 cm)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)	 (blinking)
Front: 1.6 ft. (47.5 cm) to 1.1 ft. (35 cm) Rear: 1.1 ft. (37.5 cm) to 1.0 ft. (30 cm)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)	 (blinking rapidly)
Front: Less than 1.1 ft. (35 cm) Rear: Less than 1.0 ft. (30 cm)	 (blinking)	 (continuous)	 (continuous)

■ Back sensors

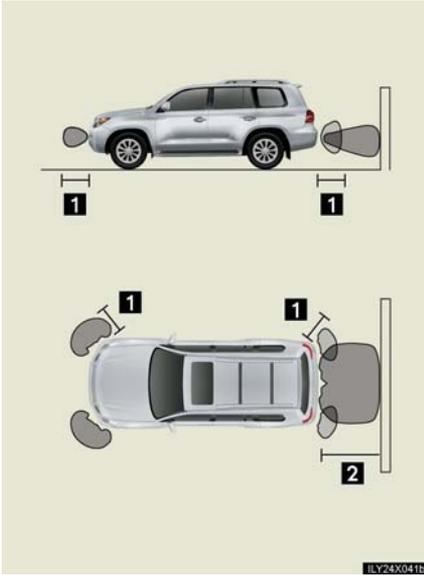
Approximate distance to obstacle	Multi-information display	Touch screen (insert display)
5.0 ft. (150 cm) to 2.0 ft. (60 cm)	 (continuous)	 (blinking slowly)
2.0 ft. (60 cm) to 1.4 ft. (45 cm)	 (continuous)	 (blinking)
1.4 ft. (45 cm) to 1.1 ft. (35 cm)	 (continuous)	 (blinking rapidly)
Less than 1.1 ft. (35 cm)	 (blinking)	 (continuous)

## Beeps and obstacle distance

A beep sounds when the corner sensors and back sensors are operating.

- The beep sounds faster as the vehicle approaches an obstacle.  
When the vehicle comes within the following distance of the obstacle, the beep sounds continuously.
  - Front corner and back sensors: Approximately 1.1 ft. (35 cm)
  - Rear corner sensors: Approximately 1.0 ft. (30 cm)
- When two or more obstacles are detected simultaneously, the beep system responds to the nearest obstacle. If one or both come within the above distances, the beep will repeat a long tone, followed by fast beeps.
- You can change the volume of the warning beeps. (→P. 217)

## Obstacle detection range



**1** About 1.8 ft. (60 cm)

**2** About 5.0 ft. (150 cm)

The detection area of the sensors is shown to the left. If obstacles move too close to the sensors, they will not be detected.

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the object etc.

## Warning beep volume and touch screen settings

You can change the warning beep volume and touch screen operating conditions.

**STEP 1** Press  to display the “Information” screen.

**STEP 2** Touch .

### ■ Changing the warning beep volume

**STEP 1** Touch .

**STEP 2** Touch a switch (from  to ) to adjust the beep volume, then touch .

### ■ Changing display and alert settings

**STEP 1** Touch .

**STEP 2** Touch  to change the distance for the back sensors display and tone indication, then touch .

### ■ Display off setting

Touch .

When an obstacle is detected while the rear view monitor is in use, the warning indicator will appear in the top right of the screen even  has been selected.

### ■ The intuitive parking assist can be operated when

- Front corner sensors:
  - The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
  - The shift lever is in a position other than “P”.
  - The vehicle speed is less than about 6 mph (10 km/h).
- Rear corner and back sensors:
  - The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
  - The shift lever is in “R”.

### ■ Sensor detection information

- Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of the sensor to correctly detect obstacles. Particular instances where this may occur are listed below.
  - There is dirt, snow or ice on the sensor. (Wiping the sensor will resolve this problem.)
  - The sensor is frozen. (Thawing the sensor will resolve this problem.)
  - The sensor is covered in any way.
  - In harsh sunlight or intense cold weather.
  - When driving on bumpy, sloped or gravel roads, or over grass.
  - If there is something producing ultrasonic waves nearby, such as another vehicle’s horn, motorcycle engine noise, air braking sound from heavy-duty vehicles, or another vehicle using the park assist system.
  - In heavy rain, or if water is splashed on the sensors.
  - The vehicle is leaning considerably to one side.
  - If a commercial fender pole or radio antenna is installed.
  - If moving towards a high curb or a curb corner.
  - If towing eyelet is installed on your vehicle.
  - The bumper or sensor receives a strong impact.
  - A non-genuine Lexus suspension (lowered suspension etc.) is installed.

In addition to the examples above, there are instances in which, because of their shapes, signs and other objects may be judged by the sensor to be closer than they are.

- The shape of the obstacle may prevent the sensor from detecting it. Pay particular attention to the following obstacles.
  - Thin objects such as wire, fencing or rope.
  - Objects that absorb sound waves, such as cotton or snow.
  - Objects with sharp corners.
  - Low objects.
  - Objects where the upper section projects out over the lower section.

■ **If a message is displayed on the multi-information display**

→P. 648

■ **When there is a malfunction**

In the following cases, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- If the bumper is damaged.
- If the intuitive parking assist indicator light remains on without a beep sounds.

■ **Certification**

- ▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions;

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

- ▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

This ISM device complies with Canadian ICES-001.

Cet appareil ISM est conforme a la norme NMB-001 du Canada.

### CAUTION

#### ■ When using the intuitive parking assist

Observe the following precautions.

Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely and possibly cause an accident.

- Do not use the sensor at speeds in excess of 6 mph (10 km/h).
- When moving forward or reversing, always check your surroundings for safety and drive carefully.
- Do not install accessories within the sensors' detection areas.

### NOTICE

#### ■ When washing the vehicle

Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area.

Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.

## 2-4. Using other driving systems

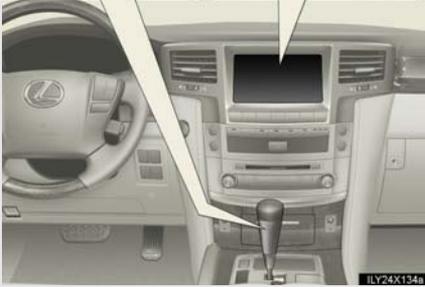
### Rear view monitor system (if equipped)

The rear view monitor system assists the driver by displaying an image of the view behind the vehicle while reversing. The image is displayed in reverse on the screen. This allows the image to appear in the same manner as that of the rear view mirror.

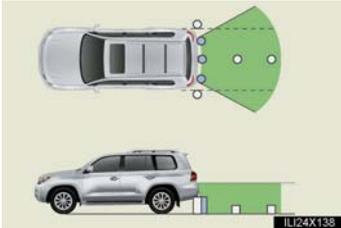


Rear view image is displayed when the shift lever is in "R".

If you move the lever out of "R", the screen returns to the previous one.

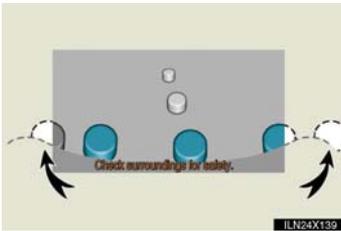


### ■ Displayed area



The area covered by the camera is limited. Objects which are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen.

The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.



### ■ Rear view monitor system camera



In the following cases, it may be difficult to see the images on the screen, even when the system is functioning correctly.

- In the dark (e.g. at night).
- If the temperature near the lens is extremely high or low.
- If water droplets get on the camera, or when humidity is high (e.g. when it rains).
- If foreign matter (e.g. snow or mud) get on the camera lens.
- If the sun or headlights are shining directly into the camera lens.

## ■ Smear effect



If a bright light (for example, sunlight reflected off the vehicle body) is picked up by the camera, a smear effect\* peculiar to the camera may occur.

\*: Smear effect—A phenomenon that occurs when a bright light (for example, sunlight reflected off the vehicle body) is picked up by the camera; when transmitted by the camera, the light source appears to have a vertical streak above and below it.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- **When using the rear view monitor system, observe these precautions to avoid an accident that could result in death or serious injuries.**
  - Never depend solely on the monitor system when reversing.
  - Always check visually and with the mirrors to confirm your intended path is clear.
  - Depicted distances between objects and flat surfaces differ from actual distances.
  - Do not use the system if the back door is not completely closed.
- **Conditions which may affect the rear view monitor system**
  - If the back of the vehicle is hit, the camera's position and mounting angle may change. Contact your Lexus dealer.
  - Rapid temperature changes, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, may cause the system to function abnormally.
  - If the camera lens is dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. Rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If extremely dirty, wash with a mild cleanser and rinse.
  - The displayed image may be darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the system is cold.

## 2-4. Using other driving systems

### Wide view front & side monitor (if equipped)

This system can display the wide view front monitor and the side monitor separately or at the same time.

The wide view front monitor uses a super-wide angle lens to display on screen the areas to the left and right of the vehicle and the blind spots to the front of the vehicle. This system helps the driver check for approaching cars, bicycles and pedestrians when at intersections with poor visibility.

The side monitor uses a camera installed in the passenger's side outside rear view mirror to display on screen the area to the front-right of the vehicle, helping the driver check this area.



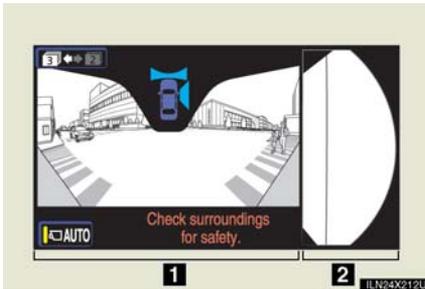
#### On/off

The simultaneous display screen is displayed when the "VIEW" switch is pressed.

## Display

### ■ Wide view front & side monitor simultaneous display

Both the wide view front monitor and the side monitor are displayed on one screen. When switching to the wide view front & side monitors this screen is displayed first, regardless of the screen mode.



1 Wide view front monitor

2 Side monitor

2

When driving

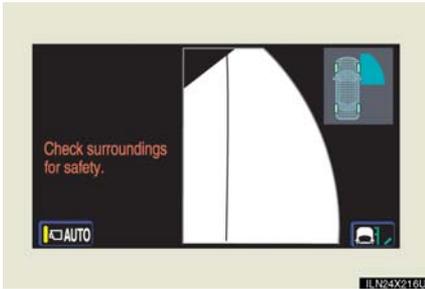
### ■ Wide view front monitor

The image from the front camera is displayed. Use this monitor to help check the area in front of the vehicle for safety, for example in intersections with poor visibility.



### ■ Side monitor

The image from the side camera is displayed (the right front view is expanded and displayed). Use this monitor to help check the area to the right of the vehicle, for example when taking off and stopping, when turning right, etc.

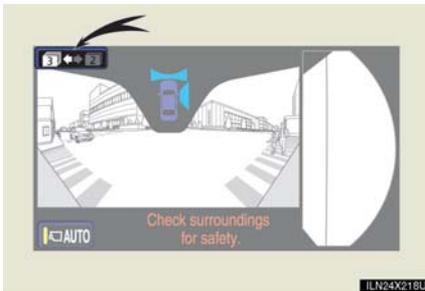


## ■ Changing the screen mode

This system has a 2 screen mode and a 3 screen mode.

2 screen mode: Only the wide view front & side monitor simultaneous display can be used.

3 screen mode: The wide view front & side monitor simultaneous display or the individual display can be used. The display can be switched between the simultaneous display and the individual display by operating the "VIEW" switch.



The screen mode is changed from the wide view front & side monitor simultaneous display screen. The screen mode will change as the  or  buttons are touched.

If the screen is changed to the wide view front & side monitor simultaneous display screen while the Lexus parking assist monitor is displayed, it is not possible to switch to the 3 screen mode. (The switch is not displayed.)

### ■ Changing the display in 3 screen mode

When in 3 screen mode, you can change the display from the simultaneous display to each individual display.

The screen changes as follows with each press of the “VIEW” switch. When the wide view front monitor was displayed the previous time:



When the side monitor was displayed the previous time:



The wide view front monitor and side monitor individual displays are not accessible when the shift lever is in “R”.

### ■ Automatic display mode

You can set the automatic display mode, which automatically changes the display.

Touch .

When automatic display mode is on, you can have the system display automatically in the following situations:

- When the shift lever is in “N”, “D” or “S”.
- When the shift lever is in a position other than “R”, and the vehicle speed is approximately 6 mph (10 km/h) or less.

 will not be displayed when the shift lever is in “R”.

### ■ The wide view front & side monitor can be operated when

- The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- The vehicle speed is less than approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).

### ■ Automatic system cancelation

In the following situations, the system is canceled automatically.

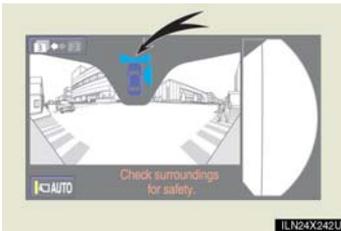
- When the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 7 mph (12 km/h).
- When the shift lever is in “R”.

### ■ When the outside rear view mirrors have been folded

The side monitor screen can be displayed even if the outside rear view mirrors have been folded. In this case, there will be a slight difference between the image displayed when the outside rear view mirrors are extended and when the outside rear view mirrors have been folded.

If the side monitor is displayed while the outside rear view mirrors are folded, you cannot check the area near the front edge of the vehicle as the base of the outside rear view mirrors will be in the way.

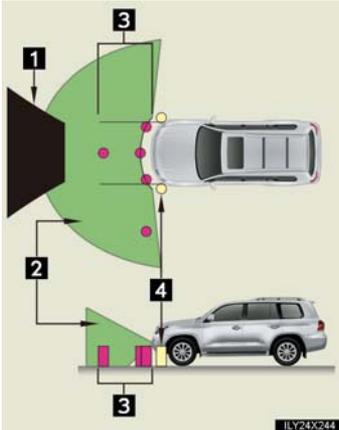
### ■ When switched to from the Lexus parking assist monitor



If the wide view front & side monitor is switched to from the Lexus parking assist monitor, the icon display area will flash to inform the driver that the currently displayed area is the front or side. The icon display area will continue to flash until the screen is turned off.

### ■ Displayed area

#### ▶ Front camera



#### 1 Masking

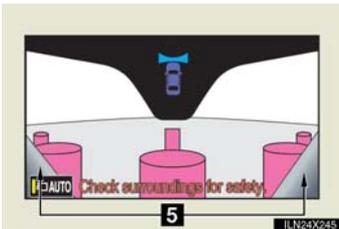
This section is masked to avoid creating a false sense of distance in front of the vehicle.

#### 2 Camera's field of view

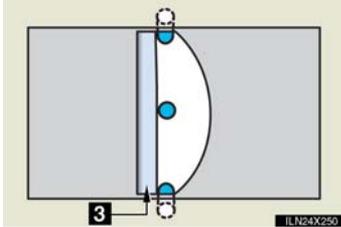
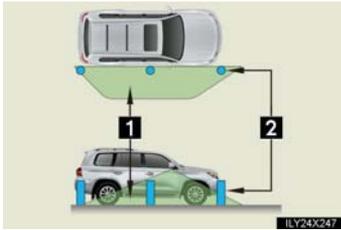
#### 3 Objects visible to the camera

#### 4 Objects not visible to the camera

#### 5 Parts of the vehicle (bumper, grill, etc.)



### ► Side camera



- 1 Camera's field of view
- 2 Objects visible to the camera
- 3 Right side of vehicle

The area covered by the camera is limited. Objects which are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen.

The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.

### ■ Wide view front & side monitor cameras

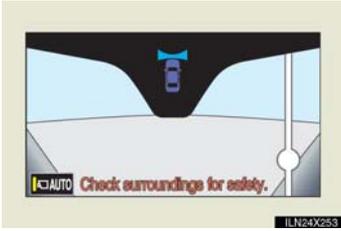


- 1 Side camera
- 2 Front camera

In the following cases, it may be difficult to see the images on the screen, even when the system is functioning correctly.

- In the dark (e.g. at night).
- If the temperature near the lens is extremely high or low.
- If water droplets get on the camera, or when humidity is high (e.g. when it rains).
- If foreign matter (e.g. snow or mud) get on the camera lens.
- If the sun or headlights are shining directly into the camera lens.

### ■ Smear effect



If a bright light (for example, sunlight reflected off the vehicle body) is picked up by the camera, a smear effect\* peculiar to the camera may occur.

\*: Smear effect -A phenomenon that occurs when a bright light (for example, sunlight reflected off the vehicle body) is picked up by the camera; when transmitted by the camera, the light source appears to have a vertical streak above and below it.

 **CAUTION**

- **When using the wide view front & side monitor system, observe these precautions to avoid an accident that could result in death or serious injuries.**
  - Never depend solely on the monitor system.
  - Always check visually to confirm your intended path is clear.
  - Depicted distances between objects and flat surfaces differ from actual distances.
  - Do not use the system if the hood or the front passenger's door is not completely closed.
- **Conditions which may affect the wide view front & side monitor system**
  - If the front of the vehicle or the passenger side outside rear view mirror is hit, the camera's position and mounting angle may change. Contact your Lexus dealer.
  - Rapid temperature changes, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, may cause the system to function abnormally.
  - If the camera lens is dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. Rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If extremely dirty, wash with a mild cleanser and rinse.
  - The displayed image may be darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the system is cold.
  - Situations unsuitable for wide view front & side monitor
    - On icy or slick road surfaces, or in snow.
    - When using tire chains or emergency tires.
    - On roads that are not flat or straight, such as curves or slopes.

### NOTICE

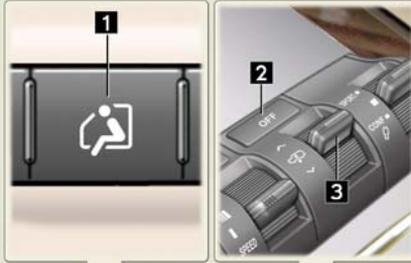
#### ■ When using the wide view front & side monitor

Even if an obstacle is no longer visible on the side monitor, do not turn the steering wheel further in the direction the vehicle is turning until the vehicle has moved completely past the obstacle. If the steering wheel is turned to full lock, the vehicle will turn in the smallest possible turning circle, and may collide with the obstacle.

## 2-4. Using other driving systems

# 4-Wheel AHC (Active Height Control Suspension)

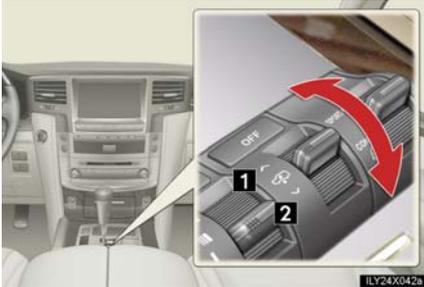
The 4-Wheel AHC adjusts the vehicle height in accordance with driving conditions. There are 3 selectable modes, "HI" (high), "N" (normal), and "LO" (low).



- 1 Easy access mode switch
- 2 Height control switch
- 3 Height select switch

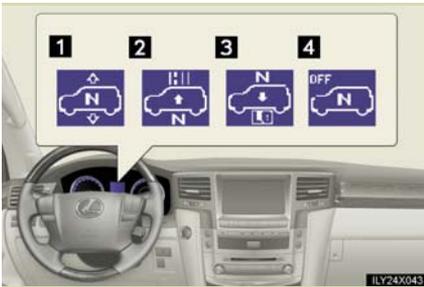


## Selecting vehicle height



- 1 Higher
- 2 Lower

## Display



- 1 Current mode

The vehicle is in the “N” (normal) height mode in the illustration.  and  show directions in which it is possible to adjust the vehicle height.

- 2 Height up
- 3 Height down
- 4 Height control “OFF” indicator

When the height control “OFF” indicator is displayed, the vehicle height will not change even if the height select switches are operated.

## Vehicle height modes

Push the height select switch to “^” to step up one height mode, and pull to “v” to step down one height mode. (Ex. When in the low height mode, push to “^” once to switch to the normal height mode, and twice to switch to the high height mode.)

### ■ “HI” (high) height mode

Vehicle height is about 2.0 in. (50 mm) higher at the front, and about 2.4 in. (60 mm) higher at the rear than the normal mode height.

This mode is suitable when driving on bumpy roads or through water. High height mode is only available when the vehicle speed is under 19 mph (30 km/h).

### ■ “N” (normal) height mode

The standard vehicle height. This mode is suitable for ordinary driving.

### ■ “LO” (low) height mode

Vehicle height is about 2.4 in. (60 mm) lower at the front, and about 1.6 in. (40 mm) lower at the rear than the normal mode height.

This mode allows easy access to the vehicle.

Low height mode is only available when the vehicle is stopped. When the vehicle speed exceeds 8 mph (12 km/h), normal height mode is automatically selected.

### Conditions for changing the vehicle height mode

Some modes may not be selectable depending on the vehicle speed when the four-wheel drive control switch is in the “H4” position. Refer to the following table.

	Low mode	Normal mode	High mode
Under 7 mph (12 km/h)	Yes	Yes	Yes
7 mph (12 km/h) to 19 mph (30 km/h)	No	Yes	Yes
19 mph (30 km/h) or over	No	Yes	No

### Easy access mode



You can select this mode for easy access and easy loading of the vehicle.

If the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to OFF mode when this mode is on, the vehicle height is lowered automatically.

When the vehicle begins to lower a beep will sound twice, and while the vehicle is lowering the indicator light will flash to alert the driver and surrounding people that the vehicle is lowering.

The indicator light stops blinking, and comes on continuously to indicate that the shift is completed.

Easy access mode is available if the following conditions have been met:

- The vehicle height mode is in normal mode.
- The vehicle is stopped on a flat surface.
- The shift lever is in “P”.

The following method will cancel the vehicle lowering operation and raise the vehicle again:

- Press the height control switch.
- Push the height select switch to “^”.

### Disabling the height control



Push while the vehicle is stopped. The “OFF” indicator will appear on the multi-information display, and the vehicle height will be fixed in the current mode. Push the switch again to turn the system back on.

2

When driving

#### ■ Operating conditions

- The engine must be running.
- All side doors and the back door must be closed.

#### ■ Automatic change in vehicle height when in the high mode

- If the vehicle speed exceeds 19 mph (30 km/h) with the four-wheel drive control switch in the “H4” position, normal mode is automatically selected.
- If the vehicle speed exceeds 25 mph (40 km/h) with the four-wheel drive control switch in the “L4” position, the vehicle height is lowered to 1.0 in. (25 mm) higher than the normal mode height. If the vehicle speed drops to 13 mph (20 km/h) or less, high mode is automatically resumed.

### ■ Extra high mode

If the vehicle becomes stuck or the Crawl Control system requests the vehicle height be raised, extra high mode may be automatically selected when the vehicle height is in high mode with the four-wheel drive control switch in the “L4” position. The vehicle height is raised to 0.8 in. (20 mm) higher than the high mode height, or slightly higher.

- Extra high mode will change back to high mode when:
  - The vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h)
  - The four-wheel drive control switch is shifted to “H4”.
- If you pull the height select switch to “v” when in extra high mode, normal mode is selected.
- Extra high mode cannot be manually selected.

### ■ Turning off the 4-Wheel AHC

- The system will remain off until the height control “OFF” switch is pushed again, even if the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned off.
- Even if the system is turned off, the system automatically modulated if the vehicle speed exceeds following.
  - 19 mph (30 km/h) with high or low mode
  - 50 mph (80 km/h) with normal mode

### ■ If the vehicle travels at high speed while in normal mode

The vehicle’s height will automatically lower by 0.8 in. (20 mm) at the front and 0.6 in. (15 mm) at the rear. If the vehicle’s speed decreases, the vehicle’s height automatically returns to normal.

If the vehicle is loaded with heavy items, a shock may be felt at this time.

### ■ When driving on bumpy roads with the four-wheel drive control switch in “L4”

High mode is automatically selected.

### ■ Automatic leveling function

The vehicle is adjusted to a fixed height for each mode, regardless of the number of occupants and the luggage load.

● However the vehicle cannot be raised if the vehicle load exceeds the following limits:

- Up to 4 occupants\* plus approximately 706 lb. (320 kg) in the normal mode
- Up to 4 occupants\* plus approximately 419 lb. (190 kg) in the high mode

\*: average weight 150 lb. (68 kg) per person

● If the vehicle height cannot be raised when in the normal mode, and “LO” appears on the display, the vehicle is loaded too heavily. Take extra care when driving in this condition.

If the vehicle height cannot be raised even after unloading the vehicle, pull the height select switch to “∨” then push to “∧”. If the vehicle height still cannot be raised, turn the ignition off then on again, then try once more.

### ■ If the vehicle height does not change

If the vehicle is loaded too heavily, or the undercarriage has come into contact with the road surface, the vehicle height cannot be raised/lowered.

### ■ In the following cases the 4-Wheel AHC will not operate

- The brake pedal has been depressed for a few seconds or longer while the vehicle is stopped. (Except when the four-wheel drive control switch is in "L4".)
- The suspension fluid temperature is lower than -22°F (-30°C).
- Driving on bumpy roads which may cause the suspension to fully elongate.
- If the steering wheel is abruptly turned more than 3/4 of a revolution with the center differential lock system activated.

### ■ Cold weather operation

It may take longer for the vehicle height to change if the suspension fluid temperature drops below -5°F (-15°C).

The 4-Wheel AHC does not operate when the suspension fluid temperature drops below -22°F (-30°C).

- In this case, even if the height select switch is pressed, the vehicle height will not change. Once the engine has warmed the suspension fluid to within normal operating limits, the 4-Wheel AHC will begin operating and the vehicle height will automatically change to the selected mode.
- When the suspension fluid is around -22°F (-30°C), the vehicle height may not be able to be raised, even if the 4-Wheel AHC is operating. In this case, pull the height select switch to "v" then push to "^" after further warming the engine to select the desired vehicle height.

### ■ Parking and stopping tips

- If you immediately stop the engine after off-road driving, or park the vehicle for a long time, the vehicle height may gradually lower. When parking, make sure there is nothing under the vehicle that may come in contact with the underbody. The vehicle will return to the set height when the engine is started.
- The vehicle height may change as the temperature changes when the engine is stopped. The vehicle will return to the set height when the engine is started.

### ■ Propeller shaft noise

If the vehicle height is adjusted on a slope, or with the selector lever in a position other than “P” or “N” while the vehicle is stopped, you may hear a sound caused by the expansion and contraction of the propeller shaft. This does not indicate a malfunction.

### ■ Continued system operation

Even if the engine is stopped while the vehicle height is being lowered, operation will continue for up to 30 seconds.

### ■ 4-Wheel AHC failure warning

If a malfunction occurs in the 4-Wheel AHC or AVS system, normal mode is automatically selected. However, the system may not switch to normal mode depending on the location of the malfunction.

The warning message is displayed on the multi-information display, and the 4-Wheel AHC cannot be activated until the malfunction is corrected.

Stop the engine and start it again. If the warning message turns off, the system is operating correctly. If the warning message continues to be displayed, have the vehicle checked at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Using the high mode

These modes should only be used for rough off-road conditions. Because the vehicle's center of gravity is higher when in these modes, the vehicle may become unstable when turning abruptly, resulting in an accident.

#### ■ When jacking up the vehicle or installing tire chains

Turn off the 4-Wheel AHC and stop the engine, otherwise the vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function, resulting in an accident.

#### ■ When driving through water deeper than 1.6 ft. (0.5 m)

Select the high mode and turn off the 4-Wheel AHC. Drive at 19 mph (30 km/h) or lower. Otherwise the vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function, resulting in an accident.

#### ■ If your vehicle must be towed

Put the vehicle height in the normal mode and turn off the 4-Wheel AHC, otherwise the vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function, resulting in an accident.

#### ■ If your vehicle becomes stuck in a ditch

Turn off the 4-Wheel AHC, otherwise the vehicle height may change due to the automatic leveling function, resulting in an accident.

 NOTICE**■ To avoid damage to the vehicle**

- After unloading, the vehicle height may be slightly higher than normal. Take care when overhead height is limited.
- Before lowering the vehicle height, check that no-one is under the vehicle and the area is free of obstructions. Also check that the underbody of the vehicle will not touch the ground.
- Do not select the low mode when driving on bumpy roads, as the underbody of the vehicle may contact the road surface.
- When travelling on bumpy roads or through water, or when towing, turn off easy access mode.

**■ Avoid rapid changes to the vehicle height**

As the pump may overheat. Leave at a few minute between selections when changing the vehicle height mode.

## 2-4. Using other driving systems AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension)

AVS controls the suspension according to the road and driving conditions. Selecting an optimum driving mode allows good riding comfort and stability.



- 1 For driving on a bumpy road
- 2 For ordinary driving such as in the city traffic
- 3 For sporty type driving such as on winding mountain roads and high speed driving

### ■ Driving mode

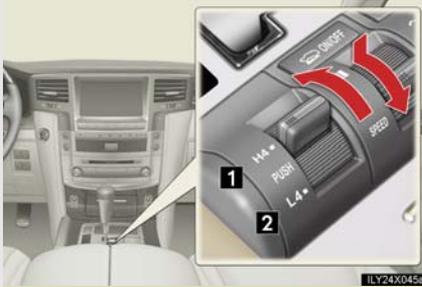
- Mode **2** is suitable for ordinary driving.
- Mode **3** is suitable for heavy load or driving on a unpaved road.
- With the four-wheel drive control switch at "L4", the damping effect suitable for off-road driving will be provided.

## 2-4. Using other driving systems

### Four-wheel drive system

Use the four-wheel drive control switch and center differential lock/unlock switch to select the following transfer and center differential modes.

#### ■ Four-wheel drive control switch



#### 1 "H4" (high speed position)

Normal driving on all types of roads.

#### 2 "L4" (low speed position)

Driving requiring maximum power and traction such as climbing or descending steep hills, off-road driving, and hard pulling in sand or mud, etc.

#### ■ Center differential lock/unlock switch



Lock the center differential when your vehicle's wheels get stuck in a ditch or when driving on a slippery or bumpy surface.

Unlock the center differential after the wheels have been freed, or after moving to a flat, non-slippery surface.

## Shifting between “H4” and “L4”

### ■ Shifting from “H4” to “L4”

**STEP 1** Stop the vehicle completely.

**STEP 2** Shift the shift lever to “N”.

**STEP 3** Push and shift the four-wheel drive control switch to “L4”.

Maintain this condition until the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light turns on.

### ■ Shifting from “L4” to “H4”

**STEP 1** Stop the vehicle completely.

**STEP 2** Shift the shift lever to “N”.

**STEP 3** Shift the four-wheel drive control switch to “H4”.

Maintain this condition until the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light turns off.

## Neutral position

Shifting to the neutral position cuts drive power to the wheels.

### ■ Shifting from “H4” to the neutral position

**STEP 1** Stop the vehicle completely.

Make sure the vehicle is stopped in a safe place while carrying out the following procedure.

**STEP 2** Confirm the following:

- The four wheel-drive control switch is in “H4”. (The low speed four-wheel drive indicator light is not illuminated.)

If the switch is in “L4”, turn it to “H4”. (→P. 247)

- The center differential is unlocked. (The center differential lock indicator light is not illuminated.)

If the center differential is locked, press the center differential lock/unlock switch to unlock the center differential. (→P. 247)

**STEP 3** Set the parking brake firmly and put the shift lever in “N”.

**STEP 4** Turn the engine off if the engine is running, then turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to the IGNITION ON mode.

Do not start the engine till the end of the procedure.

**STEP 5** Shift the shift lever to “P”.

**STEP 6** Depress and release the brake pedal 3 times.

Depress the pedal firmly each time, then keep the pedal depressed the third time.

**STEP 7** Shift the shift lever to “N”.

**STEP 8** Depress and release the brake pedal 3 times.

Release the brake pedal once and then depress and release the brake pedal 3 times.

Depress the pedal firmly each time, then keep the pedal depressed the third time.

**STEP 9** Shift the four-wheel drive control switch to “L4”, then shift to “H4” again.

When shifting the four-wheel drive control switch, push the switch down while turning it.

The low speed four-wheel drive indicator light will flash slowly (turns on and off every 2 seconds).

**STEP 10** Shift the shift lever to “P”.

Shifting to the neutral position is completed with above procedure.

The unengaged “Park” warning light will turn on when the shift lever is shifted to the “P” position.

To return to “H4” when the vehicle is in this condition, carry out the following procedure.

### ■ Shifting from neutral position to “H4”

**STEP 1** Stop the vehicle completely.

Make sure the vehicle is stopped in a safe place while carrying out the following procedure.

**STEP 2** Set the parking brake firmly.

**STEP 3** Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to the IGNITION ON mode.

Do not start the engine at this time.

**STEP 4** Depress the brake pedal firmly.

Keep the brake pedal depressed till the end of the procedure.

**STEP 5** Shift the shift lever to “N”.

**STEP 6** Shift the four-wheel drive control switch to “L4”, and then shift to “H4” again.

When shifting the four-wheel drive control switch, push the switch down while turning it.

The low speed four-wheel drive indicator light will turn off.

Shifting to “H4” is completed when the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light turns off.

■ **The four-wheel drive control switch can be operated when**

- The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- The shift lever is in the “N” position.
- The vehicle is stopped completely.

■ **⚠ Advice for driving on slippery roads in “L4” (low speed position)**

- If you shift the four-wheel drive control switch to “L4” and the shift lever to the “2” range of “S” while driving in steep off-road areas, the output of the brake can be controlled effectively by the active traction control system, which assists the driver to control the driving power of 4 wheels.
- Use the “1” range of “S” of the shift lever for maximum power and traction when your wheels get stuck or when driving down a steep incline. In the following cases, the output of the brake can be controlled by the active traction control system if the engine speed is under 3000 rpm (normally under 3000 rpm when the wheels get unstuck).
  - The four-wheel drive control switch is in the “L4” position and the shift lever is in the “1” range of “S” or the shift lever is in “D” or “S” with the transmission downshifted to first gear.
  - The four-wheel drive control switch is in the “L4” position and the shift lever is in the “R” position.

■ **The center differential lock/unlock button can be operated when**

- The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- The vehicle speed is less than 60 mph (100 km/h).

### ■ Locking/unlocking the center differential

- When the center differential is locked, VSC (vehicle stability control) is automatically turned off. (The center differential lock and “VSC OFF” indicator lights come on.)
- If the operation is not completed, the center differential lock indicator blinks. If the indicator light does not turn off when unlocking the center differential, drive straight ahead while accelerating or decelerating, or drive in reverse.
- If the center differential lock/unlock is not completed within 5 seconds while the cruise control system is on, cancel the cruise control system.

### ■ If the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light or the center differential lock indicator light blinks

- If the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light continues to blink when using the four-wheel drive control switch, stop the vehicle completely, move the shift lever to “N” and operate the switch again.
- If the shift lever is moved before the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light has turned on/off, a beep sounds and the transfer position may not successfully change. In this case, stop the vehicle completely, return the shift lever to “N” and operate the switch again.
- If the engine coolant temperature is too low, the four-wheel drive control system may not be able to shift. When the engine is warmer operate the switch again.

If the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light or the center differential lock indicator light continues to blink even after attempting the above, there may be a malfunction in the engine, the brake system or the four-wheel drive system. In this case, you may not be able to shift between “H4” and “L4”, and the center differential lock may not be operable. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

 CAUTION■ **While driving**

Never move the four-wheel drive control switch if the wheels have lost traction. Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

 NOTICE■ **To prevent damage to the center differential**

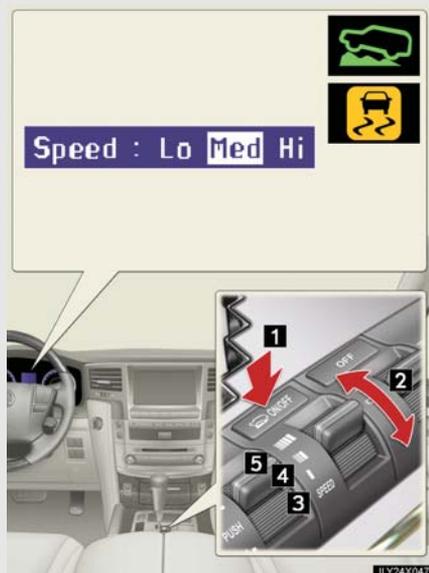
- For normal driving on dry and hard surface roads, unlock the center differential.
- Unlock the center differential after the wheels are out of the ditch or off the slippery or bumpy surface.
- Do not push the center differential lock/unlock button when the vehicle is turning or when its wheels are spinning freely off the ground.

## 2-4. Using other driving systems

# Crawl Control

Allows travel on extremely rough off-road surfaces at a fixed low speed without pressing the accelerator or brake pedal. Minimizes loss of traction or vehicle slip when driving on slippery road surfaces, allowing for stable driving.

### ■ Crawl Control switch



#### 1 On/off

The Crawl Control indicator is lit and the slip indicator flashes when operating.

#### 2 Speed selection switch

#### 3 Low mode

Effective when traveling on rocks and pebbles.\*

#### 4 Medium mode

Effective when traveling on snow mounds or descending a slope of rubble.\*

#### 5 High mode

Effective when ascending a slope of rubble, or traveling on snow, dirt, mud, sand, gravel, grass etc.\*

\*: Depending on the road surface, may not be the most effective.

### When the system is turned off

If the system is turned off when Crawl Control is operating, a buzzer will sound for 3 seconds, the slip indicator turns off, and the Crawl Control indicator flashes until the system has turned off completely. When turning off Crawl Control while traveling, stop the vehicle before the Crawl Control indicator turns off, or drive extremely carefully.

#### ■ The Crawl Control can be operated when

- The engine is running.
- The shift lever is in any gear other than “P” or “N”.
- The four-wheel drive control switch is in “L4”.
- The parking brake is released.
- The driver’s door is closed.
- When the driving mode is not set to second start mode.

### ■ Automatic system cancelation

In the following situations, the system is canceled automatically, and the Crawl Control indicator will turn off:

- When the shift lever is moved to “P”.
- When the four-wheel drive control switch is in “H4”.

In the following situations, it is possible to descend a slope at a fixed low speed, however when traveling the system is canceled automatically, and the crawl indicator will turn off.

- When the shift lever is moved to “N”.
- When the vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).
- When the brake pedal is depressed firmly.
- When the parking brake is engaged.
- If the driver’s door is opened.
- When the driving mode is set to second start mode.

### ■ If the brake system overheats

The system will cease operation and a buzzer will sound to alert the driver. Stop the vehicle in a safe place. (There is no problem with continuing normal driving.)

### ■ If the automatic transmission system overheats

The system will cease operation, a buzzer will sound and a warning message will be displayed to alert the driver. Stop the vehicle in a safe place until the warning message turns off.

### ■ Sounds and vibrations caused by the Crawl Control system

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in Crawl Control system.
- Either of the following conditions may occur when the Crawl Control system is operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.

### CAUTION

#### ■ When using Crawl Control

Do not rely overmuch on the Crawl Control. This function does not extend the vehicle's performance limitations. Always thoroughly check the road conditions, and drive safely.

#### ■ Conditions under which the system may not operate correctly

When driving on the following surfaces, the system may not be able to maintain a fixed low speed, which may result in an accident:

- Extremely steep inclines.
- Extremely uneven surfaces.
- Snow-covered roads, or other slippery surfaces.

### Driving assist systems

To help enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

#### ■ Multi Terrain ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface, or in off-road conditions (such as rough roads, sand and mud).

#### ■ Brake assist

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed, when the system detects a panic stop situation.

#### ■ VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces.

#### ■ Active TRAC (Traction Control)

Maintains drive power and prevents the 4 wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads.

#### ■ Hill-start assist control

Helps prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards when starting on an incline or slippery slope. It operates for approximately 5 seconds at maximum.

#### ■ VGRS (Variable Gear Ratio Steering)

Adjusts the wheel turning angle in accordance with the vehicle speed and steering wheel movement.

#### ■ Pre-Collision System (if equipped)

→P. 265

## When the VSC/Active TRAC/hill-start assist control systems are operating



If the vehicle is in danger of slipping, rolling backwards when starting on an incline, or if the wheels spin, the slip indicator light flashes to indicate that the VSC/Active TRAC/hill-start assist control systems have been engaged.

A buzzer (intermittent) sounds to indicate that VSC or hill-start assist control is operating.

The stop lights and high mounted stoplight turn on when the hill-start assist control system is operating.

## To disable Active TRAC and/or VSC system

If the vehicle gets stuck in fresh snow or mud, Active TRAC and VSC system may reduce power from the engine to the wheels. You may need to turn the system off to enable you to rock the vehicle in order to free it.

### ■ Turning off Active TRAC



Quickly push and release the button to turn off Active TRAC.

The slip indicator light should come on.

Active TRAC will stop the control of the engine. However, the brake will remain to be controlled.

Push the button again to turn the system back on.

### ■ Turning off Active TRAC and VSC



Push and hold the button for more than 3 seconds while the vehicle is stopped to turn off Active TRAC and VSC.

The slip indicator light will come on and "VSC OFF" will be shown on the multi-information display.

Push the button again to turn the system back on.

## ■ Turning off VSC



Push the center differential lock/unlock switch to turn off VSC system.

The center differential lock indicator light will come on and “VSC OFF” will be shown on the multi-information display.

Push the switch again to turn the system back on.

2

When driving

### ■ Active TRAC can be turned off when

The four-wheel drive control switch is in “H4” and the center differential is unlocked.

### ■ Automatic reactivation of Active TRAC and VSC

Turning the “ENGINE START STOP” switch off after turning off the Active TRAC and VSC systems will automatically re-enable them.

### ■ Automatic Active TRAC reactivation

If only the Active TRAC system is turned off, the Active TRAC system will turn on when vehicle speed increases.

### ■ Automatic Active TRAC and VSC reactivation

If the Active TRAC and VSC systems are turned off, the systems will not turn on even when vehicle speed increases.

### ■ If the brake system overheats

The Active TRAC, VSC and hill-start assist control will cease operation and a buzzer will sound to alert the driver. Stop the vehicle in a safe place (There is no problem with continuing normal driving.)

### ■ Sounds and vibrations caused by the Multi Terrain ABS, brake assist, Active TRAC, VSC, hill-start assist control and VGRS

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.
- Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.
  - The brake pedal may pulsate slightly after the Multi Terrain ABS is activated.
  - The brake pedal may move down slightly after the Multi Terrain ABS is activated.

### ■ Hill-start assist control is operational when

- The shift lever is in "D" or "S".
- The brake pedal is not depressed.

### ■ VGRS is disabled in the following situations

- During stopping or the steering wheel has been moved for a long time while driving at lower speeds.
- After the engine is restarted at less than -22°F (-30°C).
- If you disconnect the battery with the steering wheel turned, the center position of the steering wheel could be slightly and temporary changed. To initialize the VGRS, drive for a short while.

 **CAUTION**

Any of the following conditions may result in an accident which could cause death or serious injury:

■ **The Multi Terrain ABS does not operate effectively when**

- The limits of tire gripping performance have been exceeded.
- The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on a wet or slick road.

■ **Stopping distance when the Multi Terrain ABS is operating on a wet or slick roads**

The Multi Terrain ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you in the following situations.

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tire chains
- When driving over bumps in the road
- When driving over roads with potholes or roads with uneven roads

■ **Active TRAC may not operate effectively when**

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the Active TRAC is operating.

Do not drive the vehicle in conditions where stability and power may be lost.

■ **If the hill-start assist control does not operate effectively**

The hill-start assist control may not operate effectively on steep inclines and roads covered in ice.

■ **When Active TRAC and VSC are off**

Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are systems to ensure vehicle stability and driving force, do not turn off Active TRAC and VSC unless necessary.

### CAUTION

#### ■ When the VSC is activated

The slip indicator light flashes and a warning buzzer sounds. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes and a buzzer sounds.

#### ■ Replacing tires

Make sure that all tires are of the same size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the specified tire pressure level.

The Multi Terrain ABS and VSC will not function correctly if different tires are fitted on the vehicle.

Contact your Lexus dealer for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

#### ■ Handling of tires and suspension

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause the system to malfunction.

## 2-4. Using other driving systems

### Pre-Collision System (if equipped)

Safety systems such as the brakes and seat belts are automatically engaged to lessen impact and injuries to occupants as well as vehicle damage when the radar sensor detects an unavoidable frontal collision.

#### ■ Pre-collision seat belts (front seats only)

The seat belts are immediately retracted as the effect of the pretensioner is increased (→P. 88), to help prepare the driver and passengers. In the event of sudden braking or skidding, the system will operate even if no obstacle has been detected.

#### ■ Pre-collision brake assist

Applies greater braking force in relation to how strongly the brake pedal is depressed.

#### ■ Pre-collision AVS

If the system determines that the collision is unavoidable, the operation of AVS (→P. 246) helps prevent the vehicle front from going down when hard brakes are applied.

2

When driving

### Radar sensor



Detects vehicles or other obstacles on or near the road ahead and determines whether a collision is imminent based on the position, speed, and heading of the obstacles.

When traveling on a road with very light traffic and very little to reflect the radar waves emitted by the radar sensor, the system may decide that the radar sensor is dirty, even if the sensor is not actually dirty. The system will automatically restore itself when reflected radar waves are detected.

### ■ Obstacles not detected

The sensor cannot detect plastic obstacles such as pylons. There may also be occasions when the radar sensor cannot detect pedestrians, animals, bicycles, motorcycles, trees, or snowdrifts.

### ■ The pre-collision system is operational when

- Seat belts (linked to the radar sensor)
  - Vehicle speed is above 3 mph (5 km/h).
  - The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or oncoming vehicle exceeds 19 mph (30 km/h).
  - The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.
- Seat belts (linked to brake operation)
  - Vehicle speed exceeds 19 mph (30 km/h).
  - The system detects sudden braking or skidding.
  - The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.
- Brake assist
  - Vehicle speed is above 19 mph (30 km/h).
  - The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or oncoming vehicle exceeds 19 mph (30 km/h).
  - The brake pedal is depressed.
- AVS
  - Vehicle speed is above 3 mph (5 km/h).
  - The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or oncoming vehicle exceeds 19 mph (30 km/h).

**■ Conditions that may trigger the system even if there is no danger of collision**

- When there is an object by the roadside at the entrance to a curve
- When passing an oncoming vehicle on a curve
- When driving over a narrow iron bridge
- When there is a metal object on the road surface
- When driving on an uneven road surface
- When passing an oncoming vehicle on a left-turn
- When your vehicle rapidly closes on the vehicle in front

When the system is activated in the situations described above there is also a possibility that the seat belts will retract quickly and the brakes will be applied with a force greater than normal. When the seat belt is locked in the restricted position, stop the vehicle in a safe place, release the seat belt and refasten.

**■ When there is a malfunction in the system**

Warning lights and/or warning messages will turn on or flash. (→P. 638, 648)

### CAUTION

#### ■ Handling the radar sensor

Observe the following to ensure the pre-collision system can function effectively.

- Keep the sensor and front grille clean at all times.

Clean the sensor and front grille with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.

- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.

If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area are subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by your Lexus dealer.

- Do not disassemble the sensor.

- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille cover or surrounding area.

- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille.

#### ■ Limitations of the pre-collision system

Do not rely on the pre-collision system. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and checking for any obstacles or other road hazards.

### Off-road precautions

This vehicle belongs to the utility vehicle class, which has higher ground clearance and narrower tread in relation to the height of its center of gravity to make it capable of performing in a wide variety of off-road applications.

#### Off-road vehicle feature

- Specific design characteristics give it a higher center of gravity than ordinary passenger cars. This vehicle design feature causes this type of vehicle to be more likely to rollover. And, utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.
- An advantage of the higher ground clearance is a better view of the road allowing you to anticipate problems.
- It is not designed for cornering at the same speeds as ordinary passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Therefore, sharp turns at excessive speeds may cause rollover.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Off-road vehicle precautions

Always observe the following precautions to help minimize the risk of serious personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Therefore, the driver and all passengers should fasten their seat belts whenever the vehicle is moving.
- Avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers, if at all possible.  
Failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle roll-over causing death or serious injury.
- Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier/roof rack will make the center of the vehicle gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly.
- Always slow down in gusty crosswinds. Because of its profile and higher center of gravity, your vehicle is more sensitive to side winds than an ordinary passenger car. Slowing down will allow you to have better control.
- Do not drive horizontally across steep slopes. Driving straight up or straight down is preferred. Your vehicle (or any similar off-road vehicle) can tip over sideways much more easily than forward or backward.

## Off-road driving

When driving your vehicle off-road, please observe the following precautions to ensure your driving enjoyment and to help prevent the closure of areas to off-road vehicles.

- Drive your vehicle only in areas where off-road vehicles are permitted to travel.
- Respect private property. Get owner's permission before entering private property.
- Do not enter areas that are closed. Honor gates, barriers and signs that restrict travel.
- Stay on established roads. When conditions are wet, driving techniques should be changed or travel delayed to prevent damage to roads.

---

### ■ Additional information for off-road driving

► For owners in U.S. mainland, Hawaii and Puerto Rico:

To obtain additional information pertaining to driving your vehicle off-road, consult the following organizations.

- State and Local Parks and Recreation Departments
- State Motor Vehicle Bureau
- Recreational Vehicle Clubs
- U.S. Forest Service and Bureau of Land Management

### CAUTION

#### ■ Off-road driving precautions

Always observe the following precautions to help minimize the risk of serious personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Drive carefully when off the road. Do not take unnecessary risks by driving in dangerous places.
- Do not grip the steering wheel spokes when driving off-road. A bad bump could jerk the wheel and injure your hands. Keep both hands and especially your thumbs on the outside of the rim.
- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving in sand, mud, water or snow.
- After driving through tall grass, mud, rock, sand, rivers, etc., check that there is no grass, bush, paper, rags, stone, sand, etc. adhering or trapped on the underbody. Clear off any such matter from the underbody. If the vehicle is used with these materials trapped or adhering to the underbody, a breakdown or fire could occur.
- When driving off-road or in rugged terrain, do not drive at excessive speeds, jump, make sharp turns, strike objects, etc. This may cause loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury. You are also risking expensive damage to your vehicle's suspension and chassis.

 NOTICE**■ To prevent the water damage**

Take all necessary safety measures to ensure that water damage to the engine or other components does not occur.

- Water entering the engine air intake will cause severe engine damage.
- Water entering the automatic transmission will cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage.
- Water can wash the grease from wheel bearings, causing rusting and premature failure, and may also enter the differentials, transmission and transfer case, reducing the gear oil's lubricating qualities.

**■ When you drive through water**

If driving through water, such as when crossing shallow streams, first check the depth of the water and the bottom of the river bed for firmness. Drive slowly and avoid deep water.

**■ Inspection after off-road driving**

- Sand and mud that has accumulated in brake drums and around brake discs may affect braking efficiency and may damage brake system components.
- Always perform a maintenance inspection after each day of off-road driving that has taken you through rough terrain, sand, mud, or water. For scheduled maintenance information, refer to the "Warranty and Services Guide/Owner's Manual Supplement/Scheduled Maintenance".

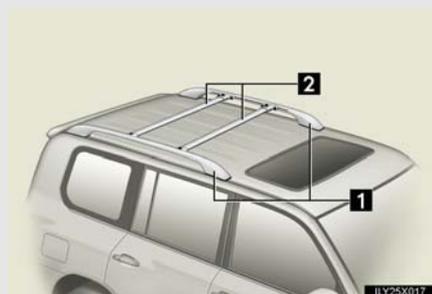
## 2-5. Driving information

# Cargo and luggage

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment whenever possible. Be sure all items are secured in place.
- Be careful to keep the vehicle level. Placing the weight as far forward as possible helps maintain vehicle balance.
- For better fuel economy, do not carry unnecessary weight.

### ■ Roof luggage carrier (if equipped)



- 1 Roof rails
- 2 Cross rails

## Adjusting the position of cross rails

**STEP 1**

Turn the knobs counterclockwise to release the cross rails.

**STEP 2**

Slide the cross rails to the appropriate position for loading luggage and turn the knobs clockwise to tighten the cross rails securely.

2

When driving

## Capacity and distribution

Cargo capacity depends on the total weight of the occupants.

(Cargo capacity) = (Total load capacity) – (Total weight of occupants)

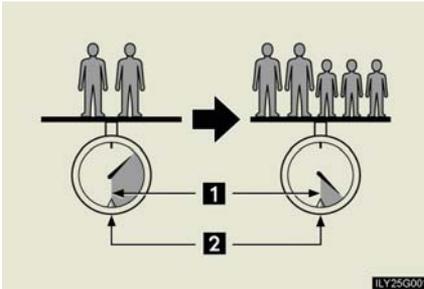
### Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit—

- (1) Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs.” on your vehicle’s placard.
- (2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
- (3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
- (4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.

For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. ( $1400 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 650$  lbs.)

- (5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
- (6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle. (→P. 281)

## Example on your vehicle



- 1** Cargo capacity
- 2** Total load capacity

When 2 people with the combined weight of 366 lb. (166 kg) are riding in your vehicle, which has a total load capacity of 1230 lb. (560 kg), the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity will be as follows:

$$1230 \text{ lb.} - 366 \text{ lb.} = 864 \text{ lb.} \quad (560 \text{ kg} - 166 \text{ kg} = 394 \text{ kg})$$

In this condition, if 3 more passengers with the combined weight of 388 lb. (176 kg) get on, the available cargo and luggage load will be reduced as follows:

$$864 \text{ lb.} - 388 \text{ lb.} = 476 \text{ lb.} \quad (394 \text{ kg} - 176 \text{ kg} = 218 \text{ kg})$$

As shown in the above example, if the number of occupants increases, the cargo and luggage load equaling the combined weight of the occupants who got on later, by an amount. In other words, if an increase in the number of occupants causes an excess of the total load capacity (combined weight of occupants plus cargo and luggage load), you must reduce the cargo and luggage on your vehicle.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Things that must not be carried in the luggage compartment

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the luggage compartment.

- Receptacles containing gasoline
- Aerosol cans

#### ■ Storage precautions

- Do not stack anything in the luggage compartment higher than the seatbacks. Such items may be thrown about and possibly injure people in the vehicle during sudden braking or in an accident.
- Do not place cargo or luggage in or on the following locations as the items may get under the brake or accelerator pedal and prevent the pedals from being depressed properly, block the driver's vision, or hit the driver or passengers, causing an accident.
  - Feet of the driver
  - Front passenger or rear seats (when stacking items)
  - Instrument panel
  - Dashboard
  - Auxiliary box or tray that has no lid
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment, as they may shift and injure someone during an accident or sudden braking.
- Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is not designed for passengers. They should ride in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Otherwise, they are much more likely to suffer death or serious injury, in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

 **CAUTION**
**■ Weight of the load**

- Do not exceed the maximum axle weight rating or the total vehicle weight rating.
- Even if the total load of occupant's weight and the cargo load is less than the total load capacity, do not apply the load unevenly. Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

**■ Roof luggage carrier precautions**

To use the roof rails as a roof luggage carrier, you must fit the roof rails with two or more genuine Lexus cross rails or their equivalent.

When you load cargo on the roof luggage carrier, observe the following:

- Place the cargo so that its weight is distributed evenly between the front and rear axles.
- If loading long or wide cargo, never exceed the vehicle overall length or width. (→P. 682)
- Before driving, make sure the cargo is securely fastened on the roof luggage carrier.
- Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will make the center of the vehicle gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly.
- If driving for a long distance, on rough roads, or at high speeds, stop the vehicle now and then during the trip to make sure the cargo remains in its place.
- Do not exceed 154 lb. (70 kg) cargo weight on the roof luggage carrier.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Cross rail adjustment

Make sure the cross rails are locked securely by pushing forward and rearward them.

Failure to do so may cause an accident or severe injury in the event of emergency braking or a collision.

### NOTICE

#### ■ Cross rail adjustment

Do not remove the cross rail stoppers, or the moon roof may be damaged when it is tilted.

#### ■ When loading the luggage

Be careful not to scratch the surface of the moon roof.

# Vehicle load limits

Vehicle load limits include total load capacity, seating capacity, towing capacity and cargo capacity.

■ **Total load capacity: 1230 lb. (560 kg)**

Total load capacity means the combined weight of occupants, cargo and luggage.

■ **Seating capacity: 8 occupants (Front 2, Rear 6)**

Seating capacity means the maximum number of occupants whose estimated average weight is 150 lb. (68 kg) per person.

Even if the number of occupants are within the seating capacity, do not exceed the total load capacity.

■ **Towing capacity: 8500 lb. (3855 kg)**

Towing capacity means the maximum gross trailer weight (trailer weight plus its cargo weight) that your vehicle is able to tow.

■ **Cargo capacity**

Cargo capacity may increase or decrease depending on the weight and the number of occupants.

■ **Total load capacity and seating capacity**

These details are also described on the tire and loading information label. (→P. 588)

 **CAUTION**

■ **Overloading the vehicle**

Do not overload the vehicle.

It may not only cause damage to the tires, but also degrade steering and braking ability, resulting in an accident.

# Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

### ■ Pre-winter preparations

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
  - Engine oil
  - Engine coolant
  - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the level and specific gravity of battery electrolyte.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the front tires.

Ensure that all tires are the same size and brand, and that chains match the size of the tires.

**■ Before driving the vehicle**

Perform the following according to the driving conditions.

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Remove any ice that has accumulated on the vehicle chassis.
- Periodically check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated in the wheel well or on the brakes.

**■ When driving the vehicle**

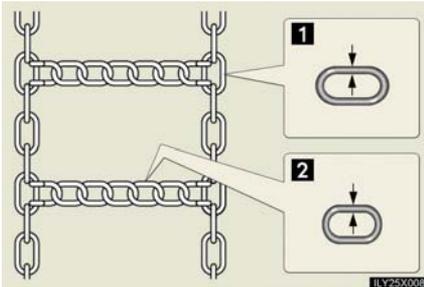
Accelerate the vehicle slowly and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

**■ When parking the vehicle**

Park the vehicle and move the shift lever to “P” without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released.

## Selecting tire chains

Use the correct tire chain size when mounting the snow chains.  
Chain size is regulated for each tire size.



- 1** Side chain  
(0.20 in. [5 mm] in diameter)
- 2** Cross chain  
(0.25 in. [6.3 mm] in diameter)

## Regulations on the use of tire chains

- Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary according to location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing chains.
- Retighten the chains after driving 1/4 - 1/2 mile (0.5 - 1.0 km).

### ■ Tire chains

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains.

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install tire chains on the rear tires.
- Install tire chains following the instructions provided in the accompanying manual.

 **CAUTION****■ Driving with snow tires**

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.

Failing to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the size specified for your vehicle.
- Maintain the recommended level of tire inflation pressure.
- Do not drive at speeds in excess of the speed limit or the speed limit specified for the snow tires being used.
- Snow tires should be installed on all wheels.

**■ Driving with tire chains**

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.

Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit specified for the tire chains being used or 30 mph (50 km/h), whichever is lower.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden turns and braking.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.

### NOTICE

#### ■ **Repairing or replacing snow tires**

Request repairs of and obtain replacement snow tires from Lexus dealers or legitimate tire retailers.

This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.

#### ■ **Fitting tire chains**

The tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not function correctly when tire chains are fitted.

## 2-5. Driving information

### Trailer towing

Your vehicle is designed primarily as a passenger-and-load carrying vehicle. Towing a trailer will have an adverse effect on handling, performance, braking, durability, and fuel consumption. For your safety and the safety of others, do not overload the vehicle or trailer.

To tow a trailer safely, use extreme care and drive the vehicle in accordance with the trailer's characteristics and operating conditions.

The vehicle stability and braking performance are affected by trailer stability, brake setting and performance, and the hitch.

Lexus warranties do not apply to damage or malfunction caused by towing a trailer for commercial purposes.

Contact your Lexus dealer for further information about additional requirements such as a towing kits, etc.

## Weight limits

Confirm that the gross trailer weight, gross combined weight, gross vehicle weight, gross axle weight and trailer tongue load are all within the limits.

- The gross trailer weight must never exceed 8500 lb. (3856 kg).
- The gross combined weight must never exceed 14550 lb. (6600 kg).



- The gross vehicle weight must never exceed the GVWR indicated on the Certification Label.
- The gross axle weight on each axle must never exceed the GAWR indicated on the Certification Label.

## Towing related term

Towing related term	Meaning
GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)	The maximum allowable gross vehicle weight. The gross vehicle weight is the total weight of the vehicle. When towing a trailer, it is the sum of the vehicle weight (including the occupants, cargo and any optional equipment installed on the vehicle) and the tongue load.
GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)	The maximum allowable gross axle weight. The gross axle weight is the load placed on each axle (front and rear).
GCWR (Gross Combination Weight Rating)	The maximum allowable gross combination weight. The gross combination weight is the sum of the total vehicle weight (including the occupants, cargo and any optional equipment installed on the vehicle) and the weight of the trailer being towed (including the cargo in the trailer).
Gross trailer weight	The sum of the trailer weight and the weight of the cargo in the trailer.
Towing capacity	The maximum allowable gross trailer weight. Towing capacity is calculated considering the base vehicle with necessary vehicle equipment and occupants. Additional optional equipment, passengers and cargo in the vehicle will reduce the towing capacity, gross trailer weight includes the trailer, cargo and necessary equipment for towing.
Tongue load	The load placed on the trailer hitch ball.

### Trailer tongue load

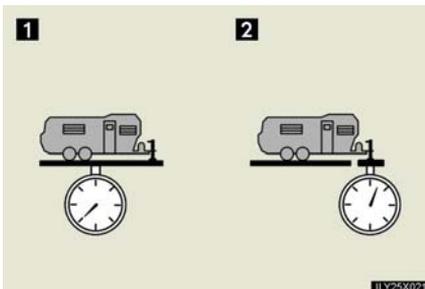
- A recommended tongue load varies in accordance with the types of trailers or towing as described below.
- In order to ensure the recommended values shown below, the trailer must be loaded by referring to the following instructions.  
The trailer cargo load should be distributed so that the tongue load is 9 to 11%.  
(Tongue load / Gross trailer weight × 100 = 9 to 11%)

If the gross trailer weight is over 2000 lbs. (900 kg), it is necessary to use a sway control device with sufficient capacity.

If the gross trailer weight is over 5000 lbs. (2268 kg), it is necessary to use a weight distributing hitch with sufficient capacity.

If using a weight distributing hitch when towing, keep your vehicle level with the ground.

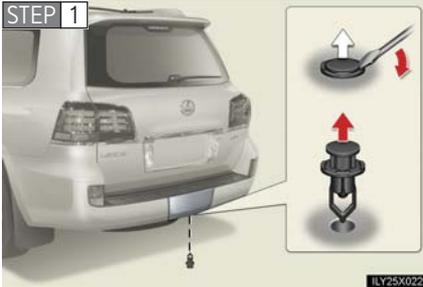
The gross trailer weight and tongue load can be measured with platform scales found at a highway weighing station, building supply company, trucking company, junk yard, etc.



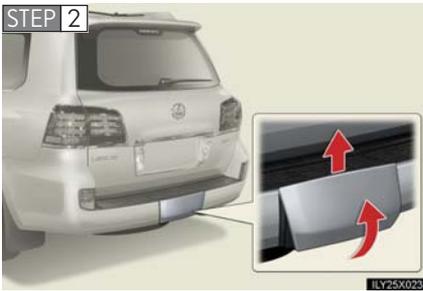
1 Gross trailer weight

2 Tongue load

## Removing hitch cover



Remove the clip.

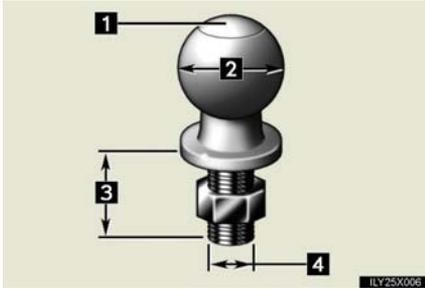


Grasp the lower edge of the hitch cover and raise the cover.

When reattaching the cover, reverse the steps listed.

## Selecting trailer ball

Use the correct trailer ball for your application.



### 1 Trailer ball load rating

Matches or exceeds the gross trailer weight rating of the trailer.

### 2 Ball diameter

Matches the size of the trailer coupler. Most couplers are stamped with the required trailer ball size.

### 3 Shank length

Protrudes beyond the bottom of the lock washer and nut at least 2 threads.

### 4 Shank diameter

Matches the ball mount hole diameter size.

## Connecting trailer lights



Use the wire harness stored in the rear end under body.

## Connecting and disconnecting a trailer

Stop your vehicle and a trailer in line and perform the following:

### ● Connecting a trailer

**STEP 1** Put the 4-Wheel AHC in the “LO” (low) mode.

**STEP 2** Turn off the “ENGINE START STOP” switch or the 4-Wheel AHC.

**STEP 3** Connect a trailer.

**STEP 4** Turn on the “ENGINE START STOP” switch or the 4-Wheel AHC.

**STEP 5** Select the “N” (normal) mode with the height select switch.

When a vehicle loaded with four occupants tows a trailer of about 4000 lb. (1800 kg) with more than about 400 lb. (180 kg) tongue load, the normal mode may not be selected. However, there is no problem to continue normal driving. Drive with sufficient care because of large load.

### ● Disconnecting a trailer

- STEP 1** Put the 4-Wheel AHC in the “LO” (low) mode. (Make sure the vehicle height is in the “LO” mode by pulling the switch to “√” on the height select switch.)
- STEP 2** Turn off the “ENGINE START STOP” switch or the 4-Wheel AHC.
- STEP 3** Set the supporting leg of a trailer on the ground and raise the hitch by 4 in. (100 mm).
- STEP 4** Turn on the “ENGINE START STOP” switch or the 4-Wheel AHC.
- STEP 5** Wait for about 20 seconds until the rear vehicle height is lowered by the automatic leveling function.
- STEP 6** Make sure the hitch is disconnected. If not, raise the hitch higher and repeat steps 2 through 5.
- STEP 7** Move the vehicle forward in the “LO” mode where the hitch does not touch anything in the “N” (normal) mode.
- STEP 8** Put the 4-Wheel AHC in the “N” mode.

## Trailer towing tips

Your vehicle will handle differently when towing a trailer. The 3 main causes of vehicle-trailer accidents are driver error, excessive speed and improper trailer loading. Keep the following in mind when towing.

- Before starting out, check the trailer lights and the vehicle-trailer connections. Recheck after driving a short distance.
- Practice turning, stopping and reversing with the trailer attached in an area away from traffic until you become accustomed to the feel of the vehicle.
- Reversing with a trailer attached is difficult and requires practice. Grip the bottom of the steering wheel and move your hand to the left to move the trailer to the left. Move your hand to the right to move the trailer to right. (This is generally opposite to reversing without a trailer attached.) Avoid sharp or prolonged turning. Have someone guide you when reversing to reduce the risk of an accident.
- As stopping distance is increased when towing a trailer, vehicle-to-vehicle distance should be increased. For each 10 mph (16 km/h) of speed, allow at least one vehicle and trailer length.
- Avoid sudden braking as you may skid, resulting in jackknifing and loss of control. This is especially true on wet or slippery surfaces.
- Avoid jerky starts or sudden acceleration.
- Avoid jerky steering and sharp turns, and slow down before making turns.

- Note that when making a turn, the trailer wheels will be closer than the vehicle wheels to the inside of the turn. Compensate by making a larger than normal turning radius.
- Crosswinds and rough roads will adversely affect handling of your vehicle and trailer, causing sway. Periodically check the rear to prepare for being passed by large trucks or buses, which may cause your vehicle and trailer to sway. If swaying occurs, firmly grip the steering wheel, reduce speed immediately but gradually, and steer straight ahead. Never increase speed. If you make no extreme correction with the steering or brakes, your vehicle and trailer will stabilize.
- Take care when passing other vehicles. Passing requires considerable distance. After passing a vehicle, do not forget the length of your trailer, and be sure you have plenty of room before changing lanes.
- In order to maintain engine braking efficiency when driving on a long steep downgrade, do not use overdrive. Transmission shift range position must be in "4", in "S" mode.
- Due to the added load of the trailer, your vehicle's engine may overheat on hot days (at temperatures over 85°F [30°C]) when driving up a long or steep grade. If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicates overheating, immediately turn off the air conditioning (if in use), pull your vehicle off the road and stop in a safe spot. (→P. 676)

- Always place wheel blocks under both the vehicle and the trailer wheels when parking. Apply the parking brake firmly, and put the transmission in “P”. Avoid parking on a slope, but if unavoidable, do so only after performing the following:

**STEP 1** Apply the brakes and keep them applied.

**STEP 2** Have someone place wheel blocks under both the vehicle and trailer wheels.

**STEP 3** When the wheel blocks are in place, release the brakes slowly until the blocks absorb the load.

**STEP 4** Apply the parking brake firmly.

**STEP 5** Shift into “P” and turn off the engine.

- When restarting after parking on a slope:

**STEP 1** With the transmission in the “P” position, start the engine. Be sure to keep the brake pedal pressed.

**STEP 2** Shift into “3”, “2”, “1”, or “R” position (if reversing).

**STEP 3** Release the parking brake and brake pedal, and slowly pull or back away from the wheel blocks. Stop and apply the brakes.

**STEP 4** Have someone retrieve the blocks.

### ■ Before towing

Check that the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle's tires are properly inflated.
- Trailer tires are inflated according to the trailer manufacturer's recommendation.
- All trailer lights work.
- All lights work each time you connect them.
- The trailer ball is set up at the proper height for the coupler on the trailer.
- The vehicle remains level when a loaded or unloaded trailer is hitched. Do not drive if the vehicle is not level, and check for improper tongue load, overloading, worn suspension, or other possible causes.
- The trailer cargo is securely loaded.
- The rear view mirrors conform to all applicable federal, state/provincial or local regulations. If they do not, install rear view mirrors appropriate for towing purposes.

### ■ Break-in schedule

Lexus recommends that you do not use a new vehicle or a vehicle with any new power train components (engine, transmission, differential, wheel bearings, etc.) to tow a trailer for the first 500 miles (800 km) of driving.

### ■ Maintenance

- If you tow a trailer, your vehicle will require more frequent maintenance due to the additional load. (See "Warranty and Services Guide/Owner's Manual Supplement/Scheduled Maintenance".)
- Retighten the fixing bolts of the towing ball after approximately 600 miles (1000 km) of trailer towing.

 **CAUTION****■ Trailer towing precautions**

- Follow all the instructions described in this section. Failure to do so could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.
- Exceeding the towing capacity, GVWR, GCWR and GAWR can cause an accident resulting in death or serious personal injuries.

**■ To avoid accident or injury**

- Do not exceed 45 mph (72 km/h) or the posted towing speed limit, whichever is lower. As instability (swaying) of the towing vehicle-trailer combination increases as speed increases, exceeding 45 mph (72 km/h) may cause loss of control.
- Slow down and downshift before descending steep or long downhill grades. Do not make sudden downshifts.
- Avoid holding the brake pedal down too long or applying the brakes too frequently. This could cause the brakes to overheat and result in reduced braking efficiency.
- Do not exceed the trailer hitch assembly weight, gross vehicle weight, gross axle weight and trailer tongue load capacities.
- Never load more weight in the back than in the front of the trailer. About 60% of the load should be in the front half of the trailer, and the remaining 40% in the rear.
- Do not use cruise control when you are towing.
- Set the vehicle height to the low mode and turn off the 4-Wheel AHC to prevent the vehicle height from automatically changing.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Hitches

- Lubricate the hitch ball with a light coat of grease.
- If using a weight distributing hitch when towing, keep your vehicle level with the ground.

#### ■ When towing a trailer

- If the gross trailer weight exceeds 1000 lb. (453 kg), trailer brakes are required. Lexus recommends trailers with brakes that conform to all applicable federal and state/provincial regulations.
- Never tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system, as this will lower the vehicle's braking effectiveness.
- Never tow a trailer without using a safety chain securely attached to both the trailer and the vehicle. If damage occurs to the coupling unit or hitch ball, there is danger of the trailer wandering into another lane.

### NOTICE

#### ■ When installing a trailer hitch

- Use only the position recommended by your Lexus dealer. Do not install the trailer hitch on the bumper; this may cause body damage.
- Do not use axle-mounted hitches, as they can cause damage to the axle housing, wheel bearings, wheels or tires.

#### ■ Safety chain

A safety chain must always be used between the towing vehicle and the trailer. Leave sufficient slack in the chain for turns. The chain should cross under the trailer tongue to prevent the tongue from dropping to the ground in the case that it becomes damaged or separated. For the correct safety chain installation procedure, ask your Lexus dealer.

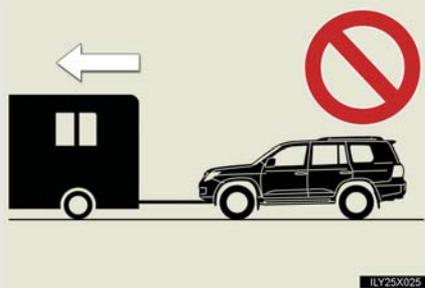
#### ■ Do not directly splice trailer lights

Directly splicing trailer lights may damage your vehicle's electrical system and cause a malfunction.

## 2-5. Driving information

# Dinghy towing

Your vehicle is not designed to be dinghy towed (with 4 wheels on the ground) behind a motor home.



### NOTICE

■ **To avoid serious damage to your vehicle**

Do not tow your vehicle with four wheels on the ground.

### 3-1. Using the touch screen

## Touch screen

By touching the screen with your finger, you can control the audio system and air conditioning system, and adjust the screen display etc.

Press  to display the "Information" screen.

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

▶ With navigation system



▶ Without navigation system



Button/switch	Page
"CLIMATE"	P. 314
"AUDIO"	P. 332
"INFO" (Displaying the "Information" screen)	P. 304
"DISP" (Adjusting the display)	P. 308
"Maintenance"	Navigation System Owner's Manual
"Telephone" / "Phone"	P. 453/ Navigation System Owner's Manual
"Calender"	Navigation System Owner's Manual
"LEXUS Park Assist"	P. 217
"Language"	P. 307
"Screen Setting"	P. 311
"Beep Off"	P. 308
"Adjust Clock"	P. 510/ Navigation System Owner's Manual

### The initial screen



If the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the initial screen will be displayed for a few seconds as the system starts up.

#### ■ To avoid damaging the touch screen

- Touch the screen lightly with your finger. If there is no response, remove your finger from the screen and try again.
- Remove any dirt on the screen by wiping with a soft cloth. Do not use detergent.

#### ■ When using the touch screen

- If the screen is cold, the display may be dark, or the system may seem to be operating slightly slower than normal.
- The screen may seem dark and hard to see when viewed through sunglasses. Change your angle of viewing, adjust the display on the “Display” screen or remove your sunglasses.

## 3-1. Using the touch screen

# Setting the touch screen

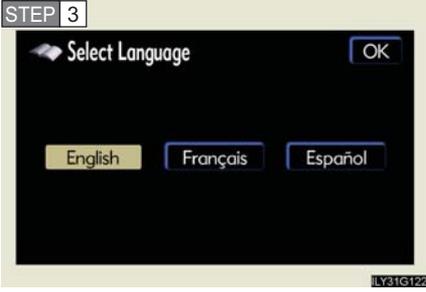
You can change the touch screen to your desired settings.

### Language settings (with navigation system)

The language used for all voice guidance, messages and touch screen switches may be changed.

**STEP 1** Press .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the "Information" screen.

**STEP 3**  Select the desired language.

**STEP 4** Touch .

## Turning off the beep sound

The beep that sounds when a touch screen switch is touched can be turned off.

**STEP 1** Press .



Touch .

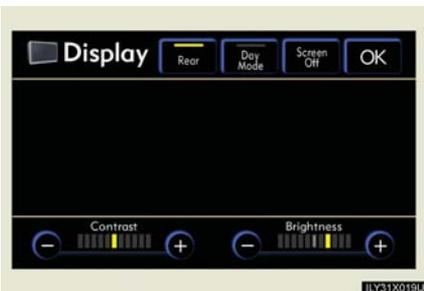
## Adjusting the display

**STEP 1** Press .

**STEP 2** Adjust the display as desired using  /  and  / .

If you do not touch the screen for 20 seconds, the system will return to the previous screen.

► With CD mode

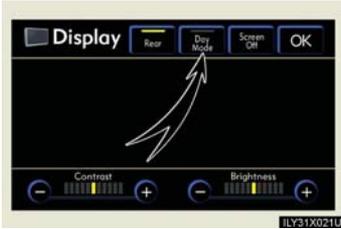


## ▶ With DVD mode



"Color"	Red	Green
"Tone"	Lighter	Darker
"Contrast"	Weaker	Stronger
"Brightness"	Darker	Brighter

### ■ “Day Mode”



When the headlights are turned on, the screen dims. However, the screen can be switched to “Day Mode”.

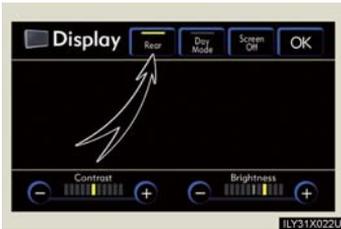
The screen will stay in “Day Mode” when the headlights are turned on until  is touched again.

If the instrument panel light control is set to “MAX”, “Day Mode” is not displayed.

### ■ To turn off the picture display

If  is touched, the screen display is turned off, and guidance is by voice only.

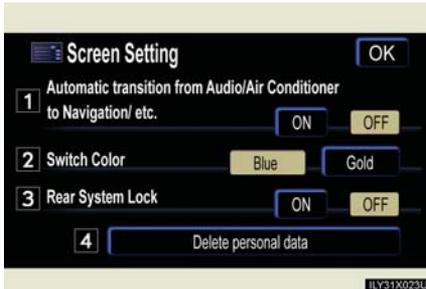
### ■ Opening or closing the rear display (if equipped)



Touching  opens or closes the rear display.

## Screen settings

The following screen settings can be changed:



### 1 Automatic transition

20 seconds after air conditioning or audio system use, the system will return the display to the previous screen.

### 2 Switch color

You can select the switch color.

### 3 Rear system lock (if equipped)

The operation lock on the rear seat entertainment system can be turned on or off.

### 4 Personal data deletion

The following personal data is deleted:

- User selection settings
- Phone book data
- Dialed numbers and received calls
- Speed dial
- Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> phone data
- Security code
- Maintenance conditions\*
- Maintenance information "off" setting\*
- Memory points\*
- Areas to avoid\*
- Previous points\*
- Route trace\*

\*: If the navigation system is equipped

### ■ Setting automatic transition

STEP 1 Press  .

STEP 2 Touch  on the “Information” screen.

STEP 3 Touch  or  on the “Screen Setting” screen.

STEP 4 Touch  .

### ■ Setting the switch color

STEP 1 Press  .

STEP 2 Touch  on the “Information” screen.

STEP 3 Touch  or  on the “Screen Setting” screen.

STEP 4 Touch  .

### ■ Setting the rear system lock

STEP 1 Press  .

STEP 2 Touch  on the “Information” screen.

STEP 3 Touch  or  on the “Screen Setting” screen.

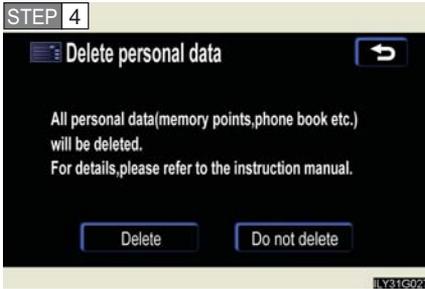
STEP 4 Touch  .

## ■ To delete personal data

**STEP 1** Press .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Screen Setting” screen.



Touch .

Check carefully beforehand, as data cannot be retrieved once deleted.

## ■ When deleting personal data

Data can only be deleted when the vehicle is stopped.

## ■ When selling the vehicle

Be sure to delete both the call history and personal data.

## ■ If you touch

The display returns to the previous screen.

## 3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

### Front air conditioning system

Airflow and outlets are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

Press  to display the air conditioning operation screen.

Air conditioning operation screen display button

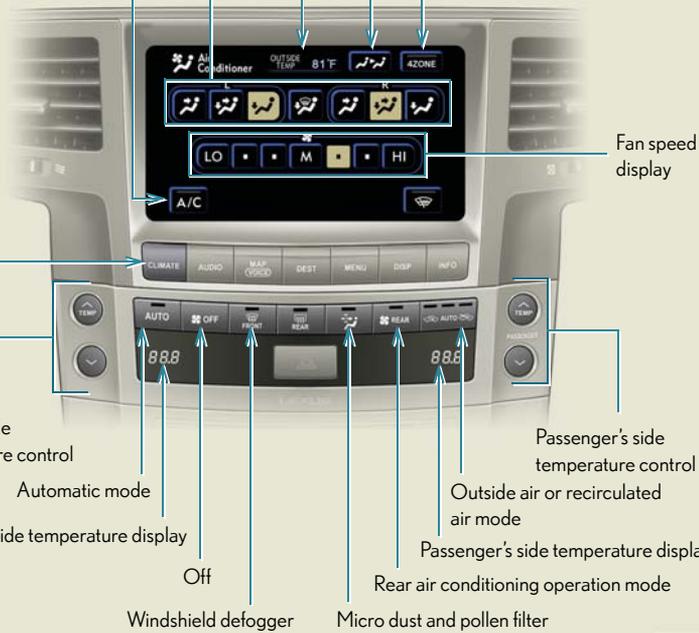
Outside temperature display

Air conditioning on/off switch

Rear air conditioning operation screen display switch

Airflow display

4-zone operation switch



Driver's side temperature control

Automatic mode

Driver's side temperature display

Off

Windshield defogger

Micro dust and pollen filter

Passenger's side temperature control

Outside air or recirculated air mode

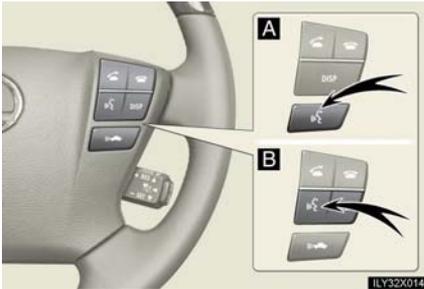
Passenger's side temperature display

Rear air conditioning operation mode

ILY3220045

This illustration is for a vehicle equipped with the navigation system.

### Using the speech command system (with navigation system)



Press  or  to operate the speech command system. (→ “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”)

**A** Without dynamic radar cruise control

**B** With dynamic radar cruise control

### Using the automatic mode

**STEP 1** Press .

➔ The air conditioning system will begin to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

“AUTO” will be displayed on the touch screen.

**STEP 2** Press  to switch to automatic air intake mode.

➔ The air conditioning system automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

**STEP 3** Press  to increase the temperature and  to decrease the temperature.

The temperature for the driver’s and front passenger’s seats can be set separately.

## Adjusting the settings

### ■ Adjusting the temperature setting

Press  to increase the temperature and  to decrease the temperature.

The air conditioning system switches between individual and simultaneous modes each time  is touched.

Individual mode (the indicator on  is on.): The temperature for the driver's, front passenger's and rear seats (→P. 327) can be adjusted separately. Operating the passenger's side temperature control will enter individual mode.

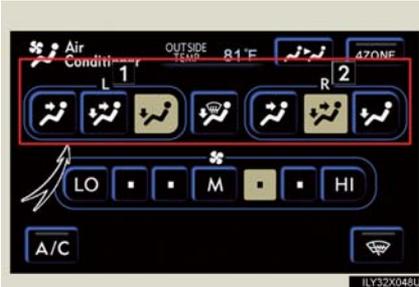
Simultaneous mode (the indicator on  is off.): Only  or  (driver's side) can be used to adjust the temperature for all seats.

### ■ Adjusting the fan speed

Touch any switch of  (decrease ↔ increase) on the operation screen.

Press  to turn the fan off.

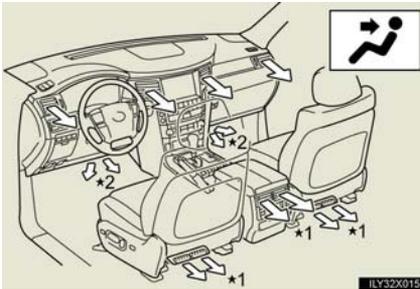
### ■ Changing the air outlets



Touch any mode on the operation screen.

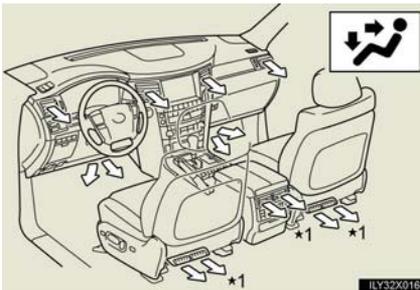
- ❶ L: Left-hand front seat
- ❷ R: Right-hand front seat

Different air outlets for the left-hand and right-hand front seats can be chosen.



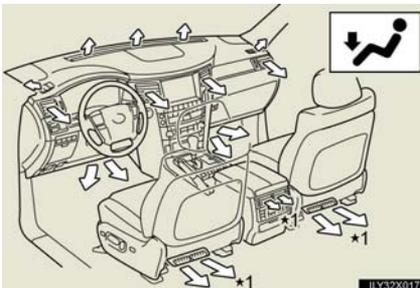
Air flows to the upper body.

- \*1: Depending on the rear air conditioning setting.
- \*2: Only in the automatic mode



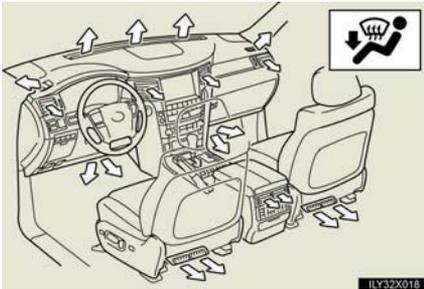
Air flows to the upper body and feet.

- \*1: Depending on the rear air conditioning setting.



Air flows to the feet.

- \*1: Depending on the rear air conditioning setting.



Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates.

### ■ Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

Press  .

The mode switches between  (recycles air inside the vehicle), "AUTO" and  (introduces air from outside the vehicle) modes each time the button is pressed.

When the air intake control system is switched to automatic mode, it operates automatically.

## Changing the rear seat settings from the front seat

### ■ Adjusting the temperature setting

STEP 1 Touch .



Touch  (increase) or  (decrease) on the operation screen. Operating the switch will enter individual mode.

1 L: Left-hand rear seat

2 R: Right-hand rear seat

The air conditioning system switches between individual and simultaneous modes each time  is touched.

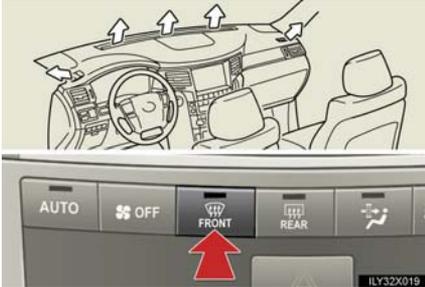
### ■ Adjusting the fan speed

STEP 1 Touch  on the screen or press .

STEP 2 Touch any switch of  (decrease ↔ increase) on the operation screen.

Touch  on the screen or press  to turn the fan off.

## Defogging the windshield

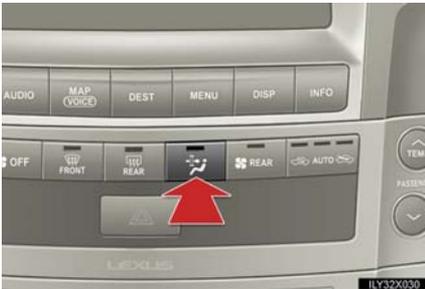


Press .

The air conditioning system control operates automatically.

Recirculated air mode will automatically switch to outside air mode.

## Micro dust and pollen filter



Press .

Outside air mode switches to  (recirculated air) mode. Pollen is removed from the air and the air flows to the upper part of the body.

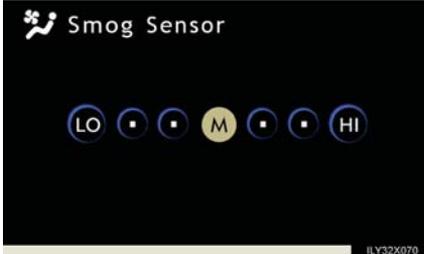
Usually the system will turn off automatically after approximately 3 minutes.

To stop the operation, press  again.

## Adjusting the sensitivity of the air intake control in automatic mode

**STEP 1** While the vehicle is stopped, press and hold  until the “Smog Sensor” screen appears.

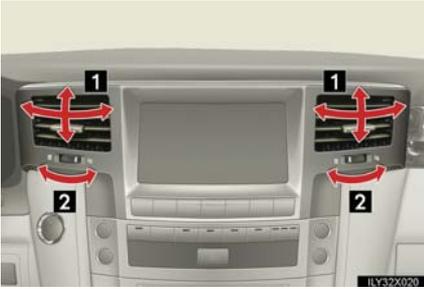
**STEP 2**



Touch any switch of  (lower sensitivity ↔ higher sensitivity) on the operation screen.

## Adjusting the position and opening and closing the air outlets

### ► Front center outlets



**1** Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

**2** Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

### ► Front side outlets



**1** Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

**2** Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

### ► Rear center outlets



**1** Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

**2** Turn the knob to open or close the vent

### ■ Using the automatic mode

Fan speed is adjusted automatically in accordance with the temperature setting and ambient conditions. As a result, the following may occur:

- The system may switch automatically to recirculated air mode when the coolest temperature setting is selected in summer.
- Immediately after  is pressed, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow.
- Cool air may flow to the area around the upper body when the heater is on.

### ■ Using the system in recirculated air mode

The windows will fog up more easily if the recirculated air mode is used for an extended period.

### ■ Window defogger feature

Recirculated air mode may automatically switch to  (outside air) mode in situations where the windows need to be defogged.

### ■ Automatic mode for air intake control

In automatic mode, the system detects exhaust gas and other pollutants and automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

When the air conditioning is off, and the fan is operating, turning the "AUTO" mode on will activate the air conditioning system.

### ■ When outside temperature approaches 32°F (0°C)

The air conditioning system may not operate even when  is touched.

### ■ Micro dust and pollen filter

- In order to prevent the windows from fogging up when the outside air is cold, the following may occur.
  - Outside air mode does not switch to recirculated air mode.
  - The air conditioning system operates automatically.
  - The operation cancels after 1 minute.
- In rainy weather, the windows may fog up. Press .

 CAUTION

■ To prevent the windshield from fogging up

Do not use  during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

 NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is stopped.

## Outside temperature display

Outside temperature is displayed in the screen.

The displayed temperature ranges from -40°F (-40°C) up to 122°F (50°C).



### ■ The outside temperature is displayed when

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

### ■ When “—” or “E” is displayed

The system may be malfunctioning. Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer

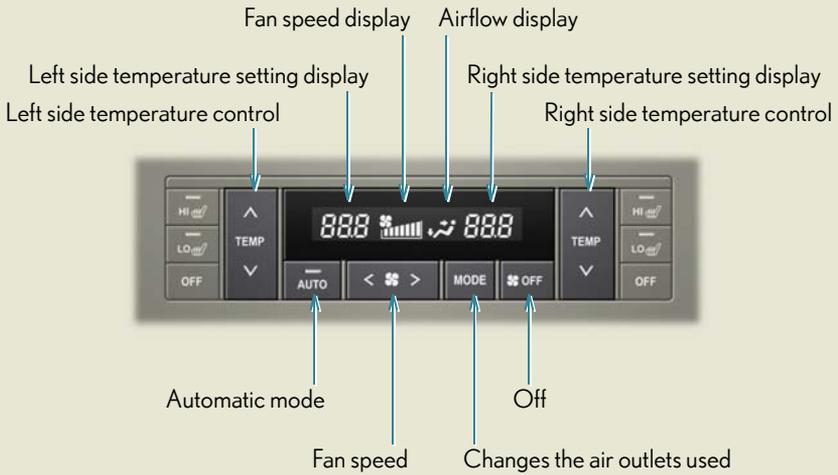
### ■ Display

- In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change.
  - When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 12 mph (20 km/h))
  - When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage or tunnel etc.)

### 3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

## Rear air conditioning system

Airflow and outlets are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.



IL032X022

## Using the automatic mode

**STEP 1** Press .

➔ The air conditioning system will begin to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

**STEP 2** Press  $\wedge$  on  to increase the temperature and  $\vee$  to decrease the temperature.

The temperature for the right-hand and left-hand rear seats can be set separately.

## Adjusting the settings

### ■ Adjusting the temperature setting

Press  $\wedge$  on  to increase the temperature and  $\vee$  to decrease the temperature.

The temperature for the right-hand and left-hand rear seats can be set separately.

### ■ Adjusting the fan speed

Press  $>$  (increase) or  $<$  (decrease) on .

The fan speed is shown on the display. (7 levels)

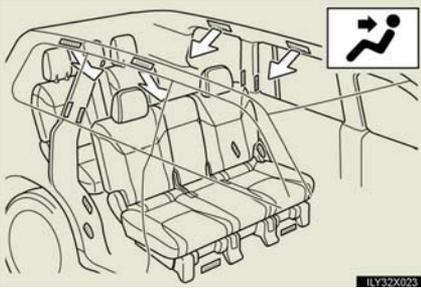
Press  to turn the fan off.

### ■ Changing the air outlets

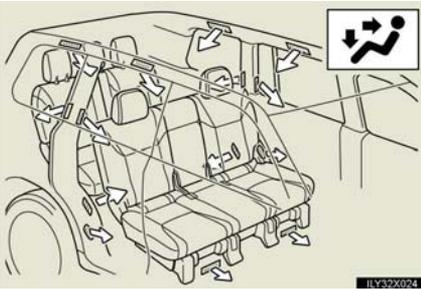
Press .

The air outlets switch each time the button is pressed.

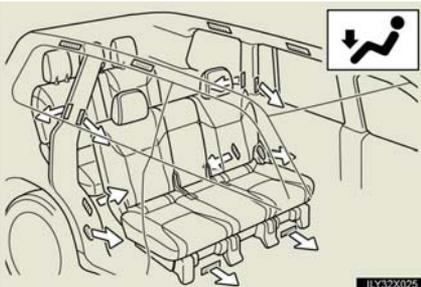
### 3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger



Air flows to the upper body.



Air flows to the upper body and feet.



Air flows to the feet.

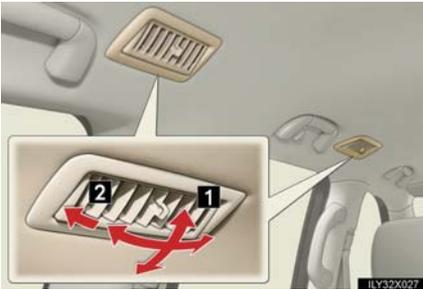
## Adjusting the position and opening and closing the air outlets

### ► Rear center outlets



- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
- 2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

### ► Roof side outlets



- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
- 2 Turn the knob fully to the back of the vehicle to close the vent.

### ⚠ NOTICE

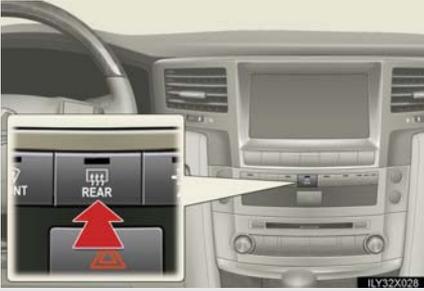
#### ■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is stopped.

## 3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

### Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers

These features are used to defog the rear window, and to remove rain-drops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.



#### On/off

The defoggers will automatically turn off after approximately 15 minutes. Pressing the button again also turns the defoggers off.

- The rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers can be operated when The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

#### CAUTION

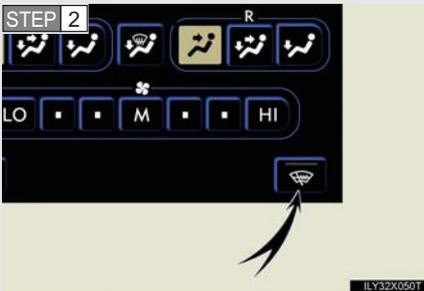
- When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on  
Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

## 3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger Windshield wiper de-icer

This feature is used to prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades.



Press .



On/off

The windshield wiper de-icer will automatically turn off after approximately 15 minutes. Touching the switch again also turns the de-icer off.

### ■ The windshield wiper de-icer can be operated when

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

### ! CAUTION

#### ■ When the windshield wiper de-icer is on

Do not touch the glass at the lower part of the windshield or to the side of the front pillars as the surfaces can become very hot and burn you.

### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Audio system type

CD and (optional) DVD player with changer and AM/FM radio

Press  to display the audio operation screen.

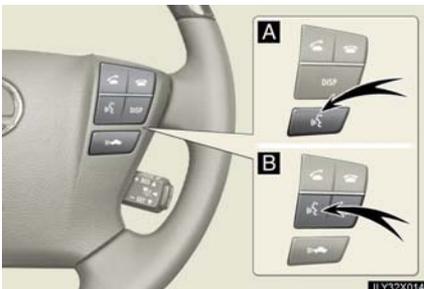


ILL33X028

This illustration is a vehicle equipped with the DVD player.

Title	Page
Using the radio	P. 335
Using the CD/DVD player	P. 344
Playing an audio CD	P. 347
Playing MP3 and WMA discs	P. 351
Playing DVD video/audio	P. 355
Playing a video CD	P. 368
CD/DVD player and DVD video disc information	P. 372
Optimal use of the audio/video system	P. 382
Recording to the sound library	P. 387
Listening to a track recorded to the sound library	P. 392
Editing data recorded to the Sound library	P. 396
Sound library information	P. 403
Using the AUX adapter	P. 407
Using the steering wheel audio switches	P. 408

### Using the speech command system (with navigation system)



Press  or  to operate the speech command system. (→“Navigation System Owner’s Manual”)

- A** Without dynamic radar cruise control
- B** With dynamic radar cruise control

#### ■ Using cellular phones

Interference may be heard through the audio system's speakers if a cellular phone is being used inside or close to the vehicle while the audio system is operating.

#### CAUTION

##### ■ For vehicles sold in U.S.A. and Canada

##### ● Part 15 of the FCC Rules

FCC Warning:

Any unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment will void the user's authority to operate this device.

##### ● Laser products

- Do not take this unit apart or attempt to make any changes by yourself.

This is an intricate unit that uses a laser pickup to retrieve information from the surface of compact discs. The laser is carefully shielded so that its rays remain inside the cabinet. Therefore, never try to disassemble the player or alter any of its parts since you may be exposed to laser rays and dangerous voltages.

- This product utilizes a laser.

Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

#### NOTICE

##### ■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the audio system on longer than necessary when the engine off.

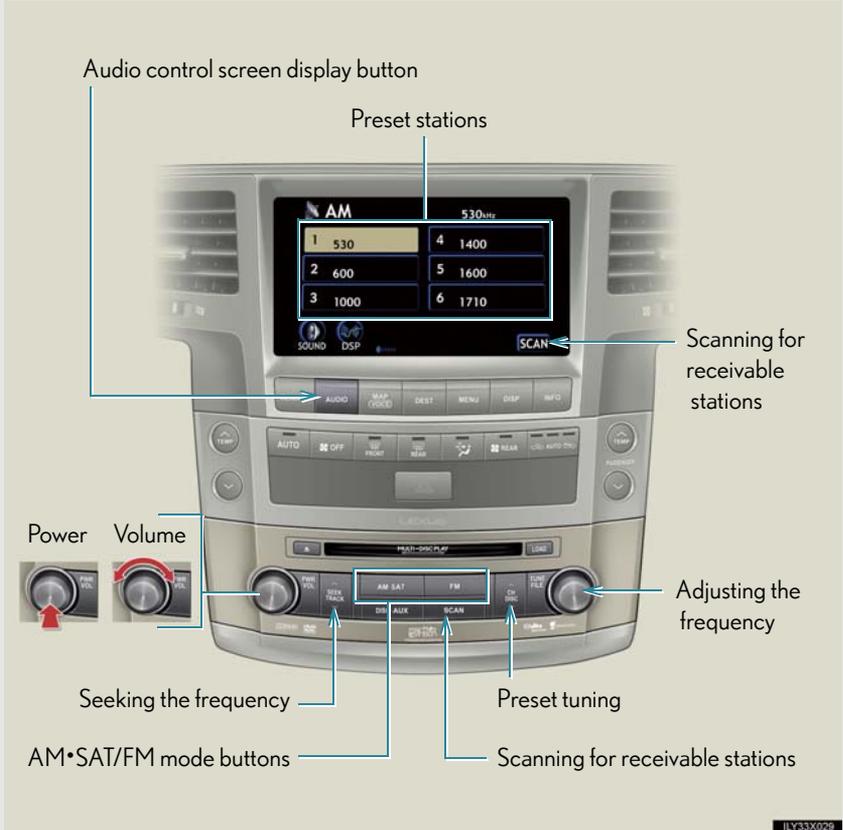
##### ■ To avoid damaging the audio system

Take care not to spill drinks or other fluids on the audio system.

### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Using the radio

Press **AM SAT** or **FM** to choose either an AM or FM band.



This illustration is a vehicle equipped with the DVD player.

## Setting station presets (excluding XM<sup>®</sup> Satellite Radio)

**STEP 1** Search for desired stations by turning  or pressing

^ or v on .

**STEP 2** Touch and hold one of the preset stations (1 - 6) until you hear a beep.

## Scanning radio stations (excluding XM<sup>®</sup> Satellite Radio)

### ■ Scanning the preset radio stations

#### ▶ AM station

**STEP 1** Touch  on the screen or press  until “P-SCAN” appears.

Preset stations will be played for a few seconds each.

**STEP 2** When the desired station is reached, touch  or press  once again.

#### ▶ FM station

**STEP 1** Press  until “P-SCAN” appears.

**STEP 2** When the desired station is reached, press the button once again.

### ■ Scanning all radio stations within range

#### ▶ AM station

**STEP 1** Touch **SCAN** on the screen or press **SCAN**.

“SCAN” appears on the screen and all stations within range will be played for a few seconds each.

**STEP 2** When the desired station is reached, touch **SCAN** or press

**SCAN** once again.

#### ▶ FM station

**STEP 1** Press **SCAN**.

“SCAN” appears on the screen and all stations within range will be played for a few seconds each.

**STEP 2** When the desired station is reached, press **SCAN** once again.

## RDS (Radio Data System)

This feature allows your radio to receive station identification information and program information (classical, jazz, etc.) from radio stations which broadcast this information.

### ■ Receiving RDS broadcasts

**STEP 1**



Touch **TYPE** or **TYPE** on the screen.

The type of program changes each time the button is pressed.

- “ROCK”
- “EASYLIS” (Easy listening)
- “CLS/JAZZ” (Classical music and Jazz)
- “R & B” (Rhythm and Blues)
- “INFORM” (Information)
- “RELIGION”
- “MISC” (Miscellaneous)
- “ALARM” (Emergency messages)

If the system receives no RDS stations, “NO PTY” appears on the display.

When a program is set, “TYPE SEEK” appears.

**STEP 2** Touch **TYPE SEEK** on the screen or press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on .

The radio seeks or scans for stations by the relevant program type.

If no radio station of that type is found, “NOTHING” appears on the screen.

### ■ Displaying radio text messages

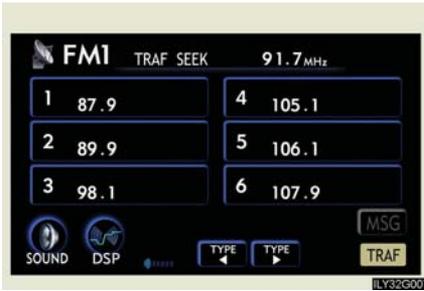


Touch **MSG** on the screen.

If “MSG” appears on the screen, a text message may be displayed.

When you touch **MSG OFF**, the display returns.

### Traffic announcement



Touch **TRAF** on the screen.

“TRAF SEEK” appears on the display, and the radio will start seeking any station broadcasting traffic program information.

If no traffic program station is found, “NOTHING” appears on the display.

### XM<sup>®</sup> Satellite Radio (with navigation system)

#### Receiving XM<sup>®</sup> Satellite Radio



Press **AM-SAT** until “SAT” appears on the screen.

The display changes as follows each time the switch is pressed.

AM → SAT1 → SAT2 → SAT3

**STEP 2** Turn  to select a desired channel from all the categories or press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  to select a desired channel in the current category.

ries or press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  to select a desired channel in the current category.

#### Presetting XM<sup>®</sup> Satellite Radio channels

Select the desired channel. Touch one of the preset stations (1 - 6) and hold it until you hear a beep.

### ■ Changing the channel category

Touch  or  on the screen.

### ■ Scanning XM<sup>®</sup> Satellite Radio channels

#### ● Scanning channels in the current category

**STEP 1** Touch  on the screen or press . “SCAN” appears on the screen.

**STEP 2** When the desired channel is reached, touch  or press the button once again.

#### ● Scanning preset channels

**STEP 1** Touch  on the screen or press  and hold it until you hear a beep. “P.SCAN” appears on the screen.

**STEP 2** When the desired channel is reached, touch  or press the button once again.

### ■ Displaying the title and artist name

Touch  on the screen.

The screen will display up to 16 characters.

Touch the button once again to return to the previous screen.



### ■ When the battery is disconnected

All preset stations are erased.

### ■ Reception sensitivity

- Maintaining perfect radio reception at all times is difficult due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains, transmitters, etc.
- The radio antenna is mounted inside the rear quarter window. To maintain clear radio reception, do not attach metallic window tinting or other metallic objects to the antenna wire mounted inside the rear quarter window.

### ■ Receiving XM<sup>®</sup> Satellite Radio

An XM<sup>®</sup> Satellite Radio is a tuner designed exclusively to receive broadcasts provide under a separate subscription. Availability is limited to the 48 contiguous states and 10 Canadian provinces.

#### ● XM<sup>®</sup> subscriptions

For detailed information about XM<sup>®</sup> Satellite Radio or to subscribe:  
U.S.A.-

Visit on the web at [www.xmradio.com](http://www.xmradio.com) or call 1-877-515-3987.

Canada-

Visit on the web at [www.xmradio.ca](http://www.xmradio.ca) or call 1-877-438-9677.

#### ● Radio ID

You will need the radio ID when activating XM<sup>®</sup> service or reporting a problem. Select "CH000" using the  dial, and the receiver's 8-character ID number will appear.

#### ● Satellite tuner

The tuner supports only Audio Services (Music and Talk) and the accompanying Text Information of XM<sup>®</sup> Satellite Radio.

\*: Terms and services provided by XM<sup>®</sup> Satellite Radio are subject to change without notice.

#### ■ If the satellite radio does not operate normally

If a problem occurs with the XM<sup>®</sup> tuner, a message will appear on the screen. Refer to the table below to identify the problem, and take the suggested corrective action.

ANTENNA	The XM <sup>®</sup> antenna is not connected. Check whether the XM <sup>®</sup> antenna cable is attached securely.
	There is a short-circuit in the antenna or the surrounding antenna cable. See a Lexus certified dealer.
UPDATING	You have not subscribed to XM <sup>®</sup> Satellite Radio. The radio is being updated with the latest encryption code. Contact XM <sup>®</sup> Satellite Radio for subscription information. When a contract is canceled, you can choose "CH000" and all free-to-air channels.
	The premium channel you selected is not authorized. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or "CH001". If it does not change automatically, select another channel. If you want to listen to the premium channel, contact XM <sup>®</sup> Satellite Radio.
NO SIGNAL	The XM <sup>®</sup> signal is too weak at the current location. Wait until your vehicle reaches a location with a stronger signal.
LOADING	The unit is acquiring audio or program information. Wait until the unit has received the information.
OFF AIR	The channel you selected is not broadcasting any programming. Select another channel.

---	There is no song/program title or artist name/feature associated with the channel at that time. No action needed.
---	The channel you selected is no longer available. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or "CH001". If it does not change automatically, select another channel.

Contact the XM<sup>®</sup> Listener Care Center at 1-877-515-3987 (U.S.A.) or 1-877-438-9677 (Canada).

#### ■ Certifications for the radio tuner

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

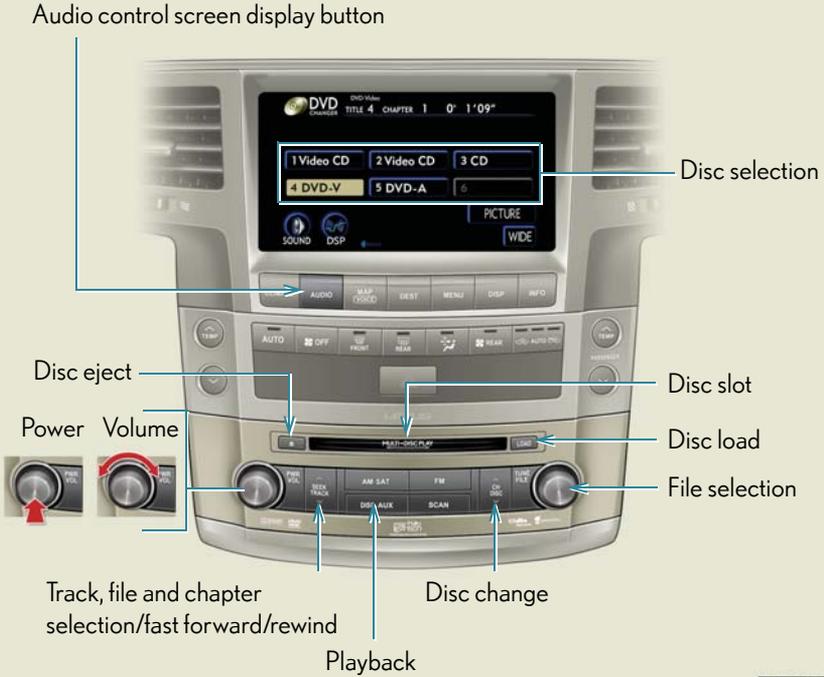
If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by trying one or more of the following:

- Reorienting or relocating the receiving antenna.
- Increasing the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connecting the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consulting the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Using the CD/DVD player

Insert a disc or press **DISC/AUX** with a disc inserted.



This illustration is a vehicle equipped with the DVD player.

## Loading a disc

### ■ Loading a single disc

**STEP 1** Press **LOAD**.

**STEP 2** When the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, insert a disc after the CD/DVD player door opens.

### ■ Loading multiple discs

**STEP 1** Press and hold **LOAD** until you hear a beep.

**STEP 2** When the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, insert a disc after the CD/DVD player door opens.

**STEP 3** After inserting a disc, wait until the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, then insert the next disc after the CD/DVD player door has opened.

**STEP 4** Repeat steps 2 and 3 until you have inserted all discs.

To cancel the operation, press the **LOAD** or **DISC-AUX** button. If you do not insert a disc within 15 seconds, loading will be canceled automatically.

### ■ DVD hint screen (with DVD player)



This screen appears when a DVD video, DVD audio or video CD is first selected with the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

Touch **OK** once you have read the message.

## Ejecting discs

### Ejecting a disc

**STEP 1** To select the disc to be ejected, touch the desired disc on the

screen or press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on



**STEP 2** Press  and remove the disc.

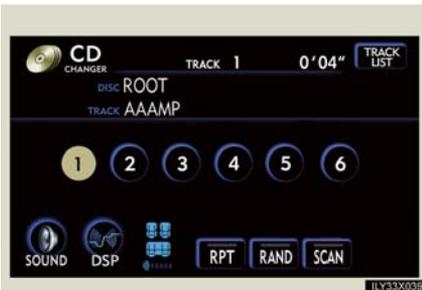
### Ejecting all discs

Press and hold  until you hear a beep, and remove the discs.

## Selecting a disc

### To select a disc to play

► Without DVD player



Touch the desired disc on the

screen or press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on



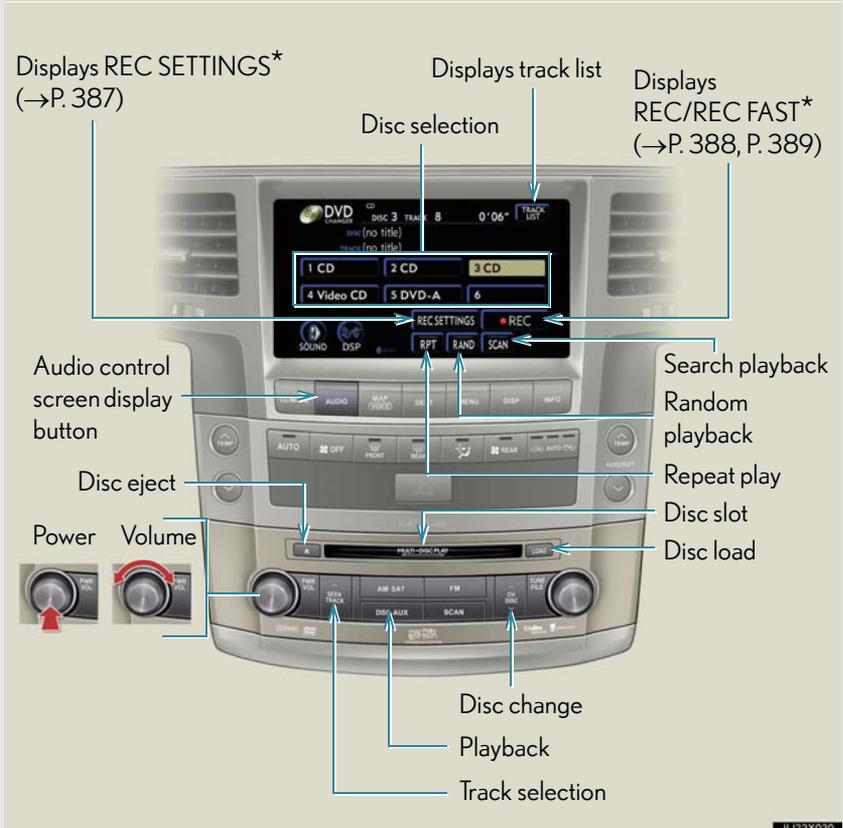
► With DVD player



### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Playing an audio CD

Insert a disc or press **DISC/AUX** with a disc inserted.



\*: DVD player only

This illustration is a vehicle equipped with the DVD player.

## Loading and ejecting discs

→P. 345

## Selecting, fast forwarding and scanning tracks

### ■ Selecting a track

Press  $\wedge$  to move up and  $\vee$  to move down using  until the desired track number appears on the screen.

To fast forward or rewind, press and hold  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on .

### ■ Selecting a track from the track list

**STEP 1** Touch  on the screen.



Touch the desired track number.

 or : changes the list by 6 track groups

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

### ■ Scanning a disc

**STEP 1** Touch  on the screen.

“SCAN” appears on the screen.

The first 10 seconds of each track will be played.

**STEP 2** Touch  once again when the desired track is reached.

## Selecting a disc

### ■ Selecting a disc to play

→P. 346

### ■ Scanning loaded discs

**STEP 1** Touch and hold **SCAN** on the screen until “D·SCAN” appears.

The first 10 seconds of the first track on each disc will be played.

**STEP 2** Touch **SCAN** once again when the desired disc is reached.

## Random playback

### ■ Current disc

Touch **RAND** on the screen.

Songs are played in random order.

### ■ All discs

Touch and hold **RAND** on the screen until “D·RAND” appears.

Tracks on all loaded discs are played in random order.

## Repeating a track or a disc

### ■ Repeating a track

Touch **RPT** on the screen.

### ■ Repeating a disc

Touch **RPT** on the screen and hold until “D·RPT” appears.

### ■ Canceling random, repeat and scan playback

Touch **RAND**, **RPT** or **SCAN** on the screen once again.

### ■ Displaying the title and artist name

If a CD-TEXT disc is inserted, the titles of the disc and track will be displayed. Up to 16 letters can be displayed.

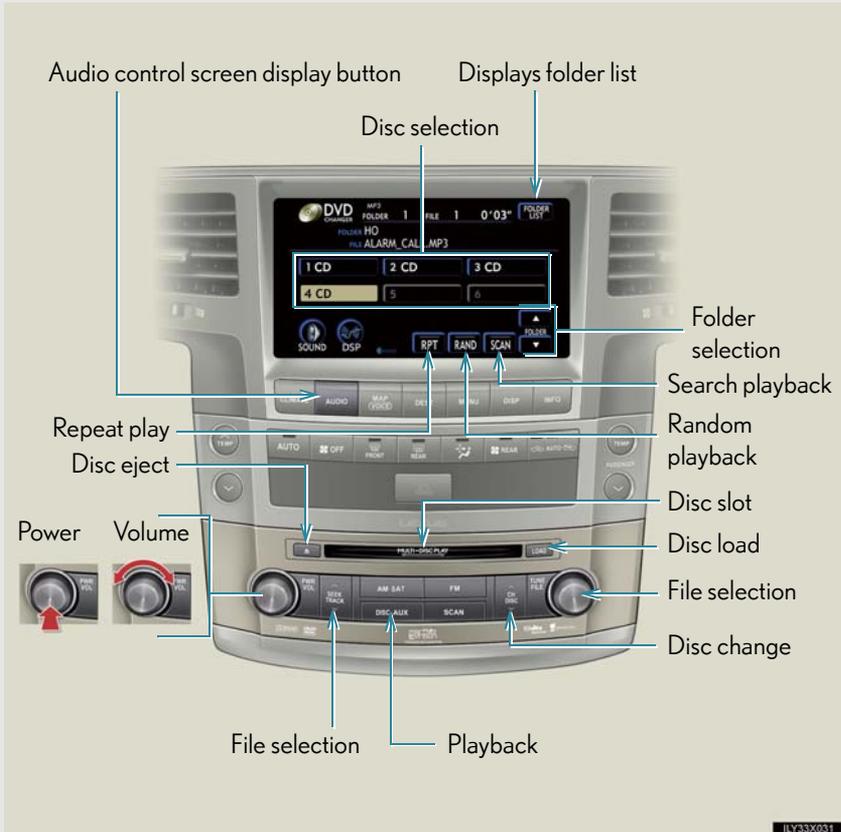
### ■ Error messages

→P. 372

### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Playing MP3 and WMA discs

Insert an MP3 or WMA disc or press **DISC-AUX** with a disc inserted.



This illustration is a vehicle equipped with the DVD player.

### Loading and ejecting MP3 and WMA discs

→P. 345

### Selecting MP3 and WMA discs

→P. 346

### Selecting a folder

#### ■ Selecting a folder

Touch “FOLDER ” or “” on the screen to select the next/previous folder.

#### ■ Selecting a folder from the folder list

**STEP 1** Touch  on the screen.

**STEP 2**



Touch the desired folder number.

 or  : changes the list by 6 folder groups

**DETAIL** : displays the details of the file currently playing

**FILE** : displays the file list

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

#### ■ Selecting the desired folder by cueing the first file of each folder

Touch and hold  on the screen until “FLD·SCAN” appears. When the desired folder is reached, touch  once again.

## Selecting and scanning files

### ■ Selecting one file at a time

Turn  or press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  to select the desired file.

### ■ Selecting a file from the file list

**STEP 1** Touch  on the screen to turn the folder list on.



Touch  on the folder list screen.



Touch the desired file number.

 or : changes the list by 6 groups

: displays the folder list

: displays the details of the file currently playing

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

### ■ Selecting a desired file by cueing the files in the folder

Touch  on the screen.

When the desired file is reached, touch  once again.

## Repeat play

### ■ Repeating a file

Touch **RPT** on the screen.

### ■ Repeating all of the files in a folder

Touch and hold **RPT** on the screen until “FLD RPT” appears.

## Random playback

### ■ Playing files from a particular folder in random order

Touch **RAND** on the screen.

### ■ Playing all the files on a disc in random order

Touch and hold **RAND** on the screen until “FLD RAND” appears.

---

### ■ Canceling random, repeat and scan playback

Touch **RAND**, **RPT** or **SCAN** on the screen once again.

### ■ Error messages

→P. 372

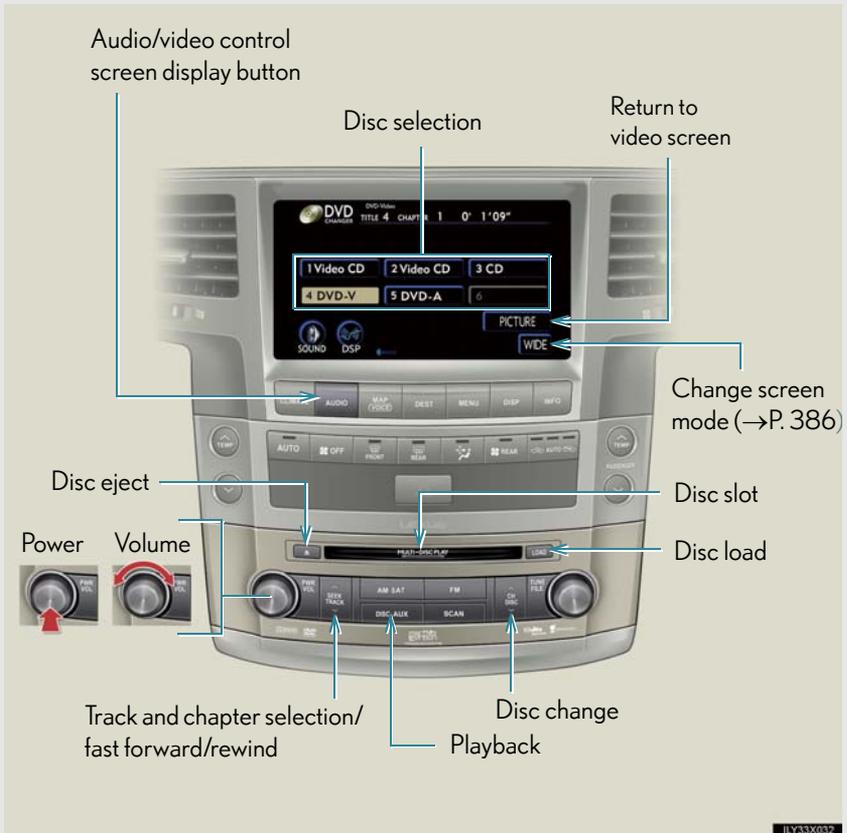
### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Playing DVD video/audio (with DVD player)

For safety reasons, you can enjoy the visual contents of discs only when the vehicle is completely stopped with the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode and the parking brake applied. While you are driving, only audio contents may be played.

When a DVD video disc or DVD audio disc is inserted while driving, the audio contents of the main feature will automatically be played. However, some discs may not be played from the main story.

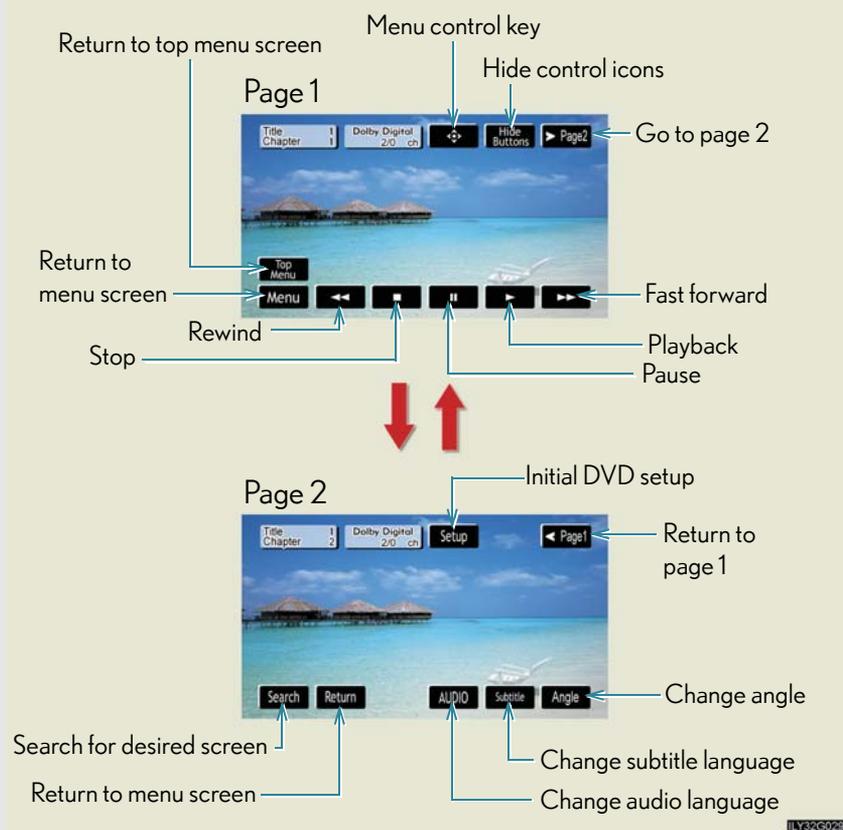
Insert a disc or press  with a disc inserted.



### ■ Control icon screen

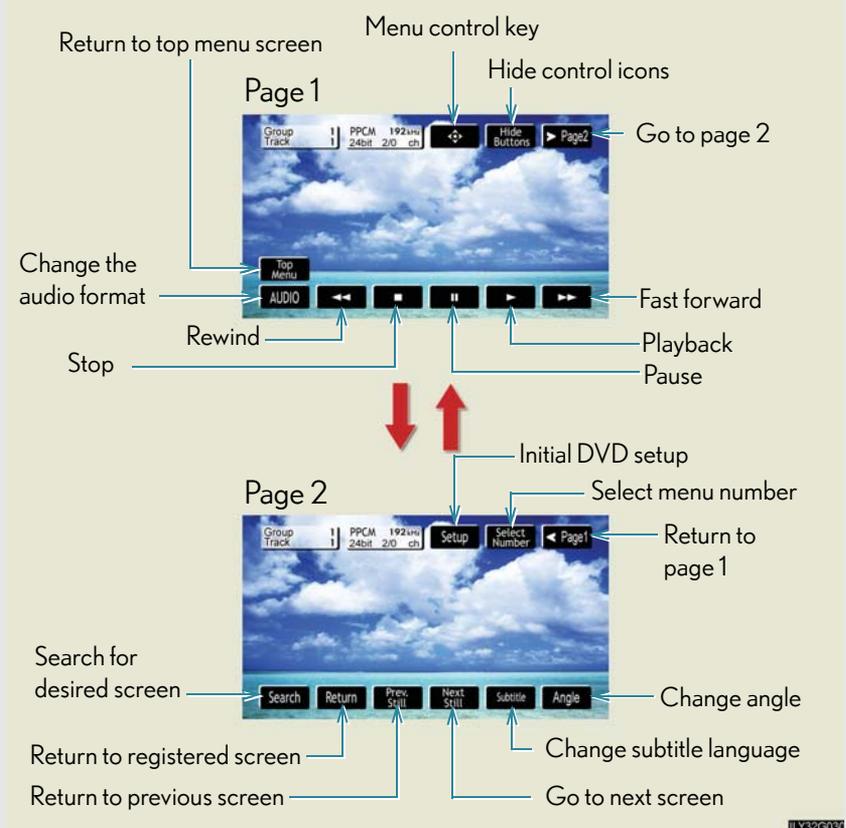
Touch any part of the screen if no icons are shown while watching a video, and the following screen appears.

#### ▶ DVD video mode



If  appears on the screen when you touch an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

## ▶ DVD audio mode



If  appears on the screen when you touch an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

## Loading, ejecting and selecting discs

→P. 345

## Fast forwarding/rewinding a disc

Touch and hold  or  on the screen or press and hold  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$

on  until you hear a beep.

## Slow playback

Touch  and then touch . Video is played slowly while you are touching .

## Searching for a desired screen

### ■ Searching by title (DVD video mode)

**STEP 1** Touch  on the control icon screen.

**STEP 2**



Input the desired title number and then touch .

: deletes the last input number

: hides the icons. To display the icons, touch .

: returns to the previous screen

### ■ Searching by group (DVD audio mode)

**STEP 1** Touch **Search** on the control icon screen.



Input the group number and then touch **Enter**.

**Clear**: deletes the last input number

**<< OFF**: hides the icons. To display the icons, touch **>> ON**.

**↶**: returns to the previous screen

### ■ Playing a bonus group (DVD audio mode only, if the DVD has bonus options)

**STEP 1** Touch **Search** on the control icon screen.



Input the desired bonus group number on the group search screen and touch **Enter**.

**←**: deletes the number

**↶**: returns to the previous screen

### ■ Searching by chapter/track

Press **^** or **v** on



to select a chapter/track.

### ■ Selecting a menu number (DVD audio mode only)

**STEP 1** Touch **Select Number** on the control icon screen.

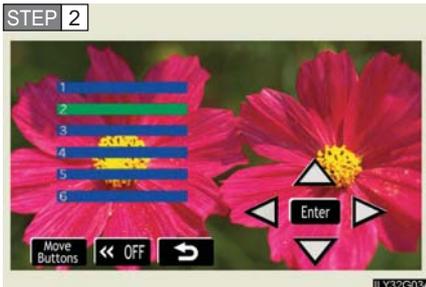


Input the desired menu number on the screen and touch **Enter**.

### Using the DVD menu

**STEP 1** Touch **Menu** or **Top Menu** on the control icon screen.

Touch  if the menu control key does not appear on the menu screen.



Touch **▲**, **▼**, **◀** or **▶** to select a menu item, and touch **Enter** to select.

**Move Buttons** : moves icons up or down  
**◀ OFF** : hides icons. To display icons, touch **▶ ON**.

**▶** : returns to the previous screen

Note that specific items or the operating method differs from one DVD to another. Refer to the manual that comes with the DVD disc. (The above image is an example.)

## Changing the subtitle language



Touch **Subtitle** on the control icon screen.

Each time you touch the switch, the next available language is selected.

**Hide** : hides the subtitles

**↩** : returns to the previous screen

## Changing the audio language (DVD video only)

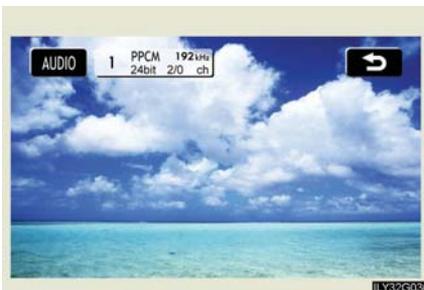


Touch **AUDIO** on the control icon screen.

Each time you touch the switch, the next available language is selected.

**↩** : returns to the previous screen

## Changing the audio format (DVD audio only)



Touch **AUDIO** on the control icon screen.

Each time you touch the switch, the next available audio format is selected.

**↩** : returns to the previous screen

## Changing the angle (if the angle option is available)

**STEP 1** Touch **Angle** on the control icon screen.

**STEP 2**



Touch **Angle**.

Each time you touch the switch, the next available angle is selected.

**←**: returns to the previous screen

## Initial DVD setup

### ■ Displaying “Setup Menu” screen

**STEP 1** Touch **Setup** on the control icon screen.

**STEP 2**



After you change the initial settings, touch **Enter**.

**Default**: restores default settings

### ■ Setting audio language

**STEP 1** Touch  on the “Setup Menu” screen.

**STEP 2** Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, touch  and input the desired language code. (→P. 365)

: returns to the previous screen

### ■ Setting subtitle language

**STEP 1** Touch  on the “Setup Menu” screen.

**STEP 2** Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, touch  and input the desired language code. (→P. 365)

: returns to the previous screen

### ■ Setting menu language

**STEP 1** Touch  on the “Setup Menu” screen.

**STEP 2** Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, touch  and input the desired language code. (→P. 365)

: returns to the previous screen

### ■ Setting angle mark “ON” or “OFF”

If the DVD has angle options, you can turn the angle mark on or off.

Touch  on the “Setup Menu” screen. Each time you touch the switch, the multi angle mark on the screen turns on or off alternately.

## ■ Parental lock

**STEP 1** Touch **Parental Lock** on the “Setup Menu” screen.

**STEP 2**



Input the 4-digit personal code and then touch **Enter**.

If you enter wrong numbers, touch **←** to delete the numbers.

Touch **←** 10 times to delete the personal code.

**STEP 3** Select a parental level (1 - 8). (→P. 375)

**↩**: returns to the previous screen

## ■ Entering a language code

If you touch **Other** on the “Select Audio Language” screen, “Select Subtitle Language” screen or “Select DVD Language” screen, you can select a language by entering the 4-digit language code if that language is available.



Input the 4-digit language code and then touch **Enter**.

**←**: deletes the last input digit

**↩**: returns to the previous screen

## ● Language codes

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
0514	English	0207	Bulgarian	0712	Galician
0618	French	0208	Bihari	0714	Guarani
0405	German	0209	Bislama	0721	Gujarati
0920	Italian	0214	Bengali	0801	Hausa
0519	Spanish	0215	Tibetan	0809	Hindi
2608	Chinese	0218	Breton	0818	Croatian
1412	Dutch	0301	Catalan	0821	Hungarian
1620	Portuguese	0315	Corsican	0825	Armenian
1922	Swedish	0319	Czech	0901	Interlingua
1821	Russian	0325	Welsh	0905	Interlingue
1115	Korean	0401	Danish	0911	Inupiak
0512	Greek	0426	Bhutani	0914	Indonesian
0101	Afar	0515	Esperanto	0919	Icelandic
0102	Abkhazian	0520	Estonian	0923	Hebrew
0106	Afrikaans	0521	Basque	1001	Japanese
0113	Amharic	0601	Persian	1009	Yiddish
0118	Arabic	0609	Finnish	1023	Javanese
0119	Assamese	0610	Fiji	1101	Georgian
0125	Aymara	0615	Faroese	1111	Kazakh
0126	Azerbaijani	0625	Frisian	1112	Greenlandic
0201	Bashkir	0701	Irish	1113	Cambodian
0205	Byelorussian	0704	Scots-Gaelic	1114	Kannada

### 3-3. Using the audio system

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
1119	Kashmiri	1415	Norwegian	1914	Shona
1121	Kurdish	1503	Occitan	1915	Somali
1125	Kirghiz	1513	(Afan) Oromo	1917	Albanian
1201	Latin	1518	Oriya	1918	Serbian
1214	Lingala	1601	Panjabi	1919	Siswati
1215	Laothian	1612	Polish	1920	Sesotho
1220	Lithuanian	1619	Pashto, Pushto	1921	Sundanese
1222	Latvian	1721	Quechua	1923	Swahili
1307	Malagasy	1813	Rhaeto- Romance	2001	Tamil
1309	Maori	1814	Kirundi	2005	Telugu
1311	Macedonian	1815	Romanian	2007	Tajik
1312	Malayalam	1823	Kinyarwanda	2008	Thai
1314	Mongolian	1901	Sanskrit	2009	Tigrinya
1315	Moldavian	1904	Sindhi	2011	Turkmen
1318	Marathi	1907	Sangho	2012	Tagalog
1319	Malay	1908	Serbo- Croatian	2014	Setswana
1320	Maltese	1909	Sinhalese	2015	Tonga
1325	Burmese	1911	Slovak	2018	Turkish
1401	Nauru	1912	Slovenian	2019	Tsonga
1405	Nepali	1913	Samoan	2020	Tatar

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
2023	Twi	2209	Vietnamese	2515	Yoruba
2111	Ukrainian	2215	Volapük	2621	Zulu
2118	Urdu	2315	Wolof		
2126	Uzbek	2408	Xhosa		

### ■ Error messages

If “Region Code Error” is displayed, check if the region code printed on the DVD matches the player’s region code.

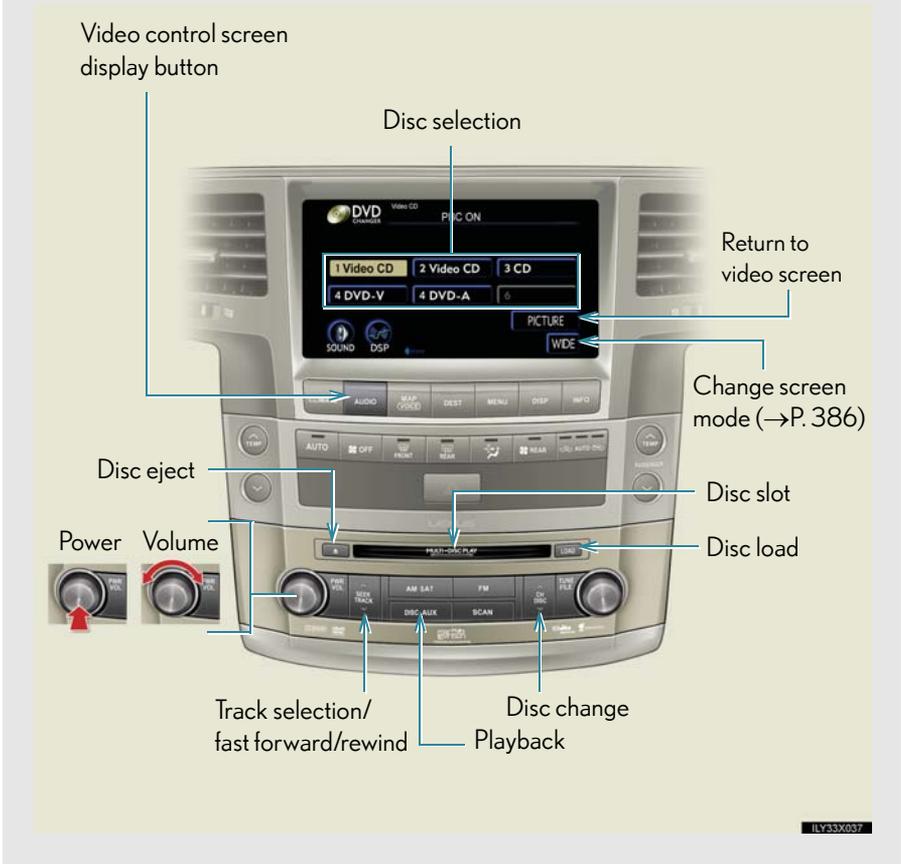
If a different message is displayed: →P. 372

### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Playing a video CD (with DVD player)

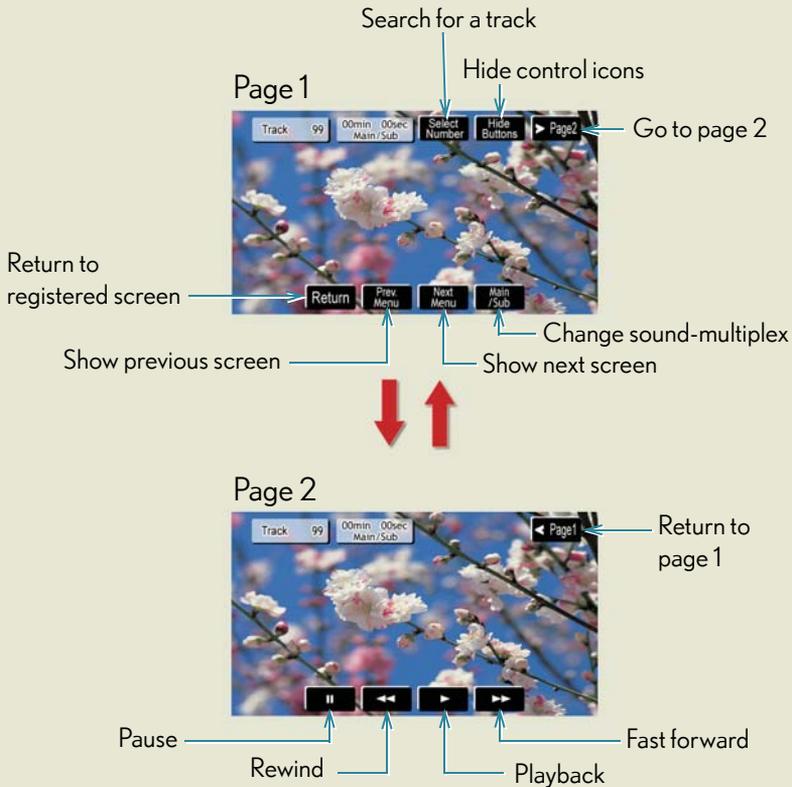
For safety reasons, you can enjoy the visual contents of discs only when the vehicle is completely stopped with the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode and the parking brake applied. While you are driving, only audio contents may be played.

Insert a disc or press **DISC-AUX** with a disc inserted.



### ■ Control icon screen

Touch any part of the screen if no icons are shown while watching a video CD, and the following screen appears.



If  appears on the screen when you touch an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

#### Loading, ejecting and selecting discs

→P. 345

#### Fast forwarding/rewinding a video CD

Touch and hold  or  on the control icon screen or press and hold  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  until you hear a beep.

#### Slow playback

Touch  and then touch  on the control icon screen. Video is played slowly while you are touching .

#### Using the video CD menu

Touch  on the control icon screen.

Refer to the manual that comes with the video CD for specific menu items.

## Selecting a desired screen

### ■ Searching manually

Touch **Prev. Menu** or **Next Menu** on the screen, or press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  until the desired screen appears.

### ■ Searching by number

**STEP 1** Touch **Select Number** on the control icon screen.

**STEP 2**



Input the desired track number on the screen and touch **Enter**.

**Clear**: deletes the last input number

**<< OFF**: hides icons. To display icons, touch **>> ON**.

**↶**: returns to the previous screen

## Changing the sound-multiplex mode

Touch **Main/Sub** on the control icon screen. The mode cycles through each time the switch is touched.

“Main” → “Sub” → “Main/Sub”



### ■ Error messages

→P. 372

### 3-3. Using the audio system

## CD/DVD player and DVD video disc information

### ■ Error messages

Refer to the following table and take the appropriate measures. If the problem is not rectified, take the vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

Message	Cause	Correction Procedures
No CD or No disc	There is no disc in the CD or DVD changer.	Insert a disc.
Check CD X or Check DISC X	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The disc X is dirty or damaged.</li><li>• The disc X is inserted upside down.</li><li>• The disc X is not playable with the player.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Clean the disc.</li><li>• Insert the disc correctly.</li><li>• Confirm the disc is playable with the player.</li></ul>
CD error or DVD error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• There is a malfunction within the system.</li><li>• Operation is stopped due to a high temperature inside the player.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Eject the disc.</li><li>• Eject the disc and allow the player to cool down.</li></ul>
NO MUSIC FILE	This indicates that no playable data is included in the disc.	Eject the disc.

### ■ DVD video discs

- The DVD player conforms to NTSC color TV formats.
- Region code: Some DVD video discs have a region code indicating the region in which you can use the DVD video disc. If the DVD video disc is not labeled as “ALL” or “1”, you cannot use it on this DVD player. If you attempt to play an inappropriate DVD video disc on this player, “Region Code Error” appears on the screen. Even if the DVD video disc does not have a region code, you may not be able to use it.
- The DVD player supports multi-channel sound is output.

### ■ Symbols shown on DVD video discs

Symbol	Meaning
	Indicates NTSC format
	Indicates the number of audio tracks
	Indicates the number of language subtitles
	Indicates the number of angles
	Indicates the screen display ratios available Wide screen: 16:9 Standard: 4:3
	Indicates the disc's region code ALL: in all countries Number: region code

#### ■ Discs that can be used

Discs with the marks shown below can be used.

Playback may not be possible depending on recording format or disc features, or due to scratches, dirt or deterioration.

##### ▶ Without DVD player



##### ▶ With DVD player



Discs with copy-protection features may not play correctly.

#### ■ CD/DVD player protection feature

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected while.

#### ■ If discs are left inside the CD/DVD player or in the ejected position for extended periods

Discs may be damaged and may not play properly.

#### ■ Lens cleaners

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the CD/DVD player.

#### ■ DVD video disc information

##### ● DVD video discs

A DVD video disc is a Digital Versatile Disc that holds video. DVD video discs have adopted "MPEG2", one of the world standards of digital compression technologies. The picture data is compressed by 1/40 on average and stored. Variable rate encoded technology in which the volume of data assigned to the picture is changed depending on the picture format has also been adopted. Audio data is stored using PCM and Dolby digital, which enables higher quality of sound. Furthermore, multi-angle and multi-language features will also help you enjoy the more advanced technology of DVD video.

- Viewer restrictions

This feature limits what can be viewed in conformity with the level of restrictions of the country. The level of restrictions varies depending on the DVD video disc. Some DVD video discs cannot be played at all, or violent scenes are skipped or replaced with other scenes.

Level 1: DVD video discs for children can be played.

Level 2-7: DVD video discs for children and G-rated movies can be played.

Level 8: All types of DVD video discs can be played.

- Multi-angle option

You can enjoy the same scene from different angles.

- Multi-language option

You can select the subtitle and audio languages.

- Region codes

The region codes are provided on DVD players and DVD discs. If the DVD video disc does not have the same region code as the DVD player, you cannot play the disc on the DVD player. (→P. 373)

- Audio

This DVD player can play linear PCM, Dolby Digital and MPEG audio format DVDs. Other decoded types cannot be played.

- Title and chapter

Video and audio programs stored in DVD video discs are divided into parts by title and chapter.

Title: The largest unit of the video and audio programs stored on DVD video discs. Usually, one movie, one album, or one audio program is assigned as a title.

Chapter: A title is comprised of one or more chapters.

#### ■ Sound

- Dolby Digital

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories

“Dolby” and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories. Confidential unpublished works.

©1992-1997 Dolby Laboratories. All rights reserved.

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by method claims of certain U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights owned by Macrovision Corporation and other rights owners. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision Corporation, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision Corporation.

Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

- DTS

“DTS” and “DTS Digital Surround” are registered trademarks of Digital Theater System, Inc.

#### ■ MP3 and WMA files

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.

Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size by using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media <sup>TM</sup>Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.

This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards that can be used and to the media/formats on which the files are recorded.

- MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards

MP3 (MPEG1 LAYER3, MPEG2 LSF LAYER3)

- Compatible sampling frequencies

MPEG1 LAYER3: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)

MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)

- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)

MPEG1 LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 160, 192, 224, 256, 320 (kbps)

MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 144, 160 (kbps)

- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

- WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards  
WMA Ver. 7, 8, 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies  
32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (only compatible with 2-channel playback)  
Ver. 7, 8: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192 (kbps)  
Ver. 9: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192, 256, 320 (kbps)

- Compatible media

Media that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback are CD-Rs and CD-RWs.

Playback in some instances may not be possible if the CD-R or CD-RW is not finalized. Playback may not be possible or the audio may jump if the disc is scratched or marked with fingerprints.

- Compatible disc formats

The following disc formats can be used:

- Disc formats: CD-ROM Mode 1 and Mode 2  
CD-ROM XA Mode 2, Form 1 and Form 2
- File formats: ISO9660 Level 1, Level 2, (Romeo, Joliet)  
MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels (including the root)
- Maximum length of folder names/file names: 32 characters
- Maximum number of folders: 192 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files per disc: 255

- File names

The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

- Discs containing multi-session recordings

As the audio system is compatible with multi-sessions, it is possible to play discs that contain MP3 and WMA files. However, only the first session can be played.

- ID3 and WMA tags

ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.

The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

- MP3 and WMA playback

When a disc containing MP3 or WMA files is inserted, all files on the disc are first checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend you do not write in any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.

Discs that contain a mixture of music data and MP3 or WMA format data cannot be played.

- Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they may be mistakenly recognized and played as MP3 and WMA files. This may result in large amounts of interference and damage to the speakers.

### ● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- CD-R or CD-RW playback may not be possible in some instances, depending on the characteristics of the disc.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- When files other than MP3 or WMA files are recorded on a disc, it may take more time to recognize the disc and in some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are the registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and other countries.

### CAUTION

#### ■ DVD video precaution

Conversational speech on some DVDs is recorded at a low volume to emphasize the impact of sound effects. If you adjust the volume assuming that the conversations represent the maximum volume level that the DVD will play, you may be startled by louder sound effects or startled when you change to a different audio source.

Loud sounds may have a significant impact on the human body or pose a driving hazard. Keep this in mind when you adjust the volume.

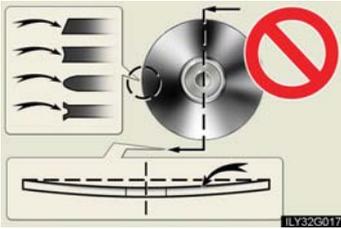
 NOTICE

■ Discs and adapters that cannot be used

Do not use the following types of discs, 3 in. (8 cm) disc adapters or Dual Disc. Doing so may damage the player and/or disc insert/eject function.



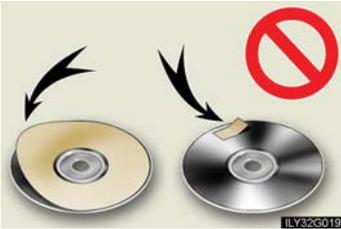
- Discs that have a diameter that is not 4.7 in. (12 cm)



- Low-quality or deformed discs



- Discs with a transparent or translucent recording area



- Discs that have tape, stickers or CD-R labels attached to them, or that have had the label peeled off

 NOTICE**■ Player precautions**

Failure to follow the precautions below may result in damage to the discs or the player itself.

- Do not insert anything other than discs into the disc slot.
- Do not apply oil to the player.
- Store discs away from direct sunlight.
- Never try to disassemble any part of the player.



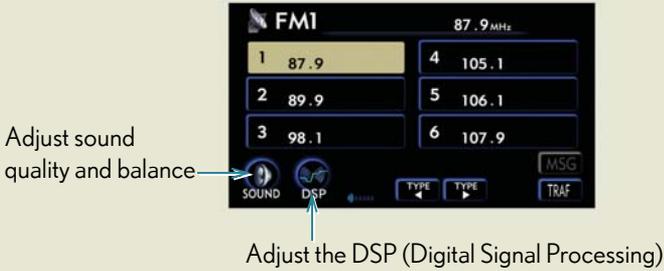
- Do not insert more than one disc at a time.

### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Optimal use of the audio/video system

Press  to display the audio/video control screen.

#### ▶ Operating the radio and audio CD



ILY32G045

#### ▶ Operating the DVD video/audio and video CD

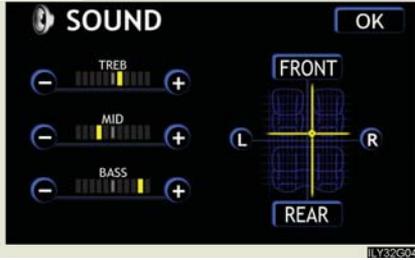


ILY32G046

## Adjusting sound quality and balance

**STEP 1** Touch  on the screen.

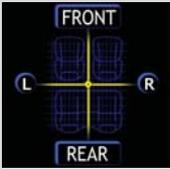
**STEP 2**



Adjust the settings, referring to the following table.

Once you have finished, touch

.

Sound quality mode	Display	Level	Touch
High-pitched tones*		-5 to 5	 or 
Mid-pitched tones*		-5 to 5	
Low-pitched tones*		-5 to 5	
Front/rear volume balance		F7 to R7	 or 
Left/right volume balance		L7 to R7	 or 

\*: The sound quality level is adjusted individually in each radio, CD or DVD mode.

## Setting DSP (Digital Signal Processing)

The following features can be set as desired by touching  on the screen:

▶ Without DVD player



▶ With DVD player



■ Turning Automatic Sound Levelizer (ASL) "ON" or "OFF"

Touch  or .

ASL automatically adjusts the volume and tone quality according to the noise level as you drive your vehicle.

### ■ Changing the listening position (without DVD player)

The speaker balance can be changed to produce the best sound for each listening position.

Touch **CHANGE**.

The listening position changes as follows each time the switch is touched.

Display	Listening position
	Position best suited to the driver's seat
	Position best suited to the driver's and front passenger's seat
	Position best suited to the rear seats
	Position best suited to all seats

### ■ Turning the surround "ON" or "OFF" (with DVD player)

Touch **ON** or **OFF**.

## Setting the screen ratio mode (with DVD player)

**STEP 1** Touch **WIDE** on the screen.



Touch one of **NORMAL**, **WIDE1** or **WIDE2** to match the screen ratio printed on the DVD.

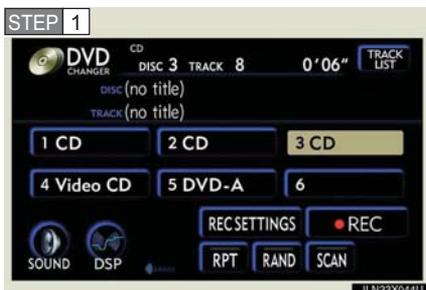
Screen ratio mode	Details
"NORMAL"	Suitable for 4:3 screen ratio
"WIDE1"	Expands the normal screen horizontally to fill the display
"WIDE2"	Suitable for 16:9 screen ratio

### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Recording to the sound library (with DVD player)

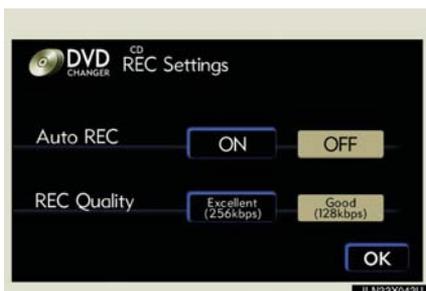
The tracks recorded from audio discs are provided with album, artist, genre and title names using the Gracenote, Inc. (CDDDB) database and they are stored in the sound library on the HDD. (→P. 403)

### Record setting



Touch **RECSETTINGS** when playing an audio disc.

**STEP 2** Touch the desired button.



“Auto REC”

The automatic record setting can be set to **ON** (AUTO) or **OFF** (MANUAL).

“REC Quality”

The sound quality used for recording can be set.

**STEP 3** Touch **OK**.

## Recording automatically

If “Auto REC” is set to **ON** on the “REC Settings” screen, recording starts simultaneously with the playback of an audio disc.

“TRACK LIST” cannot be operated while driving.

## ■ REC FAST



Touch **REC FAST**.

It can allow recording up to 4 times faster than normal. The audio plays at a normal speed during fast recording.

Touch **REC FAST** again to return to normal speed recording.

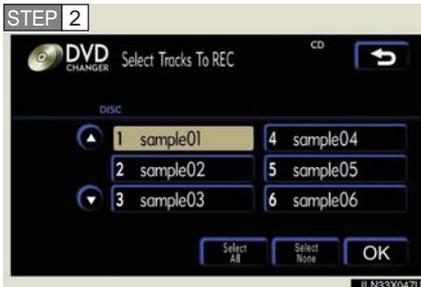
## Recording manually

If “Auto REC” is set to **OFF** on the “REC Settings” screen, only selected tracks will be recorded.

This function cannot be operated while driving.



Touch **REC**.



Touch the desired track.

Touching the desired track again cancels selection of the track.

**Select All** : select all the tracks.

**Select None** : cancel all the selections.

**STEP 3** Touch **OK**.

## Cancel recording



Touch **RECCANCEL**.

#### ■ When setting REC Quality

The sound quality of  is lower than that of . However, more tracks can be recorded using “Good” because the file size is smaller.

#### ■ Recording will be canceled and the track being recorded will be deleted when

- The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to OFF mode while recording.
- The audio switch is turned OFF while recording.
- The audio disc being recorded is ejected, or another disc is selected using the DVD player.
- “Auto REC” is switched from  to  on the “REC Settings” screen.
- ,  or  is operated, fast forwarding or rewinding is performed, or the track is changed during automatic normal speed recording.
- The file size of the track being recorded exceeds the available HDD space.

#### ■ Information while and after recording

- , , ,  and  cannot be operated during fast and manual recording. Fast forwarding and rewinding are also not possible.
-  is displayed.
-  is displayed to the left of the recorded track names on the “TRACK LIST” screen.
- For tracks that were not provided with a name from the database when they were recorded, the date of recording is displayed.
- When you are recording a CD with no track intervals (such as a live concert CD), the sound may break in a track when the music data is played back.
- Make sure to check the recording operation before recording and check the recorded contents after recording.
- Recording is not guaranteed for all CDs.

- The playback sound source will change from the HDD to the audio disc and the playback will pause for about 1 to 2 seconds when
  - Fast recording is completed.
  -  is touched during manual recording.
  -  is touched during fast recording to return to normal speed recording. (The playback pause will not affect the recording.)
- **About the CDs which can be recorded**
  - The sound library is compatible with SCMS (Serial Copy Management System). A duplicate of a digital audio CD or MP3 files that is on a CD-R or other media cannot be recorded to the HDD.
  - Recording is possible only with a CD that contains 44.1 kHz, 16-bit-stereo PCM digital audio data.

### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Listening to a track recorded to the sound library (with DVD player)

Press the **DISC-AUX** button when tracks are recorded in the HDD.



ILV32X041

The selection procedure described here is for album mode. The artist and genre modes can also be operated using the same procedure.

## Selecting the desired mode

STEP 1 Touch .

STEP 2



Touch the desired mode.

## Selecting a desired album/artist/genre list

### ■ Selecting a desired album

Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  or touch “ALBUM ” or “” to select the next/previous album.

### ■ Selecting a desired album from the album list

STEP 1 Touch .

STEP 2



Touch the desired album number.

 or : changes the list by 6 album groups

: displays the track list

: displays the details of the album currently playing

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

### ■ Searching for a desired album

**STEP 1** Touch and hold  or press and hold the  until "PM.SCAN" appears.

The first 10 seconds of the first track on the album will be played.

**STEP 2** Touch  or press  once again when the desired album is reached.

### Selecting a desired track

#### ■ Selecting a desired track

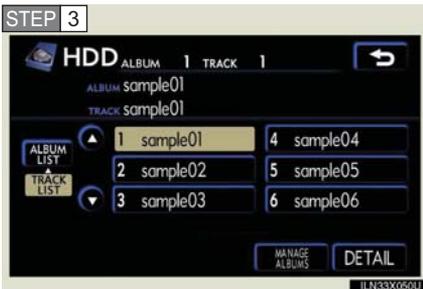
Turn  or press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  to select the desired track.

To fast forward or rewind, press and hold  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on .

#### ■ Selecting a desired track from the track list

**STEP 1** Touch  on the screen to turn the album list on.

**STEP 2** Touch .



Touch the desired track number.

 or : changes the list by 6 groups

: displays the album list

: displays the details of the track currently playing

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

### ■ Searching for a desired track

**STEP 1** Touch  or press the .  
“SCAN ” appears on the screen.

The first 10 seconds of each track will be played.

**STEP 2** Touch  or press  once again when the desired track is reached.

## Repeat play

### ■ Repeating an album

Touch and hold  until “PM.RPT” appears.

### ■ Repeating a track

Touch .

## Random playback

### ■ Playing the tracks from all the albums in random order

Touch and hold  until the “PM.RAND” appears.

### ■ Playing the tracks from the album in random order

Touch .

### ■ About the recorded sound

The data is recorded using a highly efficient compression method, so sound may slightly differ from the original depending on the sound source.

### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Editing data recorded to the sound library (with DVD player)

Recorded albums and tracks can be deleted, and track information can be edited or retrieved from the database (CDDDB). The data cannot be edited while driving.

#### STEP 1



Play the desired album, and touch **MANAGE ALBUMS** on the album mode, artist mode or genre mode screen.

If you touched **MANAGE ALBUMS** on the artist mode or genre mode screen, touch **Yes**.

#### STEP 2



Following information can be edited.

- 1 **Delete Albums**
- 2 **Edit Current Album**
  - **Change Album Name**
  - **Edit Track Information**
  - **Delete Tracks**
  - **Search For Track Info**

## Changing the name of an album

STEP 1 Touch .



Touch .



Input the name and touch .

 ,  : Letter input

 : Number/Symbol input

 : Space

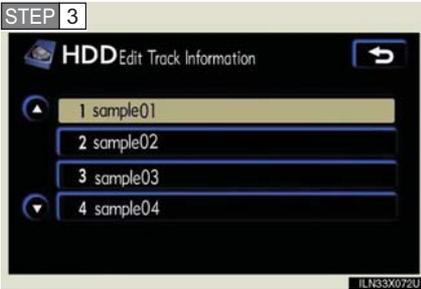
 : Backspace

## Changing track information

STEP 1 Touch .



Touch .



Touch the desired track.



Touch  for the item to be edited.

### ■ Changing a track title



Enter the name and touch **OK**.

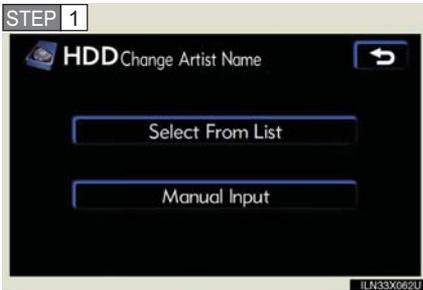
**A-Z**, **À-Ý**: Letter input

**0-9**: Number/Symbol input

**Space**: Space

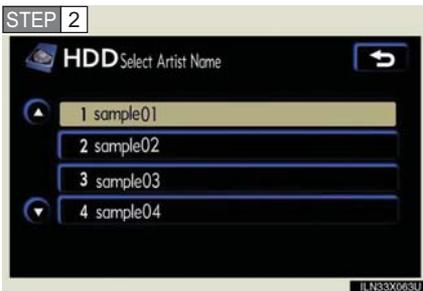
**←**: Backspace

### ■ Changing an artist name



Touch **Select From List** or **Manual Input**.

### ● Select From List



If you touched **Select From List**, touch the desired artist name from the list.

● Manual Input



If you touched **Manual Input**,  
input the artist name and touch  
**OK**.

**A-Z, À-Ý** : Letter input

**0-9** : Number/Symbol input

**Space** : Space

**←** : Backspace

**STEP 3** Touch **Yes**.

■ Changing the genre



Touch the desired genre.

**STEP 2** Touch **Yes**.

## Deleting albums

STEP 1 Touch .

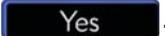


Select a desired album from the list and touch .

Touching the desired album from the list again cancels the selection.

 : select all the albums.

 : cancel all the selections.

STEP 3 Touch .

## Deleting tracks

STEP 1 Touch .



Touch .



Select a desired track from the list and touch .

Touching the desired track from the list again cancels the selection.

 : select all the tracks.

 : cancel all the selections.

STEP 4 Touch .

## Retrieving track information from the database (CDDB)

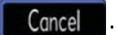
If the track information that was provided when a track was recorded is not correct, you can search for track information from the database stored in the HDD and edit the information.

**STEP 1** Touch .



Touch .



To stop the search, touch .

If there are multiple album titles, a list screen will be displayed. Select and touch the correct title.

To stop the process, touch



Touch .

## Sound library information (with DVD player)

### Outline of the sound library

About 2000 tracks can be recorded to the hard disc drive (HDD) from audio discs (if 5-minute tracks are recorded at 128kbps).

The recorded tracks will be provided with album, artist, genre and title names using the Gracenote, Inc. (CDDDB) database.

These names can help you search for a track easily.

Recording equipment should be used only for lawful copying and you are advised to check carefully what is lawful copying in the country in which you are making a copy. Copying of copyright material such as films or music is unlawful unless permitted by a legal exception or consented to by the right owners.

### Database

When an audio disc is played or recorded, the system will search for album, artist, genre and title names from the database stored in the HDD. If the information is available in the database, the audio disc will be automatically provided with the information. The system uses the Gracenote CDDDB as its database.

#### ■ About the database

- The information provided may be different from the actual information.
- 100% accuracy is not guaranteed for the data provided by the Gracenote CDDDB music recognition service.
- To check the database version number, see “To confirm the map data and CDDDB versions and map coverage area”. (→“Navigation System Owner’s Manual”)
- For details about updating the CDDDB, contact your Lexus dealer.

#### ■ About the data recorded on the HDD

- The data recorded on the HDD cannot be used without the copyright owner's permission. The data is for personal use only.
- Lexus does not compensate for contents that cannot be recorded or any loss of recorded data due to a malfunction or failure of the navigation system.
- The data saved or recorded onto this navigation system by the customer cannot be extracted from the navigation system, and those service cannot be accepted.
- The data saved or recorded onto this navigation system by the customer cannot be guaranteed during repair or service. Lost data that was saved or recorded by the customer is not guaranteed.
- Due to copyrights, the music data recorded into the sound library cannot be backed up during repair or service.

#### ■ About Gracenote CDDB

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000-2006 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2006 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents: #5,987,525; #6,061,680; #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6,240,459, #6,330,593, and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523. Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.



End-User License Agreement

USE OF THIS PRODUCT IMPLIES ACCEPTANCE OF THE TERMS BELOW.

Gracenote® MusicID® Terms of Use

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California (“Gracenote”). The software from Gracenote (the “Gracenote Software”) enables this application to do online disc identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information (“Gracenote Data”) from online services (“Gracenote Servers”) and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this device.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party.

**YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.**

You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers, Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote, inc. may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote MusicID Service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote MusicID service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote MusicID Service.

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you "AS IS" Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data from in the Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its online services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© Gracenote 2006

### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Using the AUX adapter

This adapter can be used to connect a portable audio device and listen to it through the vehicle's speakers.



Connect the portable audio device.

**STEP 2** Press **DISC AUX**.

#### ■ Operating portable audio devices connected to the audio system

The volume can be adjusted using the vehicle's audio controls. All other adjustments must be made on the portable audio device itself.

#### ■ When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet

Noise may occur during playback. Use the power source of the portable audio device.

### 3-3. Using the audio system

## Using the steering wheel audio switches

Some audio features can be controlled using the switches on the steering wheel.



**1** Turns the power on, selects audio source

**2** Volume

**3** Radio mode: Selects radio stations

CD mode: Selects tracks, files (MP3 and WMA) and discs

DVD mode\*: Selects tracks, chapters and discs

Sound library mode\*:  
Selects tracks, albums, artists and genres

\*: DVD player only

### Turning on the power

Press  when the audio system is turned off.

The audio system can be turned off by holding the switch down for 1 second or more.

## Changing the audio source

Press  when the audio system is turned on. The audio source changes as follows each time the switch is pressed. If no discs are inserted in the changer and tracks are recorded in the HDD, that mode will be skipped.

With CD player:

FM (1,2)→CD changer→AUX→AM→SAT (1,2,3)→FM (1,2)

With DVD player:

FM (1,2)→Sound library→DVD changer→AUX→AM→SAT (1,2,3)→FM (1,2)

## Adjusting the volume

Press  to increase the volume and  to decrease the volume.

Hold up the switch to continue increasing or decreasing the volume.

## Selecting a radio station

**STEP 1** Press  to select the radio mode.

**STEP 2** Press  or  to select a radio station.

To scan for receivable stations, press and hold  or  on the switch until you hear a beep.

#### Selecting a track/file or chapter

**STEP 1** Press  to select the CD or DVD mode.

**STEP 2** Press  or  to select the desired track/file or chapter.

#### Selecting a disc or folder in the CD or DVD player (Folder selection is available only when MP3/WMA disc is in use.)

**STEP 1** Press  to select the CD or DVD player.

**STEP 2** Press and hold  or  until a beep is heard.

#### Selecting a track (Sound library mode only)

**STEP 1** Press  to select the Sound library mode.

**STEP 2** Press  or  to select the desired track.

#### Selecting album, artist or genre list (Sound library mode only)

**STEP 1** Press  to select the Sound library mode.

**STEP 2** Press and hold  or  until a beep is heard.

---

■ **Canceling automatic selection of a radio station**

Press the same switch.

 **CAUTION**

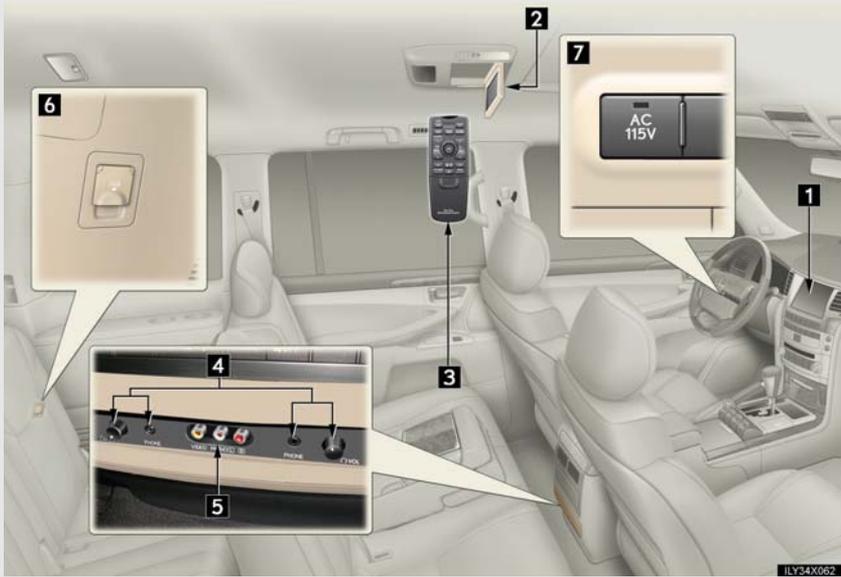
■ **To reduce the risk of an accident**

Exercise care when operating the audio switches on the steering wheel.

### 3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

## Rear seat entertainment system features (if equipped)

The rear seat entertainment system is designed for the rear passengers to enjoy audio and DVD video separately from the front audio system.



- 1 Front audio system
- 2 Display
- 3 Rear seat entertainment system controller
- 4 Headphone volume control knobs and headphone jacks
- 5 A/V input adapter
- 6 Power outlet
- 7 Power outlet main switch

## Rear seat entertainment system controller

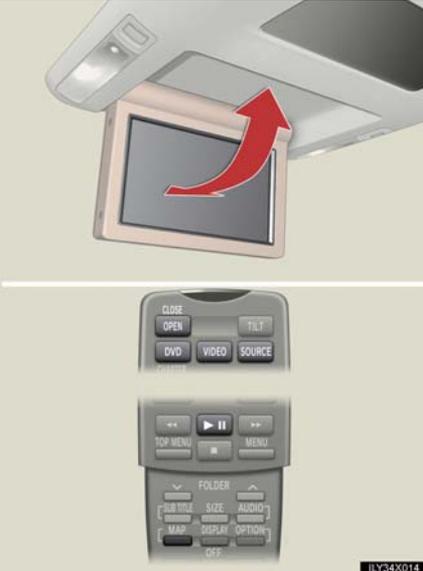


To use the buttons under the cover, slide the cover down.

## Opening and closing the display

### ■ Opening and closing the display

#### ▶ With navigation system



#### ● Open

Press **CLOSE** **OPEN**, **DVD**, **MAP**, **VIDEO** or **▶ ||**.

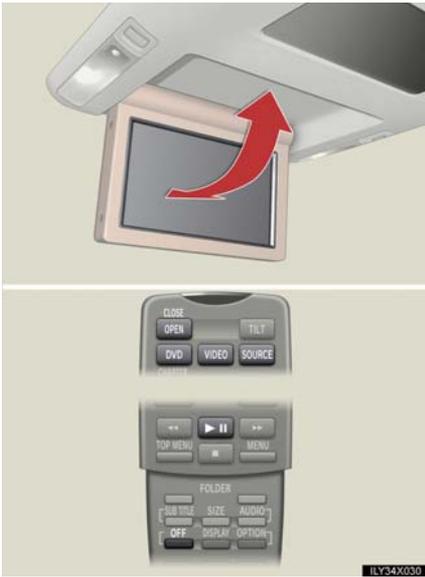
#### ● Close

Press **CLOSE** **OPEN** or **OFF**.

If the display is closed with an image shown, the image will automatically turn off. (The sound will not be turned off.)

Opening and closing operations can be performed from the front seat. (→P. 310)

► Without navigation system



● Open

Press **CLOSE** **OPEN**, **DVD**, **VIDEO** or **▶||**.

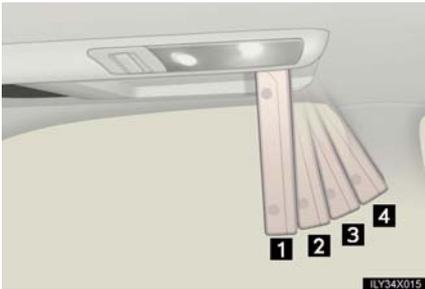
● Close

Press **CLOSE** **OPEN** or **OFF**.

If the display is closed with an image shown, the image will automatically turn off. (The sound will not be turned off.)

Opening and closing operations can be performed from the front seat. (→P. 310)

■ Tilting the display



The display angles change as follows each time **TILT** is pressed.

**1** → **2** → **3** → **4** → **1**

The display angle is memorized and will be recalled when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode again.

### ■ Caution screen



This screen appears for a few seconds when the rear display is opened. During this time, only

**CLOSE**  
**OPEN** can be operated.

### Headphone jacks



To listen to the rear audio, use headphones.

- 1 To use the headphones  
Connect them to the jack.
- 2 To adjust the volume

Turn the knob clockwise to increase the volume. Turn the knob counterclockwise to decrease the volume.

## Changing the source

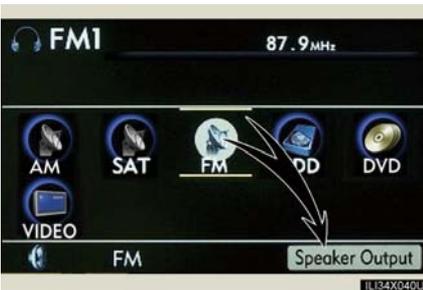


Press **SOURCE** to display the audio source selection screen.



Select an audio source.

## Changing the speaker output



To play the rear audio over the speakers in the vehicle, turn **Speaker Output** on.

■ **The rear seat entertainment system can be used when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Jam protection function**

The display will stop closing and return to its previous position if something gets in the way of it closing.

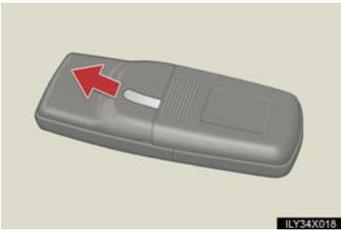
■ **When  appears on the screen**

It indicates that the selected icon cannot be used at this time.

■ **Rear system lock**

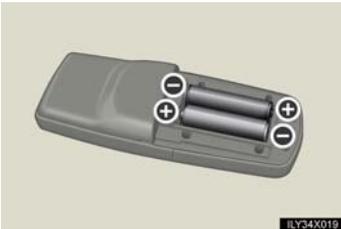
→P. 311

■ **Before using the controller (for new vehicle owners)**



An insulating sheet is set to prevent the batteries from being depleted. Remove the insulating sheet before using the remote control.

■ **When the controller batteries are fully depleted**



Remove the depleted batteries and install new batteries.

### ■ Headphones

With some headphones generally available in the market, it may be difficult to catch signals properly. Lexus recommends the use of Lexus genuine wireless headphones.

Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

### ■ Volume

- Adjust the volume when you connect the headphones to the jack. Loud sounds may have a significant impact on the human body.
- Conversational speech on some DVDs is recorded at a low volume to emphasize the impact of sound effects. If you adjust the volume assuming that the conversations represent the maximum volume level that the DVD will play, you may be startled by louder sound effects or when you change to a different audio source. Be sure to adjust the volume with this in mind.

### CAUTION

#### ■ When the rear seat entertainment system is not used

Keep the display closed.

In the event of an accident or sudden braking, an occupant may hit the opened display, resulting in injury.

#### ■ To prevent accidents and electric shock

Do not disassemble or modify the remote control.

#### ■ When the remote controller is not used

Stow the remote controller.

Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

#### ■ Closing the display

Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.

#### ■ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A. and Canada

- Laser products (→P. 334)

 NOTICE**■ Cleaning the display**

Wipe the display with a dry soft cloth.

If the screen is wiped with a rough cloth, the surface of the screen may be scratched.

**■ To prevent damage to the remote control**

- Keep the remote control away from direct sunlight, high temperature and high humidity.
- Do not drop or knock the remote control against hard objects.
- Do not sit on or place heavy objects on the remote control.

**■ DVD player**

Never try to disassemble or oil any part of the DVD player. Do not insert anything other than a disc into the slot.

**■ Closing the display**

Do not close the display using your hand. Doing so may result in a malfunction.

### 3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

## Using the radio



Select radio mode on the source screen to display the control screen.

#### Selecting a preset station

Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  until the desired station band appears on the screen.

#### Tuning the station

Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  until the desired station appears on the screen.

Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  and the stations will be searched automatically one after another.

## 3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

### Using the DVD player



- 1 Turning on DVD player mode
- 2 Selecting a disc

#### Selecting a disc



Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  until the desired slot number appears on the screen.

- Audio CD, CD text →P. 422
- MP3/WMA disc →P. 423
- DVD video/audio →P. 425
- Video CD →P. 438

### 3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

## Playing an audio CD/CD text

#### ■ Selecting a track



Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  until the desired track number appears on the screen.

#### ■ Fast forwarding or rewinding a track

Press and hold  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on .

### 3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

## Playing WMA/MP3 discs

#### ■ Selecting a file



Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  until the desired file number appears on the screen.

#### ■ Selecting a folder

Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  until the desired folder number appears on the screen.

#### ■ Fast forwarding or rewinding a file

Press and hold  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on .

### 3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

## Playing the HDD audio (with navigation system)



Select “HDD” on the source screen to display the control screen.

### Selecting a track

Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  until the desired track number appears on the screen.

### Selecting a list

Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  until the desired track number appears on the screen.

### Fast forwarding or reversing a track

Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on .

## 3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

### Playing DVD video/audio

#### ■ Controller

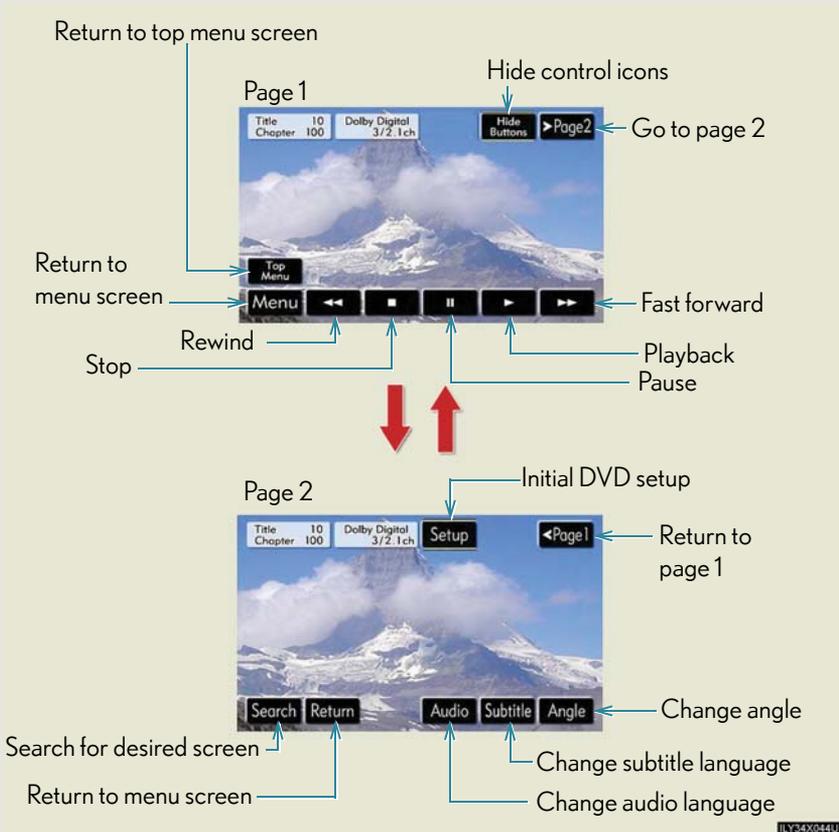


- 1 Turning on the DVD mode
- 2 Selecting a chapter/track
- 3 Rewinding a disc
- 4 Turning on the title selection screen
- 5 Changing the subtitle language
- 6 Turning on the control icon screen
- 7 Changing the audio language
- 8 Stopping a disc
- 9 Turning on the menu screen
- 10 Fast forwarding a disc
- 11 Playing/pausing a disc
- 12 Selecting an icon
- 13 Inputting the selected icon

### ■ Control icon screen

Press **OPTION** if no icons are shown while watching a DVD video, and the following screen appears.

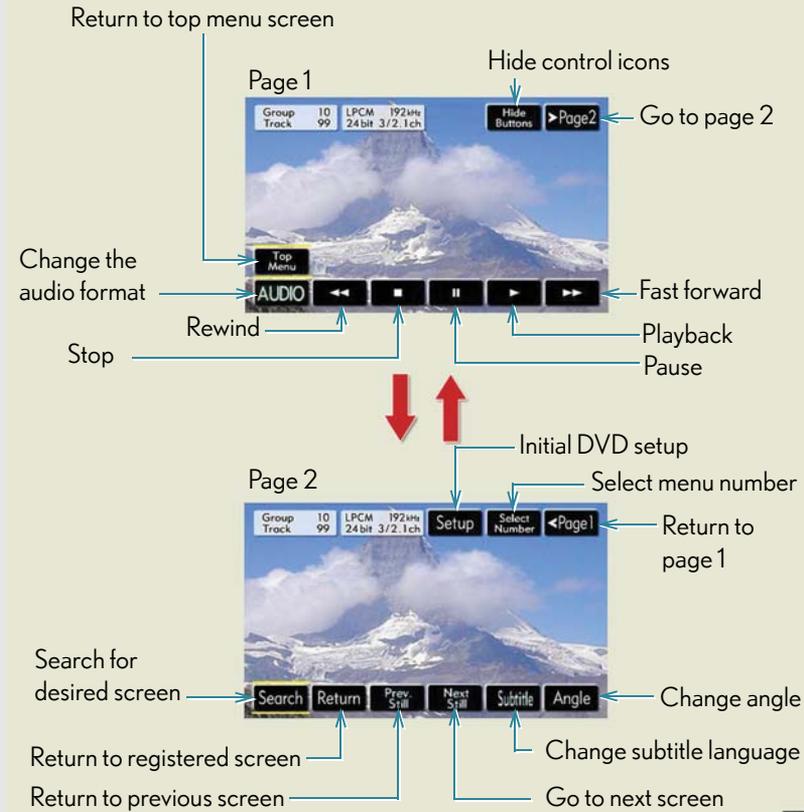
#### ▶ DVD video mode



ILY34X044U

If  appears on the screen when you select an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

## ▶ DVD audio mode



If  appears on the screen when you select an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

### Turning on or off the control icons

Press  to turn on the control icons.

Press  once again or select  to turn off the control icon.

### Turning on the title selection screen

Press  or select  to turn on the title selection screen. For the operation of the title selection screen, see the separate manual for the DVD disc.

### Turning on the menu screen (DVD video mode only)

Press  or select  to turn on the menu screen. For the operation of the menu screen, see the separate manual for the DVD disc.

### Fast forwarding/rewinding a disc

Perform either of the following:

● Select  or  on the screen by pressing and holding .

● Press and hold  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on .

### Slow playback

Select  and then select . Video is played slowly when you select  by pressing and holding .

## Returning to the previous screen

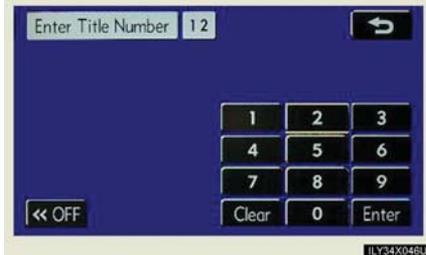
Select **Return** to return to the previous screen. For the operation of the menu screen, see the separate manual for the DVD disc.

## Searching for a desired screen

### ■ Searching by title (DVD video mode)

**STEP 1** Select **Search** on the control icon screen.

**STEP 2**



Input the desired title number and then select **Enter**.

**Clear**: deletes the last input number

**<< OFF**: hides the icons. To display the icons, select **>> ON**.

**↶**: returns to the previous screen

### ■ Searching by group (DVD audio mode)

**STEP 1** Select **Search** on the control icon screen.

**STEP 2**



Input the group number and then select **Enter**.

**Clear**: deletes the last input number

**<< OFF**: hides the icons. To display the icons, select **>> ON**.

**↶**: returns to the previous screen

■ **Playing a bonus group (DVD audio mode only, if the DVD has bonus options)**

**STEP 1** Select **Search** on the control icon screen.

**STEP 2**



Input the desired bonus group number on the group search screen and select **Enter**.

 : deletes the number

 : returns to the previous screen

■ **Searching by chapter/track**

Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  to select a chapter/track.

■ **Selecting a menu number (DVD audio mode only)**

**STEP 1** Select **Select Number** on the control icon screen.

**STEP 2**



Input the desired menu number on the screen and select **Enter**.

## Changing the subtitle language

**STEP 1** Press **SUB TITLE** or select **Subtitle** on the control icon screen.

**STEP 2**



Select **Subtitle**.

Each time you press **ENT**, the next available language is selected.

**Hide** : hides the control icons

**←** : returns to the previous screen

## Changing the audio language (DVD video only)

**STEP 1** Press **AUDIO** or select **Audio** on the control icon screen.

**STEP 2**



Select **AUDIO**.

Each time you press **ENT**, the next available language is selected.

**←** : returns to the previous screen

### Changing the audio format (DVD audio only)

**STEP 1** Press **AUDIO** or select **AUDIO** on the control icon screen.

**STEP 2**



Select **Audio**.

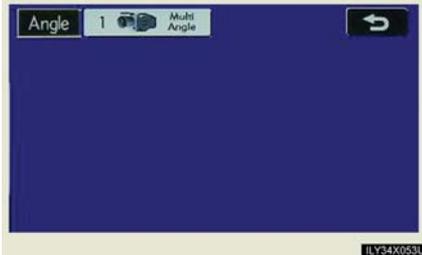
Each time you press **ENT**, the next available audio format is selected.

**↩**: returns to the previous screen

### Changing the angle (If the angle option is available)

**STEP 1** Select **Angle** on the control icon screen.

**STEP 2**



Select **Angle**.

Each time you press **ENT**, the next available angle is selected.

**↩**: returns to the previous screen

## Initial DVD setup

### ■ Displaying “Setup Menu” screen

**STEP 1** Select **Setup** on the control icon screen.



After you change the initial settings, select **Enter**.

**Default**: restores default settings

### ■ Setting audio language

**STEP 1** Select **Audio Language** on the “Setup Menu” screen.

**STEP 2** Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, select **Other** and input the desired language code. (→P. 435)

**↶**: returns to the previous screen

### ■ Setting subtitle language

**STEP 1** Select **Subtitle Language** on the “Setup Menu” screen.

**STEP 2** Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, select **Other** and input the desired language code. (→P. 435)

**↶**: returns to the previous screen

### ■ Setting menu language

**STEP 1** Select **DVD Language** on the “Setup Menu” screen.

**STEP 2** Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, select **Other** and input the desired language code. (→P. 435)

**↶**: returns to the previous screen

### ■ Setting angle mark “ON” or “OFF”

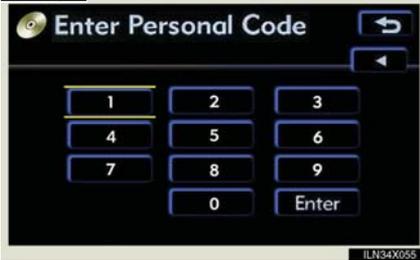
If the DVD has angle options, you can turn the angle mark on or off.

Select **Angle Mark** on the “Setup Menu” screen. Each time you press , the multi angle mark on the screen turns on or off alternately.

### ■ Parental lock

**STEP 1** Select **Parental Lock** on the “Setup Menu” screen.

**STEP 2**



Input the 4-digit password and then select **Enter**.

If you enter wrong numbers, select  to delete the numbers.

Select  10 times to initialize the personal code.

**STEP 3** Select a parental level (1 - 8). (→P. 375)

: returns to the previous screen

### ■ Entering a language code

If you select **Other** on the “Select Audio Language” screen, “Select Subtitle Language” screen or “DVD Language” screen, you can select a language by entering the 4-digit language code if that language is available.



Input the 4-digit language code and then select **Enter**.

: deletes the last input digit

: returns to the previous screen

## ● Language codes

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
0514	English	0207	Bulgarian	0712	Galician
0618	French	0208	Bihari	0714	Guarani
0405	German	0209	Bislama	0721	Gujarati
0920	Italian	0214	Bengali	0801	Hausa
0519	Spanish	0215	Tibetan	0809	Hindi
2608	Chinese	0218	Breton	0818	Croatian
1412	Dutch	0301	Catalan	0821	Hungarian
1620	Portuguese	0315	Corsican	0825	Armenian
1922	Swedish	0319	Czech	0901	Interlingua
1821	Russian	0325	Welsh	0905	Interlingue
1115	Korean	0401	Danish	0911	Inupiak
0512	Greek	0426	Bhutani	0914	Indonesian
0101	Afar	0515	Esperanto	0919	Icelandic
0102	Abkhazian	0520	Estonian	0923	Hebrew
0106	Afrikaans	0521	Basque	1001	Japanese
0113	Amharic	0601	Persian	1009	Yiddish
0118	Arabic	0609	Finnish	1023	Javanese
0119	Assamese	0610	Fiji	1101	Georgian
0125	Aymara	0615	Faroese	1111	Kazakh
0126	Azerbaijani	0625	Frisian	1112	Greenlandic
0201	Bashkir	0701	Irish	1113	Cambodian
0205	Byelorussian	0704	Scots-Gaelic	1114	Kannada

### 3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
1119	Kashmiri	1415	Norwegian	1914	Shona
1121	Kurdish	1503	Occitan	1915	Somali
1125	Kirghiz	1513	(Afan) Oromo	1917	Albanian
1201	Latin	1518	Oriya	1918	Serbian
1214	Lingala	1601	Panjabi	1919	Siswati
1215	Laothian	1612	Polish	1920	Sesotho
1220	Lithuanian	1619	Pashto, Pushto	1921	Sundanese
1222	Latvian	1721	Quechua	1923	Swahili
1307	Malagasy	1813	Rhaeto- Romance	2001	Tamil
1309	Maori	1814	Kirundi	2005	Telugu
1311	Macedonian	1815	Romanian	2007	Tajik
1312	Malayalam	1823	Kinyarwanda	2008	Thai
1314	Mongolian	1901	Sanskrit	2009	Tigrinya
1315	Moldavian	1904	Sindhi	2011	Turkmen
1318	Marathi	1907	Sangho	2012	Tagalog
1319	Malay	1908	Serbo- Croatian	2014	Setswana
1320	Maltese	1909	Sinhalese	2015	Tonga
1325	Burmese	1911	Slovak	2018	Turkish
1401	Nauru	1912	Slovenian	2019	Tsonga
1405	Nepali	1913	Samoan	2020	Tatar

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
2023	Twi	2209	Vietnamese	2515	Yoruba
2111	Ukrainian	2215	Volapük	2621	Zulu
2118	Urdu	2315	Wolof		
2126	Uzbek	2408	Xhosa		

### ■ Error messages

If “Region Code Error” is displayed, check if the region code printed on the DVD matches the player’s region code.

If a different message is displayed: →P. 372

## 3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

### Playing a video CD

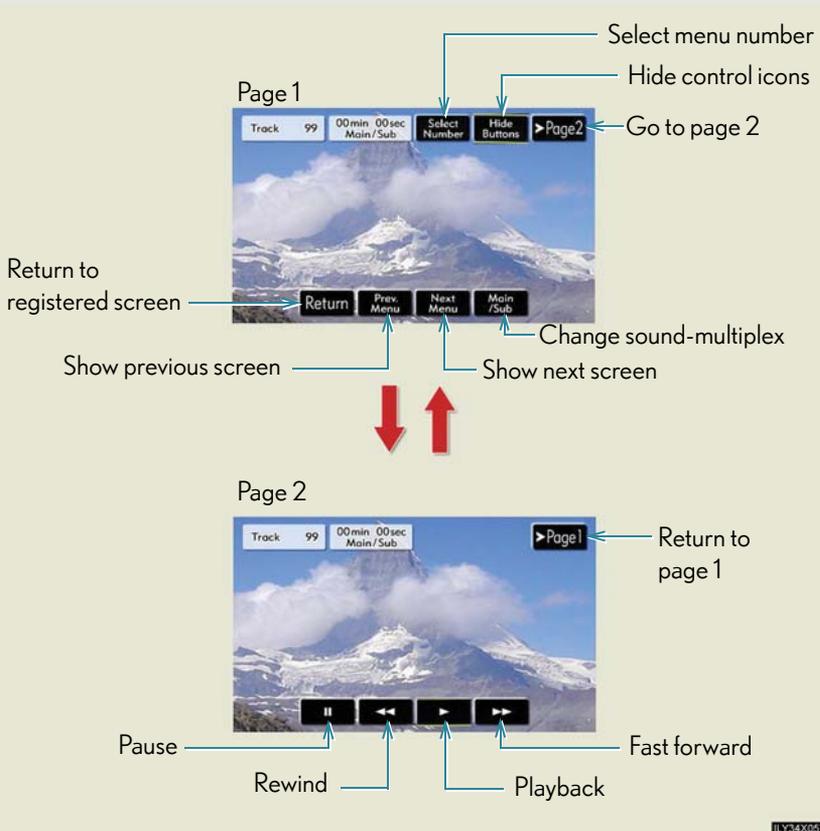
#### ■ Controller



- 1 Selecting a track
- 2 Rewinding a disc
- 3 Turning on the control icon screen
- 4 Stopping a disc
- 5 Fast forwarding a disc
- 6 Playing/pausing a disc
- 7 Selecting an icon
- 8 Inputting the selected icon

### ■ Control icon screen

Press **OPTION** if no icons are shown while watching a video CD, and the following screen appears.



If  appears on the screen when you select an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

### Fast forwarding/rewinding the video CD

Perform either of the following:

● Select  or  on the screen by pressing and holding .

● Press and hold  or  on



### Slow playback

Select  and then select . Video is played slowly when you select  by pressing and holding .

### Using the video CD menu

Select .

Refer to the manual that comes with the video CD for specific menu items.

## Selecting a desired screen

### ■ Selecting a menu number

**STEP 1** Select **Select Number** on the control icon screen.

**STEP 2**



Input the desired menu number on the screen and select **Enter**.

### ■ Searching manually

Select **Prev. Menu** or **Next Menu** on the screen, or press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  on  until the desired screen appears.

## Changing the sound-multiplex mode

Select **Main/Sub** on the control icon screen. The mode cycles through each time the  is pressed.

“Main” → “Sub” → “Main/Sub”



### 3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

## DVD player and DVD video disc information

- **Error messages**

→P. 372

- **DVD video discs**

→P. 373

---

- **Symbols shown on DVD video discs**

→P. 373

- **Discs that can be used**

→P. 374

- **DVD video disc information**

→P. 374

- **Sound**

→P. 376

- **MP3 and WMA files**

→P. 376

 **CAUTION****■ DVD video precaution**

→P. 379

 **NOTICE****■ Discs and adapters that cannot be used**

→P. 380

**■ Player precautions**

Failure to follow the precautions below may result in damage to the discs or the player itself.

- Do not insert anything other than discs into the disc slot.
- Do not apply oil to the player.
- Store discs away from direct sunlight.
- Never try to disassemble any part of the player.

### 3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

## Using the video mode



Press **VIDEO** to select the video mode.

Before switching to the video mode, connect the audio-video equipment to the A/V input adapter.

## Using the adapter



Open the cover.

The A/V input adapter is composed of 3 input adapters.

Yellow: Image input adapter

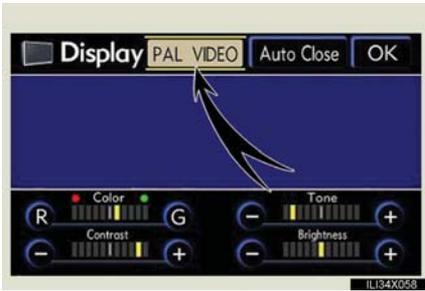
White: Left channel audio input adapter

Red: Right channel audio input adapter

## Changing to PAL format



Press **DISPLAY**.



If the video does not appear, turn **PAL VIDEO** on.

**PAL VIDEO** will be displayed when PAL format equipment is connected to the A/V input adapter.

3

Interior features

### ■ A/V input adapter

The rear seat entertainment system plays videos and sound when audio-video equipment is connected to the A/V input adapter. For details, refer to the manufacturer's instructions.

### ■ Power outlet

The power outlet is used to connect the audio-video equipment. (→P. 514)

### ⚠ NOTICE

#### ■ When the A/V input adapter is not in use

Keep the A/V input adapter cover closed.

Inserting anything other than an appropriate plug may cause electrical failure or a short circuit.

## 3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

### Changing other settings

#### Setting the display mode



Pressing **SIZE** changes the display modes sequentially as follows:

Normal → Wide 1 → Wide 2



#### Adjusting the screen



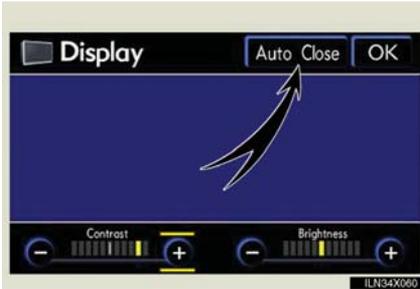
Press **DISPLAY**.

Select the brightness, contrast, tone or color, and make adjustments.

Press **DISPLAY** or **ENT** to input it.

	<b>R</b>	<b>G</b>
"Color"	Red	Green
	<b>-</b>	<b>+</b>
"Tone"	Lighter	Darker
"Contrast"	Weaker	Stronger
"Brightness"	Darker	Brighter

## Automatic closing of the rear display



Press **DISPLAY**.

If **Auto Close** is on, the display will automatically close when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to OFF mode.

The display will automatically open when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

## Displaying the map screen (with navigation system)



Press **MAP**.

The map screen will appear.

### 3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

#### Hands-free system (for cellular phone) (without navigation system)

The hands-free system is a function that allows you to use your mobile phone without touching it.

This system supports Bluetooth® mobile phones. Bluetooth® is a wireless data system that allows the mobile phone to wirelessly connect to the hands-free system and outgoing/incoming calls.

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

#### ■ Telephone switch



- 1 Sending/Receiving/“Telephone” screen display (when stopped)
- 2 End call

#### ■ Microphone



The person you are speaking to can be heard from the driver’s side speaker.

To use the hands-free system, you must register your Bluetooth® phone in the system. (→P. 453)

## Status display

You can check such indicators as signal strength and battery charge on the “Telephone” screen.



- 1 Connection status
- 2 Battery charge
- 3 Call area
- 4 Signal strength

Indicators	Conditions
Connection status	Blue: Good Yellow: Bad  : Not connected
Battery charge	 : Full  : Low  : Empty
Call area	“Rm”: Roaming area “Hm”: Home area
Signal strength	 : Good  : Bad  : Not connected

### ■ When using the hands-free system

- The audio system and voice guidance are muted when making a call.
- If both parties speak at the same time, it may be difficult to hear.
- If the incoming call volume is overly loud, an echo may be heard.
- Try to face toward the microphone as much as possible when speaking.
- In the following circumstances, it may be difficult to hear the other party:
  - When driving on unpaved roads
  - When driving at high speeds
  - If a window is open
  - If the air conditioning is blowing directly on the microphone
  - If the air conditioning is set to high

### ■ Conditions under which the system will not operate

- If using a mobile phone that does not support Bluetooth<sup>®</sup>
- If the mobile phone is switched off
- If you are outside service range
- If the mobile phone is not connected
- If the mobile phone's battery is low

### ■ Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> antenna

The antenna is built into the display. If the mobile phone is behind the seat or in the console box, or touching or covered by metal objects, connection status may deteriorate.

### ■ Battery charge/Signal status

This display may not correspond exactly with the mobile phone itself.

### ■ About Bluetooth®



Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

### ■ Compatible models

Compatible with HFP (Hands Free Profile) Ver. 1.0 and OPP (Object Push Profile) Ver. 1.1.

If your cellular phone does not support HFP, you cannot enter the Bluetooth® phone. If your cellular phone supports OPP alone, you cannot use the Bluetooth® phone.

### ■ Certification for the hands-free system

FCC ID: BABBT016A
IC: 2024B-BT016A
MADE IN JAPAN

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and RSS-Gen of IC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

 **CAUTION**

■ **FCC WARNING**

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**Radio Frequency Exposure.** This equipment complies with FCC/IC radiation exposure limits set forth for uncontrolled equipment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65 and RSS-102 of the IC radio frequency (RF) Exposure rules. This equipment has very low levels of RF energy that it deemed to comply without maximum permissive exposure evaluation (MPE). But it is desirable that it should be installed and operated with at least 7.9 in. (20 cm) and more between the radiator and person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).

This transmitter must not be co-located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

■ **Caution while driving**

Do not use the mobile phone or connect the Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> system.

 **NOTICE**

■ **When leaving the vehicle**

Do not leave your mobile phone in the vehicle. The inside of the vehicle may become hot, causing damage to the phone.

### 3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone) Using a Bluetooth® phone

Bluetooth® connection status

Character deletion

Display last person called

Make a call

To display the screen shown above, press , and touch  on the “Information” screen.

#### Registering a Bluetooth® phone

You can register up to 6 phones in the system.

**STEP 1** Press .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

### 3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)



Touch .



Touch .



Input the passkey displayed on the screen into your phone.

If the message "Bluetooth\* connection successful" is displayed, registration is complete.

If the message "Bluetooth\* connection failed. Please check the "Passkey" and the settings of the telephone" is displayed, start again from the beginning.

\*:Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

## Bluetooth® phone connection

There are two connection methods available—automatic and manual.

**STEP 1** Press  .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Choose one of the following methods:



### 1 Automatic connection

If the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system will automatically connect to the Bluetooth® phone. Touching “Auto Connect” will turn it on/off.

### 2 Manual connection

If automatic connection fails or is turned off, connection must be made manually.

If the message “Bluetooth\* connection successful” is displayed, connection is complete.

\*:Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

## ■ Reconnecting to the Bluetooth® phone

If the system cannot connect due to poor signal strength with the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system will automatically attempt to reconnect.

If the phone is turned off, the system will not attempt to reconnect. In this case, connection must be made manually, or the phone must be re-selected.

## Making a call

Once the Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> phone is registered, you can make a call using the following procedure:

### ■ Dialing

**STEP 1** Press .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.



Input the phone number.

To delete the inputted phone number, touch .

To dial the last inputted phone number, touch .

**STEP 4** Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

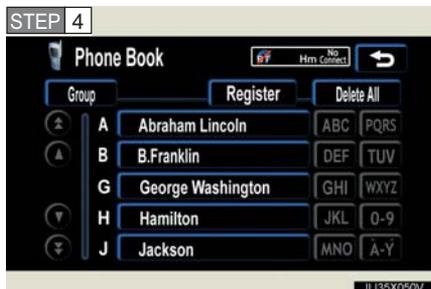
## ■ Dialing from the phone book

You can dial a number from the phone book data imported from your mobile phone. Up to 1000 entries may be stored in the phone book. (→P. 478)

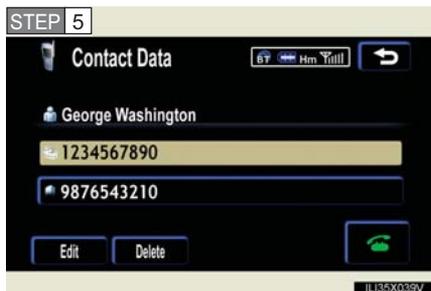
**STEP 1** Press .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.



Choose the desired name to call from the list.



Choose the number and then touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

### ■ Dialing from history

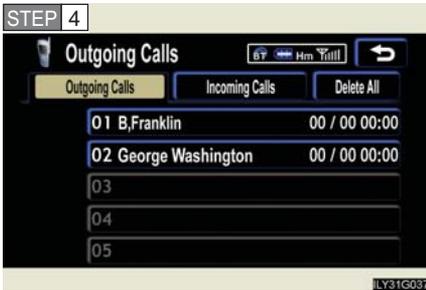
You can make a call from past dialed numbers or incoming calls.

Up to 5 numbers are stored, with the last recent number being deleted to make room for a new number.

**STEP 1** Press .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the "Information" screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the "Telephone" screen.



Choose the number to call from the list.

To choose a number from the incoming call history, touch  and choose a number to call.



Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

### ■ Calling using speed dial

You can make a call using numbers registered from the phone book and call history. (→P. 471)

**STEP 1** Press .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4**

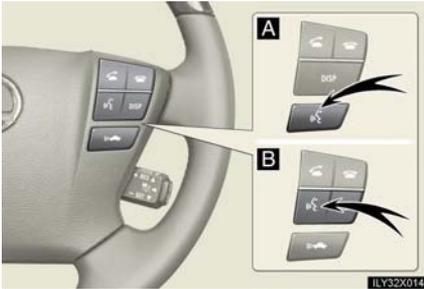


Choose the desired number to make a call.

To change the page, touch  or .

### ■ Calling using voice recognition

Using voice recognition, you can call by name from the “Phone Book” screen, call by number from the “Telephone” screen, and send tones from the “Call” screen. (→P. 465)

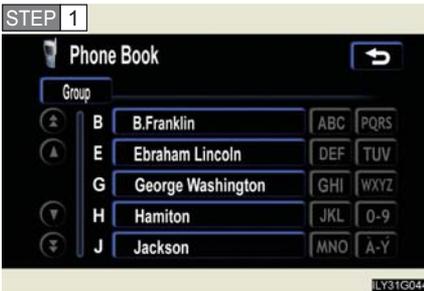


Talk switch

**A** Without dynamic radar cruise control

**B** With dynamic radar cruise control

### ● Calling by name from the “Phone Book” screen



Press  or .

**STEP 2** Following the system guidance, wait until a beep and then say the desired name.

If there are multiple entries for the same name, **Next** will be displayed.

To select the next candidate, touch **Next** or say “Next candidate”.

**STEP 3** Following the system guidance, press  or .

**STEP 4** Following the system guidance, wait until the beep and then say “Dial”.

● Calling by number from the “Telephone” screen



Press  or .

**STEP 2** Following the system guidance, wait until a beep and then say the desired number.

**STEP 3** Following the system guidance, press  or .

**STEP 4** Following the system guidance, wait until a beep and then say “Dial”.

● Sending tones from the “Call” screen



Press  or .

**STEP 2** Following the system guidance, wait until a beep and then say the desired number.

**STEP 3** Following the system guidance, press  or .

**STEP 4** Following the system guidance, wait until a beep and then say “Yes”.

#### ■ Outgoing/incoming call history list

- If you make a call to or receive a call from a number registered in the phone book, the name is displayed in the call history.
- If you make multiple calls to the same number, only the last call made is displayed in the incoming call history.
-  is displayed to the left of the phone number for unanswered calls.
-  is displayed to the left of the phone number for refused calls.
- Calls where the number is unavailable, such as public telephones, are not stored in the call history.

#### ■ When driving

- The functions “Dialing”, “Dialing from the phone book”, and “Dialing from history” are unavailable.
- If you press  on the steering wheel, the “Speed Dial” screen is displayed. At this time, phone numbers will not be displayed. Choose from the names displayed to make a call.

#### ■ International calls

You may not be able to make international calls, depending on the mobile phone in use.

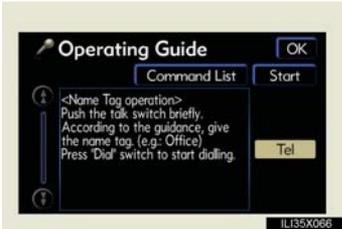
#### ■ To display the voice recognition command list



**STEP 1** After pressing  or , touch . If the “Operating Guide” screen is displayed, touch .

**STEP 2** Touch .

### ■ To display the voice recognition operating guide



**STEP 1** After pressing  or , touch . If the “Command List” screen is displayed, touch .

**STEP 2** Touch .

### ■ To cancel voice recognition

- Press and hold  or .
- Press  on the steering wheel.
- Touch . (excluding command verification)

### ■ When using voice recognition

Use correct commands and speak clearly, otherwise the system may not correctly recognize the command. Wind or other noises may also cause the system not to recognize the desired command.

## Receiving a call

When a call is received, the following screen is displayed together with a sound.



Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

### ■ To refuse a call

Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

### ■ To adjust the incoming call volume

Touch  or . You can also adjust the volume using the steering switches.

---

### ■ International calls

Received international calls may not be displayed correctly, depending on the mobile phone in use.

## Speaking on the phone

The following screen is displayed when speaking on the phone.



### ■ To adjust the incoming call volume

Touch  or . You can also adjust the volume using the steering switches.

### ■ To prevent the other party from hearing your voice

Touch .

### 3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

#### ■ Inputting key tones

When using phone services such as an answering service or a bank, you can store phone numbers and code numbers in the phone book.

**STEP 1** Touch **0-9**.



Input the number.

If repeated tone symbols\* are stored in the phone book, **Send** and **Exit** are displayed on the right side of the screen.

\*:Repeated tone symbols are symbols or numbers displayed as p or w, that come after the phone number.  
(e.g. 056133p0123w#1)

**STEP 3** Confirm the number displayed on the screen, and touch **Send**.

If you touch **Exit**, this function will finish.

#### ■ To transfer a call

Touch **Transfer Call**.

#### ■ To hang up

Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

---

■ **Transferring calls**

- It is not possible to transfer from hands-free to the mobile phone while driving.
- If you transfer from the mobile phone to hands-free, the hands-free screen will be displayed, and you can operate the system using the screen.
- Transfer method and operation may vary according to the mobile phone used.
- For operation of the mobile phone in use, see the phone's manual.

■ **To send a tone by speed tone**

Touch  and touch . Choose the desired number from the speed tone list displayed.

■ **While driving**

Key input is unavailable.

### 3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

## Setting the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

You can speed dial, register in and edit the phone book data, and set the Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> phone.



ILY31G042

To display the screen shown above, press , touch  on the "Information" screen, and touch  on the "Telephone" screen.

## Registering/Deleting a speed dial item

### ■ Registering a speed dial item

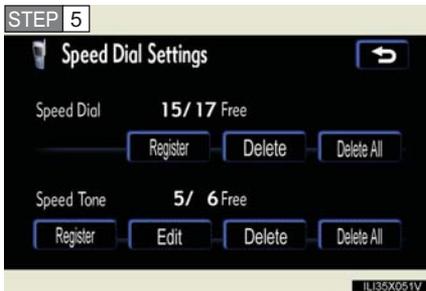
You can register a number from the phone book or the call history. Up to 17 entries may be stored.

**STEP 1** Press .

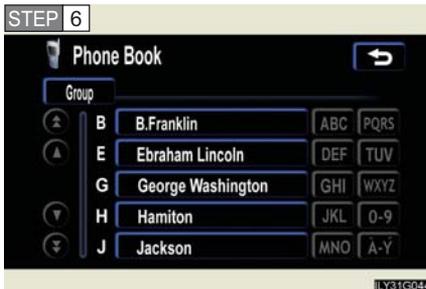
**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  on the “Settings” screen.



Touch  in the “Speed Dial” section of the “Speed Dial Settings” screen.

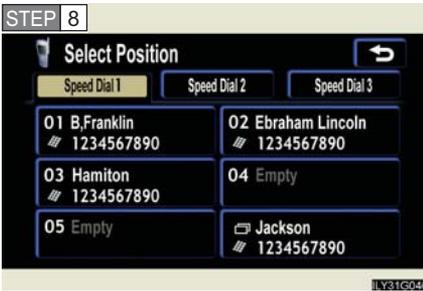


Select the data to be registered.

### 3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)



Select the number to be registered.



Touch the desired switch.

The last dialed number will be registered in position 6.

#### ■ Deleting a speed dial item

**STEP 1** Press .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the "Information" screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the "Telephone" screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  on the "Settings" screen.

**STEP 5** Touch  in the "Speed Dial" section of the "Speed Dial Settings" screen.

**STEP 6** Select the data to be deleted, and a confirmation message will be displayed.

**STEP 7** If everything is correct, touch .

### ■ To delete all speed dial items

Follow the steps for “Deleting a speed dial item” until “STEP 5”. In the “Speed Dial” section of the “Speed Dial Settings” screen, touch **Delete All**. A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch **Yes**.

## Registering/Editing/Deleting a speed tone

### ■ Registering a speed tone

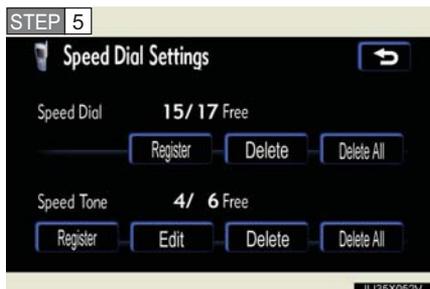
You can register up to 6 items.

**STEP 1** Press **INFO**.

**STEP 2** Touch **Telephone** on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch **Settings** on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Touch **Speed Dial** on the “Settings” screen.



Touch **Register** in the “Speed Tone” section.



Input the desired name and touch **OK**.

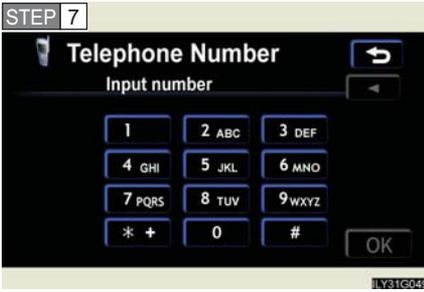
**A-Z**, **À-Ý**: Letter input

**0-9**: Number/Symbol input

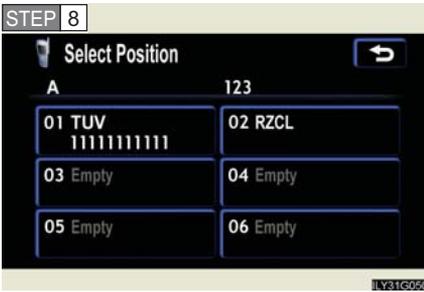
**Space**: Space

**←**: Backspace

### 3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)



Input the number and touch **OK**.



Touch the desired switch.

#### ■ Editing a speed tone

**STEP 1** Press **INFO**.

**STEP 2** Touch **Telephone** on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch **Settings** on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Touch **Speed Dial** on the “Settings” screen.

**STEP 5** Touch **Edit** in the “Speed Tone” section of the “Speed Dial Settings” screen.



Touch the switch to be edited.

**STEP 7** Input the name and touch **OK**.

**STEP 8** Input the number and touch **OK**.

### ■ Deleting a speed tone

**STEP 1** Press **INFO**.

**STEP 2** Touch  on the "Information" screen.

**STEP 3** Touch **Settings** on the "Telephone" screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  on the "Settings" screen.

**STEP 5** Touch **Delete** in the "Speed Tone" section of the "Speed Dial Settings" screen.

**STEP 6** Choose the data to delete, and a confirmation message will be displayed.

**STEP 7** If everything is correct, touch **Yes**.

### ■ To delete all speed tone data

Follow the steps for "Deleting a speed tone" until "STEP 5". In the "Speed Tone" section, touch **Delete All**. A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch **Yes**.

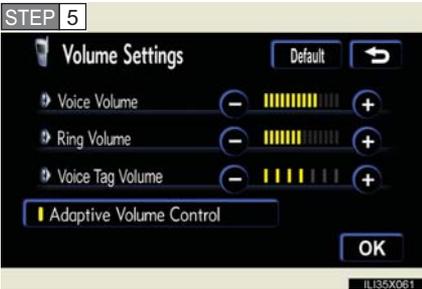
## Setting the volume

**STEP 1** Press .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  on the “Settings” screen.



Touch  or  to lower or raise the volume.

Voice volume: changes the speaker volume

Ring volume: changes the ring volume

Voice tag volume: changes the voice tag volume

### Adaptive volume control

When traveling at 50 mph (80 km/h) or more, the system automatically raises the volume one level.

If the vehicle speed drops to 43 mph (70 km/h), the volume will return to its original level.

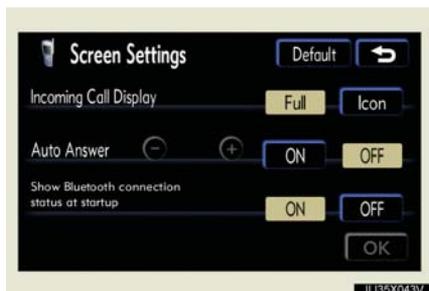
You can turn this function on/off by touching .

### To return to the default volume settings

Touch , and then .

## Changing the screen settings

The following settings can be changed:



- “Incoming Call Display”

The incoming call screen settings can be changed.

- “Auto Answer”

When a call is received, the system automatically switches to the talking screen after the set period of time, meaning you can speak without pressing anything.

- “Show Bluetooth\* connection status at startup”

You can set the system to show the status confirmation display when connecting.

\*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

### ■ “Incoming Call Display” settings

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Touch  on the “Information” screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

STEP 4 Touch  on the “Settings” screen.

STEP 5 Select the desired switch.

 **Full** : The hands-free screen is displayed when a call is received, and you can operate the system from that screen.

 **Icon** : A message is displayed at the top of the screen, and you can only operate the system with the steering switches.

### ■ “Auto Answer” settings

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Touch  on the “Information” screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

STEP 4 Touch  on the “Settings” screen.

STEP 5 Touch  in the “Auto Answer” section of the “Screen Settings” screen.

STEP 6 Set the wait time using  and . (1 - 60 seconds)

### ■ “Show Bluetooth\* connection status at startup” settings

**STEP 1** Press  .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  on the “Settings” screen.

**STEP 5** Touch  /  in the “Show Bluetooth\* connection status at startup” section of the “Screen Settings” screen.

\*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

---

### ■ To set the screen settings to default

Touch  , and then  .

## Phone book settings

Up to 1000 names, 2 items per name, can be registered.

### ■ Transferring mobile phone data

**STEP 1** Press .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the "Information" screen.

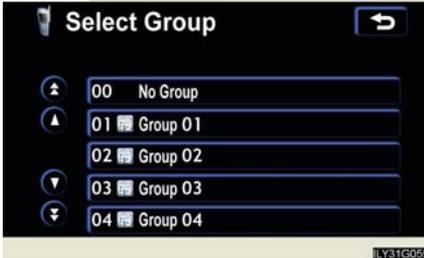
**STEP 3** Touch  on the "Telephone" screen.

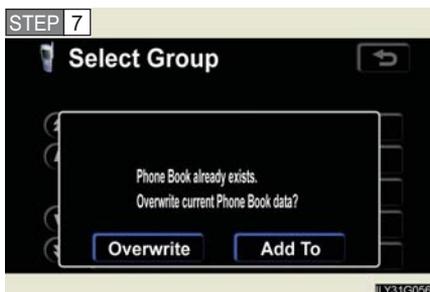
**STEP 4** Touch  on the "Settings" screen.

**STEP 5** Touch .



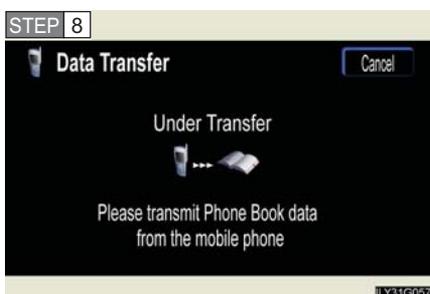
**STEP 6** Select the group to transfer to.





To overwrite data, touch **Overwrite**.

To add to existing data, touch **Add To**.



Transfer will begin. If you wish to cancel the transfer before it is finished, touch **Cancel**.

Transfer is complete when "Transfer completed" is displayed.

If "Transfer failed" is displayed, restart the process from the beginning.

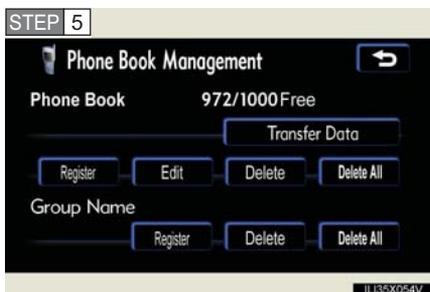
## ■ Registering by input

**STEP 1** Press **INFO**.

**STEP 2** Touch **Telephone** on the "Information" screen.

**STEP 3** Touch **Settings** on the "Telephone" screen.

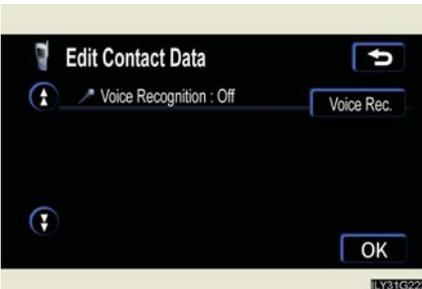
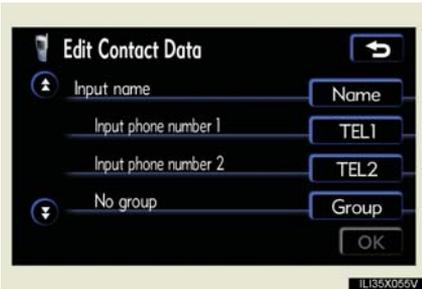
**STEP 4** Touch **Phone Book** on the "Settings" screen.



Touch **Register** in the "Phone Book" section.

### 3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

**STEP 6** Choose the switch to register.



**Name** : Input the name on the “Name” screen.

**TEL1** and **TEL2** :  
Input the number(s) on the “Telephone Number” screen. When you touch **OK**, the “Select Icon” screen will appear.  
Choose the desired icon.

- **Mobile phone1**
- **Mobile phone2**
- **Home**
- **Work**
- **Other**

**Group** : Select the desired group from the “Select Group” screen. (No Group, 01 - 09)

**Voice Rec.** : Select the desired phone number and touch **REC** to record a voice tag.  
To play the voice tag, touch **PLAY**. To delete the voice tag, touch **Delete**.

**STEP 7** Once input is complete, touch **OK**.

### ■ Adding call history data to a registered entry

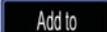
**STEP 1** Press .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Choose the desired number from the list.

To choose from the incoming call history, touch  and select the desired number.

**STEP 5** Touch .



**STEP 6** Choose the phone book entry to be added to.

**STEP 7** Check the data to be added, and touch .

### ■ Editing phone book data

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Touch  on the “Information” screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

STEP 4 Touch  on the “Settings” screen.

STEP 5 Touch  in the “Phone Book” section of the “Phone Book Management” screen.

STEP 6 Choose the data to edit.

STEP 7 Choose the switch to edit.

STEP 8 After editing, touch .

### ■ Deleting phone book data

STEP 1 Press .

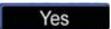
STEP 2 Touch  on the “Information” screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

STEP 4 Touch  on the “Settings” screen.

STEP 5 Touch  in the “Phone Book” section of the “Phone Book Management” screen.

STEP 6 Select the data to delete.

STEP 7 A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch .

### ■ To delete all data

Follow the steps for “Deleting phone book data” until “STEP 5”. In the “Phone Book” section of the “Phone Book Management” screen, touch . To delete all data within a group, touch , and select the group to delete. To delete all contact data, touch . Check that everything is correct, and touch .

### ■ Registering/Editing/Deleting from the phone book

You can register data in the phone book, edit registered data, and delete items.

**STEP 1** Press .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** To register data, touch  on the “Phone Book” screen.

To delete all data, touch .

To delete or edit specific data, select the data to delete/edit, and touch  to delete, or  to edit.

### ■ The phone book

The method for transferring phone book data from the phone to the system varies with phone model. See the phone’s manual.

## Changing the phone book group name settings

### ■ Registering a group name

**STEP 1** Press .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  on the “Settings” screen.

**STEP 5** Touch  in the “Group Name” section of the “Phone Book Management” screen.

**STEP 6** Select the group to register (“01” - “19”).



Select the switch to be edited.

**Icon** : The below screen will be displayed. Select the desired icon.

**Name** : Input the name on the “Name” screen.



**STEP 8** Once editing is complete, touch .

### ■ Deleting a group name

**STEP 1** Press .

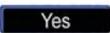
**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  on the “Settings” screen.

**STEP 5** Touch  in the “Group Name” section of the “Phone Book Management” screen.

**STEP 6** Select the group name to delete, and a confirmation message will be displayed.

**STEP 7** If everything is correct, touch .

### ■ To delete all data

Follow the steps for “Deleting phone book data” until “STEP 5”. In the “Phone Book” section of the “Phone Book Management” screen, touch . A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch .

## Deleting the history

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Touch  on the “Information” screen.

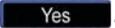
STEP 3 Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

STEP 4 Select the data to delete from the list.

To delete data from the incoming call history, touch , and select the data to delete.

STEP 5 Touch .



STEP 6 Check that everything is correct, and touch .

### To delete all data

Follow the steps for “Deleting a group name” until “STEP 4”. Touch  on the “Outgoing Calls” screen. To delete all incoming call history data, touch , and touch . Check that everything is correct, and touch .

## Changing the security settings

You can disable certain hands-free system functions. Use the security settings when you do not wish other people to see the registered data, for example when having the vehicle valet parked at a hotel.

To enable or disable security, the security code (4 digits) is required. The default code is "0000". Be sure to change the security code before use.

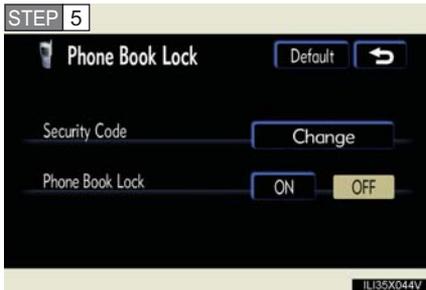
### ■ Changing the security code

**STEP 1** Press .

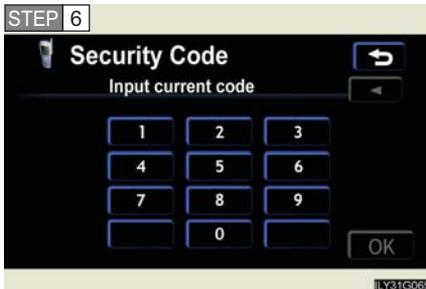
**STEP 2** Touch  on the "Information" screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the "Telephone" screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  on the "Settings" screen.



Touch  in the "Security Code" section.



Input the current security code, and touch .

### 3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

**STEP 7** Input the new security code, and touch **OK**. A confirmation message will appear.

**STEP 8** If everything is correct, touch **Yes**.

#### ■ Enabling security

**STEP 1** Press .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  on the “Settings” screen.

**STEP 5** Touch **ON** in the “Phone Book Lock” section of the “Phone Book Lock” screen.

**STEP 6** Input the security code, and touch **OK**.

#### ■ Setting the security code to default

**STEP 1** Press .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  on the “Settings” screen.

**STEP 5** Touch **Default** on the “Phone Book Lock” screen.

**STEP 6** Input the security code on the “Security Code” screen, and touch **OK**. A confirmation message will appear.

**STEP 7** If everything is correct, touch **Yes**.

**■ If “Phone Book Lock” is set**

If the security code is input and “Phone Book Lock” is set, the following functions are locked:

- Display of the phone book screen and transferring, registering, editing and deleting the phone book data
- Display of the speed dial screen, registering, deleting the speed dial and speed dialing
- Display of the other party’s name for calls being received or made
- Display of the dialed numbers screen and incoming call screen, deleting the dialed numbers and received numbers
- Display of the phone information screen
- Changing the security code

The speed dial screen is not displayed while driving.

**■ When changing the security code**

- Be sure to choose a number difficult for strangers to guess.
- Do not forget the security code. Even your Lexus dealer will be unable to disable the security. If you do forget the code, initialize all personal data. (→P. 311)

## Setting a Bluetooth® phone

### ■ Selecting a Bluetooth® phone

If multiple Bluetooth® phones are registered, follow the procedure below to select the Bluetooth® phone to be used. You may only use one phone at a time.

**STEP 1** Press  .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.



Touch  .



Select the phone to be used, and touch  .

If no phones are registered, “Empty” will be displayed.

If “Bluetooth\* connection successful” is displayed, registration was successful.

If another Bluetooth® phone is already connected, a confirmation message is displayed. Touch

 or  .

\*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

### ■ Displaying Bluetooth® information

You can check the device address and device name.

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Touch  on the “Information” screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

STEP 4 Touch  on the “Settings” screen.

STEP 5 On the “Select Telephone” screen, select the desired phone and touch .



To change the device name, touch  in the “Device Name” section, and input the name on the “Name” screen (max. 20 characters).

### ■ To change the Bluetooth® settings

You can change the device name and passkey.

STEP 1 Press .

STEP 2 Touch  on the “Information” screen.

STEP 3 Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

STEP 4 Touch  on the “Settings” screen.

### 3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)



To change the device name, touch **Change** in the “Device Name” section, and input the name on the “Name” screen (max. 20 characters).

To change the passkey, touch **Change** in the “Passkey” section, and input 4 - 8 digits on the “Passkey” screen.

#### ■ Setting the Bluetooth® settings to default

**STEP 1** Press **INFO**.

**STEP 2** Touch **Telephone** on the “Information” screen.

**STEP 3** Touch **Settings** on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Touch **Bluetooth** on the “Settings” screen.

**STEP 5** Touch **Default** on the “Bluetooth\* Settings” screen, and a confirmation message will be displayed.

**STEP 6** If everything is correct, touch **Yes**.

\*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

### ■ To delete the Bluetooth® settings

**STEP 1** Press .

**STEP 2** Touch  on the “Information” screen.

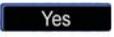
**STEP 3** Touch  on the “Telephone” screen.

**STEP 4** Touch  on the “Settings” screen.

**STEP 5** Touch  in the “Bluetooth\* Telephone” section of the “Bluetooth\* Settings” screen.

**STEP 6** On the “Delete Telephone” screen, select the phone to delete.

To check the device address, touch .

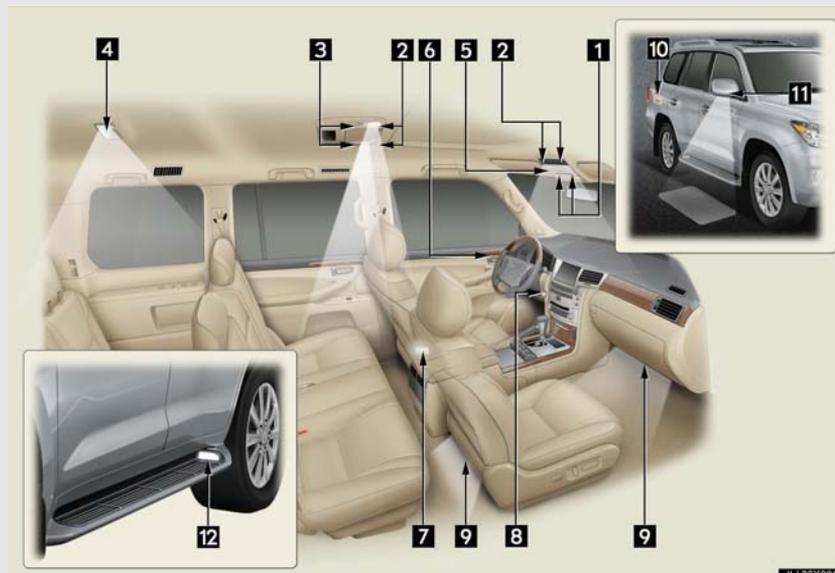
**STEP 7** If you touch , a confirmation message is displayed. If everything is correct, touch .

\*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

### 3-6. Using the interior lights

## Interior lights list

Your Lexus is equipped with the illuminated entry system to assist in entering the vehicle. Owing to the function of the system, the lights shown in the following illustration automatically turn on/off according to the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, whether the doors are opened/closed, and the “ENGINE START STOP” switch mode.



ILL36X001

- 1 Front personal lights (→P. 496)
- 2 Front interior lights (→P. 495)
- 3 Rear personal lights (→ P. 496)
- 4 Rear interior light (→P. 495)
- 5 Shift lever lighting (when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode)
- 6 Inside door handle light
- 7 Door courtesy lighting

- 8 "ENGINE START STOP" switch lighting
- 9 Footwell lighting
- 10 Luggage compartment light (→P. 497)
- 11 Outer foot lights
- 12 Running board lights

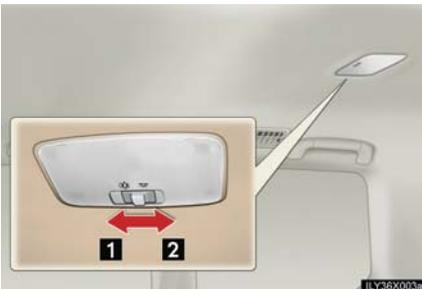
## Interior lights

### ► Front



- 1 "OFF"
- 2 Door position on/off
- 3 "ON"

### ► Rear



- 1 Door position
- 2 On

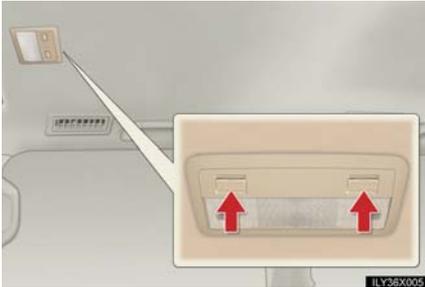
**Personal lights**

► Front



On/off

► Rear (without rear seat entertainment system)



On/off

► Rear (with rear seat entertainment system)



On/off

## Luggage compartment light



- 1 Door position
- 2 Off

### ■ To prevent the battery from being discharged

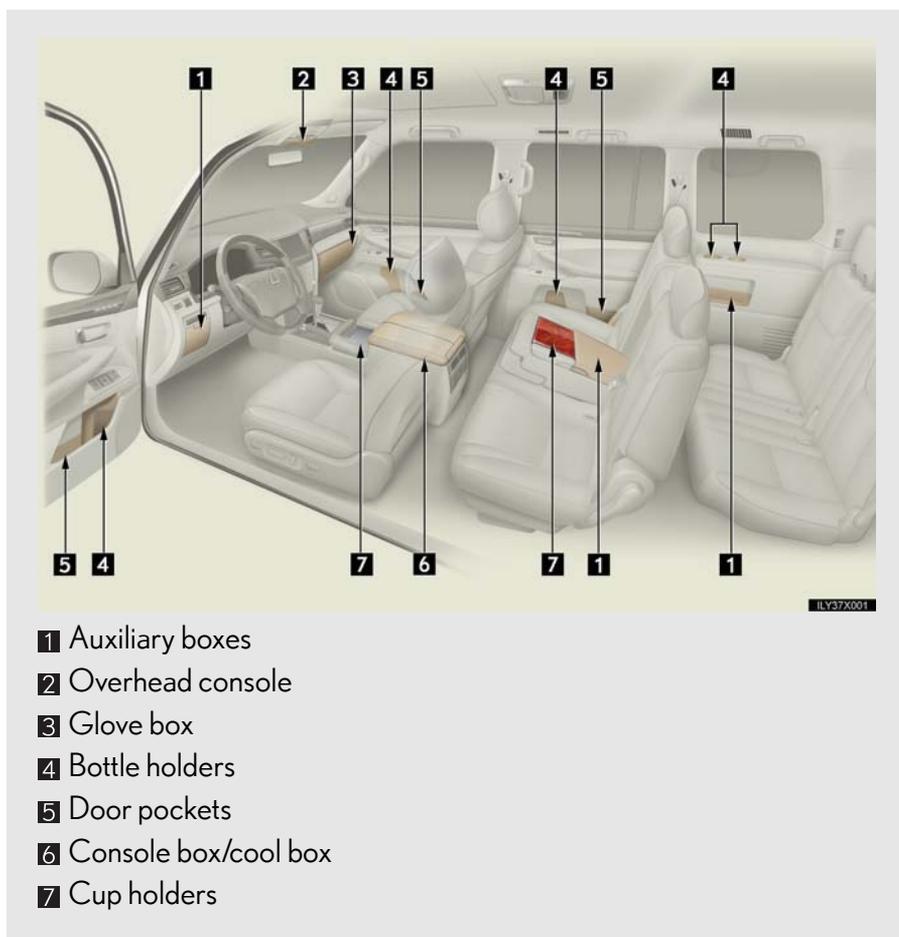
If the interior lights and “ENGINE START STOP” switch light remain on when the door is not fully closed and the interior light switch is in the “DOOR” position, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

### ■ Customization that can be configured at your Lexus dealer

Settings (e.g. The time elapsed before lights turn off) can be changed.  
(Customizable features →P. 709)

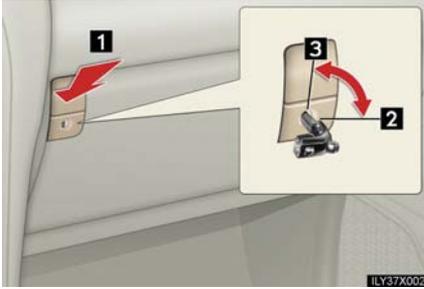
### 3-7. Using the storage features

## List of storage features



- 1 Auxiliary boxes
- 2 Overhead console
- 3 Glove box
- 4 Bottle holders
- 5 Door pockets
- 6 Console box/cool box
- 7 Cup holders

## Glove box



- 1 Open (push button)
- 2 Lock with the mechanical key
- 3 Unlock with the mechanical key

### ■ Glove box light

The glove box light turns on when the tail lights are on.

### ⚠ CAUTION

#### ■ While driving

Keep the glove box closed.  
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

**Console box/cool box (if equipped)**

Your vehicle is equipped with either a console box or cool box.

**► Console box**

Lift the lever to open.



Remove the tray.

► Cool box (if equipped)



Lift the lever to open.



On/off

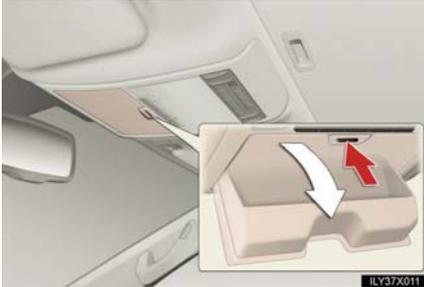
When on, the indicator light comes on and the front air conditioning system is activated. (The air conditioning system cannot be turned off.)

**CAUTION**

■ **While driving**

Keep the box closed.

Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

**Overhead console**

Press the button.

The overhead console is useful for temporarily storing small items.

**⚠ CAUTION****■ Items that should not be left in the overhead console**

Do not leave glasses or lighters in the console.

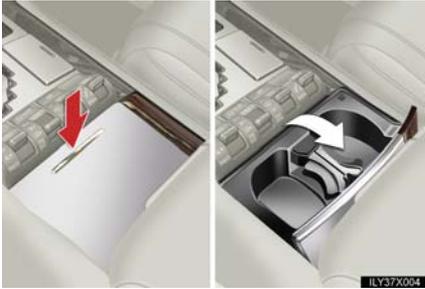
If the interior of the vehicle becomes hot, lighters may explode and glasses may warp or become cracked.

**■ While driving**

Do not leave the overhead console open. Items may fall out and cause injury.

## Cup holders

### ► Front



Press down and release the lid.

You can adjust or remove the separator inside.

### ► Rear



Pull the rear armrest down and press the button.

## ! CAUTION

### ■ Items unsuitable for the cup holder

Do not place anything other than cups or aluminum cans in the cup holders. Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

### ■ When not in use

Keep the cup holders closed. Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

## Bottle holders

► For front seats



► For second seats



► For third seats



 NOTICE

■ **Items that should not be stowed in the bottle holders**

Put the cap on before stowing a bottle. Do not place open bottles in the bottle holders, or glasses and paper cups containing liquid. The contents may spill and glasses may break.

## Auxiliary boxes

### ► For front seats



Press and release the lid.

### ► For second seats

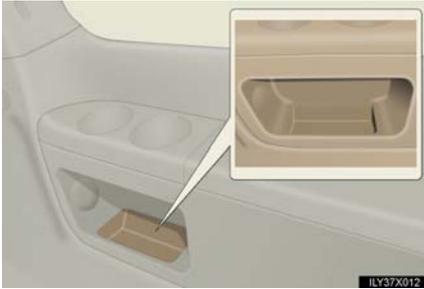


Pull down the armrest.



Press the button to release the lock.

► For third seats



**!** CAUTION

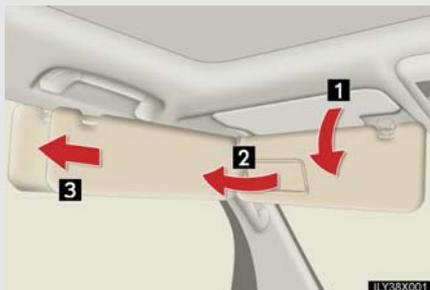
**■ Caution while driving**

Do not leave the auxiliary box open while driving. Items stored in it may fall out and cause death or serious injury in case of an accident or sudden stop.

## 3-8. Other interior features

### Sun visors

#### ► Main sun visor



- 1** Forward position:  
Flip down.
- 2** Side position:  
Flip down, unhook, and swing to the side.
- 3** Side extender:  
Place in side position, then slide backwards.

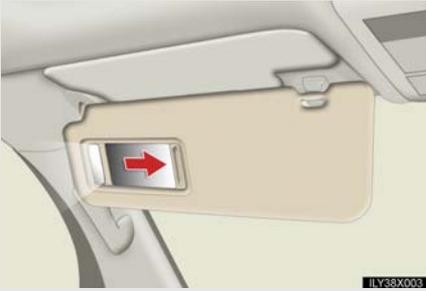
#### ► Sub-sun visor



Flip down with the main sun visor in position **2** or **3**.

### 3-8. Other interior features

## Vanity mirrors



Slide the cover.

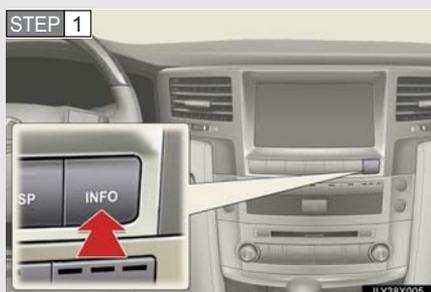
The light turns on when the cover is opened.

## 3-8. Other interior features

### Clock

The clock is displayed when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode. Perform the following procedure to adjust the clock:

► Without navigation system



Press  .

STEP 2 Touch  .



- 1 Adjusts the hour
  - 2 Adjusts the minutes
  - 3 Rounds to the nearest hour\*
  - 4 Turns daylight saving time on
  - 5 Turns daylight saving time off
- After setting, touch  .

\*: e.g. 1:00 to 1:29 → 1:00  
1:30 to 1:59 → 2:00

- ▶ With navigation system  
Refer to “Navigation System Owner’s Manual.”

---

■ **When the battery is disconnected**

The time display will automatically be set to 1:00.

## 3-8. Other interior features

### Ashtrays

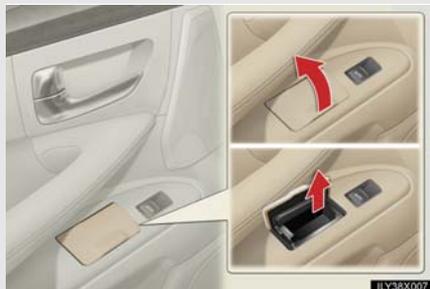
#### ▶ Front



Push the front part of the lid to open. Push the lid again to close.

To remove, pull the ashtray upwards

#### ▶ Rear



Pull the ashtray lid to open.

Pull the ashtray upwards to remove.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

##### ■ When not in use

Keep the ashtray closed.

Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

##### ■ To prevent fire

● Fully extinguish matches and cigarettes before putting them in the ashtray, then make sure the ashtray is fully closed.

● Do not place paper or any other type of flammable object in the ashtray.

### 3-8. Other interior features

## Cigarette lighters



Push the front part of the lid to open, and push the cigarette lighter down.

The cigarette lighter will pop up when it is ready for use.

#### ■ The cigarette lighter can be used when

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

##### ■ To avoid burns or fires

- Do not touch the metal parts of the cigarette lighter.
- Do not hold the cigarette lighter down. It could overheat and cause a fire.
- Do not insert anything other than the cigarette lighter into the outlet.

## 3-8. Other interior features

### Power outlets

The power outlet can be used for the following components:

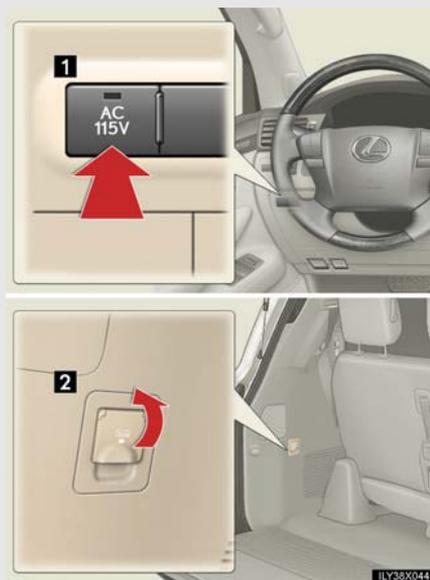
12V: Accessories that run on less than 10 A

115 V AC: Audio devices that use less than 100 W

#### ► Front (12V)



#### ► Rear (115V AC)



#### 1 Main switch

To use the power outlet, turn on the main switch.

#### 2 Power outlet socket

■ **The power outlet can be used when**

▶ **12 V**

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

▶ **115 V AC**

The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

 **NOTICE**

■ **To avoid damaging the power outlet**

Close the power outlet lid when the power outlet is not in use.

Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.

■ **To prevent the fuse from being blown**

▶ **12 V**

Do not use an accessory that uses more than 12 V 10 A.

▶ **115 V AC**

Do not use a 115 V AC appliance that requires more than 100 W.

If a 115 V AC appliance that consumes more than 100 W is used, the protection circuit will cut the power supply

■ **To prevent the battery from being discharged**

Do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the hybrid system is off.

■ **Appliances that may not operate properly (115 V AC)**

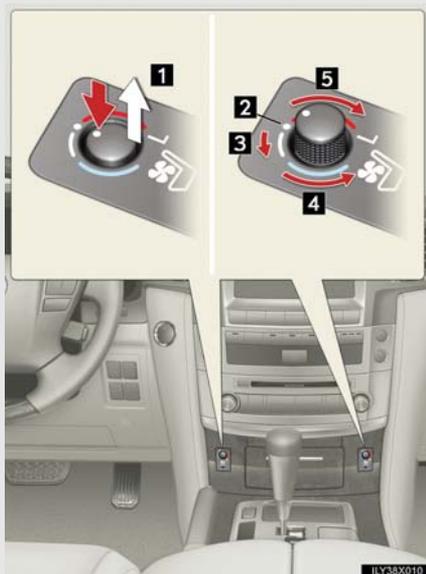
The following 115 V AC appliances may not operate properly even if their power consumption is under 100 W:

- Appliances with high initial peak wattage
- Measuring devices that process precise data
- Other appliances that require an extremely stable power supply

# Climate control seats/seat heaters

The temperature of the front seats can be adjusted individually.

### ■ Climate control seats (if equipped)



**1** Press the knob to release it, and turn the knob to the desired temperature setting.

**2** Off

Press the knob to lock it when not in use.

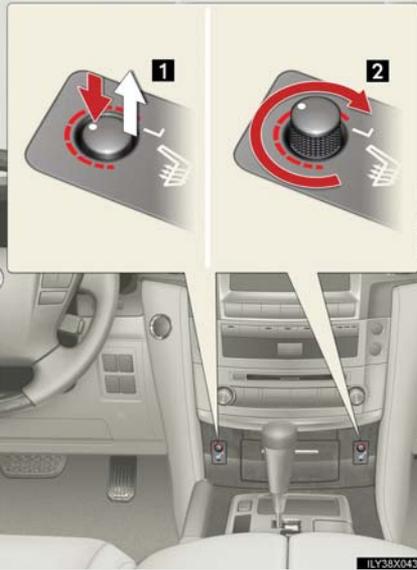
**3** Ventilation

**4** Cool air

**5** Warm air

## ■ Seat heaters

► For front seats (if equipped)



- 1 Press the knob to turn the system on.
- 2 Turn the knob to the desired temperature setting.

The further you turn the knob clockwise, the warmer the seat temperature becomes.

Press the knob again to turn the system off.

► For second seats (if equipped)



- 1 For left second seat
- 2 For right second seat
- 3 High heating temperature
- 4 Low heating temperature

To turn on the seat heater, press "HI" or "LO".

The indicator light on "HI" or "LO" switch indicates that the seat heater is on.

- 5 Off

To turn off, press "OFF".

### ■ The Climate control seats/seat heaters can be used when

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

### ■ Replacing the air filters (Climate control seats only)

Filters are installed in the climate control seats. For replacement of the filters, contact your Lexus dealer.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Burns/excessive cooling (Climate control seats only)

- Use caution when seating the following persons in a seat with the climate control seats/seat heater on to avoid the possibility of burns:
  - Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the disabled
  - Persons with sensitive skin
  - Persons who are fatigued
  - Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)
- Do not cover the seat with anything when using the climate control seats/seat heater. Using the climate control seats/seat heater with a blanket or cushion increases the temperature of the seat and may lead to overheating.
- Do not use the climate control seat more than necessary. Doing so may cool the occupants excessively or may cause minor burns or overheating (Climate control seats only).

### NOTICE

#### ■ To prevent climate control seats/seat heater damage

Do not put unevenly weighted objects on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.

#### ■ To prevent battery discharge

Turn the switches off when the engine is not running.

### 3-8. Other interior features

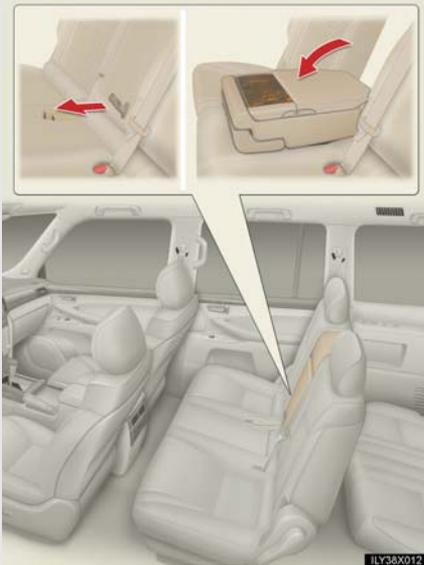
## Armrest

#### ► Front



Lift the lever up and slide the armrest

#### ► Rear



Pull the armrest down for use.

#### NOTICE

##### ■ To prevent damage to the armrest

Do not place too much strain on the armrest.

## 3-8. Other interior features

### Floor mat

Securely place a mat that matches the size of the space on the carpet.



Secure the floor mat using the hooks provided.

#### CAUTION

##### ■ When inserting the floor mat

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in the floor mat slipping and interfering with the movement of the pedals during driving, resulting in an accident.

- Make sure the floor mat is properly placed on the vehicle carpet and the correct side faces upward.
- Do not place floor mats on top of existing mats.

## 3-8. Other interior features

# Luggage compartment features

### ■ Cargo hooks



Cargo hooks are provided for securing loose items.

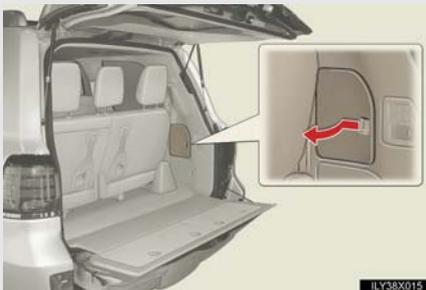
### ■ Cargo net hooks



To hang the cargo net, use the cargo net hooks and rear cargo hooks.

The cargo net itself is not included as an original equipment.

### ■ Storage compartment (if equipped)



Open the storage compartment as shown.

### ■ Warning reflector holder



Hold the warning reflector with a band.

The warning reflector itself is not included as an original equipment.

### ■ First-aid kit holder



Hold the first-aid kit with a band.

The first-aid kit itself is not included as an original equipment.

## ⚠ CAUTION

### ■ When the cargo hooks are not in use

To avoid injury, always return the cargo hooks to their positions when they are not in use.

## 3-8. Other interior features

# Garage door opener

The garage door opener can be programmed to operate garage doors, gates, entry doors, door locks, home lighting systems, security systems, and other devices.

The garage door opener (HomeLink<sup>®</sup> Universal Transceiver) is manufactured under license from HomeLink<sup>®</sup>.

### Programming HomeLink<sup>®</sup> (for U.S.A. owners)

The HomeLink<sup>®</sup> compatible transceiver in your vehicle has 3 buttons which can be programmed to operate 3 different devices. Refer to the programming method below appropriate for the device.



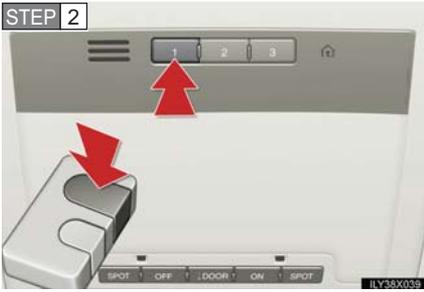
- 1 Indicator
- 2 Buttons

#### ■ Programming HomeLink<sup>®</sup>



Point the remote control transmitter for the device 1 to 3 in. (25 to 75 mm) from the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> buttons.

Keep the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> indicator light in view while programming.



Press and hold one of the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> buttons and the transmitter button. When the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> indicator light changes from a slow to a rapid flash, you can release both buttons.

If the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> indicator light comes on but does not flash, flashes rapidly for 2 seconds and remains lit, the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> button is already programmed. Use the other buttons or follow the “Reprogramming a HomeLink<sup>®</sup> button” instructions. (→P. 526)



Test the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> operation by pressing the newly programmed button.

If a HomeLink<sup>®</sup> button has been programmed for a garage door, check to see if the garage door opens and closes. If the garage door does not operate, see if your remote control transmitter is of the rolling code type. Press and hold the programmed HomeLink<sup>®</sup> button. The remote control transmitter is of the rolling code type if the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> indicator light flashes rapidly for 2 seconds and then remains lit. If your transmitter is of the rolling code type, proceed to the heading “Programming a rolling code system”.

**STEP 4** Repeat the steps above to program another device for each of the remaining HomeLink<sup>®</sup> buttons.

### ■ Programming a rolling code system

If your device is rolling code equipped, follow the steps under the heading “Programming HomeLink<sup>®</sup>” before proceeding with the steps listed below.

**STEP 1** Locate the training button on the ceiling mounted garage door opener motor. The exact location and color of the button may vary by brand of garage door opener motor.

Refer to the operation manual supplied with the garage door opener motor for the location of the training button.

**STEP 2** Press the training button.

Following this step, you have 30 seconds in which to initiate step 3 below.

**STEP 3** Press and hold the vehicle’s programmed HomeLink<sup>®</sup> button for 2 seconds and release it. Repeat this step once again. The garage door may open.

If the garage door opens, the programming process is complete. If the door does not open, press and release the button a third time. This third press and release will complete the programming process by opening the garage door.

The ceiling mounted garage door opener motor should now recognize the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> signal and operate the garage door.

**STEP 4** Repeat the steps above to program another rolling code system for any of the remaining HomeLink<sup>®</sup> buttons.

### ■ Programming an entry gate (for U.S.A. owners)/Programming all devices in the Canadian market

**STEP 1** Place your transmitter 1 to 3 in. (25 to 75 mm) away from the surface of the HomeLink<sup>®</sup>.

Keep the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> indicator light in view while programming.

**STEP 2** Press and hold the selected HomeLink<sup>®</sup> button.

**STEP 3** Repeatedly press and release (cycle) the device’s remote control button for two seconds each until step 4 is completed.

**STEP 4** When the indicator light on the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> compatible transceiver starts to flash rapidly, release the buttons.

**STEP 5** Test the operation of the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> by pressing the newly programmed button. Check to see if the gate/device operates correctly.

**STEP 6** Repeat the steps above to program another device for each of the remaining HomeLink<sup>®</sup> buttons.

### ■ Programming other devices

To program other devices such as home security systems, home door locks or lighting, contact your authorized Lexus dealer for assistance.

### ■ Reprogramming a button

The individual HomeLink<sup>®</sup> buttons cannot be erased but can be reprogrammed. To reprogram a button, follow the “Reprogramming a HomeLink<sup>®</sup> button” instructions.

## Operating HomeLink<sup>®</sup>

Press the appropriate HomeLink<sup>®</sup> button. The HomeLink<sup>®</sup> indicator light should come on.

The HomeLink<sup>®</sup> compatible transceiver in your vehicle continues to send a signal for up to 20 seconds as long as the button is pressed.

## Reprogramming a HomeLink<sup>®</sup> button

Press and hold the desired HomeLink<sup>®</sup> button. After 20 seconds, the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> indicator light will start flashing slowly. Next, while still pressing and holding the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> button, press and hold the button on the transmitter until the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> indicator light changes from a slow to a rapid flash.

## Erasing the entire HomeLink® memory (all three programs)



Press and hold the 2 outside buttons for 10 seconds until the indicator light flashes.

If you sell your vehicle, be sure to erase the programs stored in the HomeLink® memory.

### ■ Before programming

- Install a new battery in the remote control transmitter.
- The battery side of the remote control transmitter must be pointed away from the HomeLink® button.

### ■ Certification for the garage door opener

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of the IC Rules.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**WARNING:** This transmitter has been tested and complies with FCC and IC rules. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the device.

 **CAUTION**

■ **When programming a garage door or other remote control devices**

The garage door on other devices may operate, so ensure people and objects are out of danger to prevent potential harm.

■ **Conforming to federal safety standards**

Do not use the HomeLink<sup>®</sup> compatible transceiver with any garage door opener or device that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by federal safety standards.

This includes any garage door that cannot detect an interfering object. A door or device without these features increases the risk of death or serious injury.

### 3-8. Other interior features

## Lexus Link System (if equipped)

The Lexus Link System is a communication service that uses the Global Positioning System (GPS) data and cellular service to provide you with safety, security and convenience. This system is only operational in GPS and cellular coverage areas. Button operation and voice commands are used to operate the system. To operate the system, follow the voice guidance instructions. For details about service and subscription, call the Lexus Link Call Center at 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) (toll-free).

#### ■ Buttons



- 1 Voice keypad button
- 2 Volume control
- 3 Phone button
- 4 "SERVICES" button
- 5 Emergency button

#### ■ Services

The Lexus Link System offers the following services:

- Airbag deployment notification (→P. 531)
- Emergency assistance (→P. 531)
- Stolen vehicle location assistance (→P. 532)
- Remote horn/lights and remote door lock/unlock (→P. 532)
- Advanced services (→P. 533)
- Advisor record (→P. 533)
- Personal calling (→P. 534)
- Other services (→P. 532)

Operating the Lexus Link System during a Bluetooth® phone call will terminate the Bluetooth phone call.

## Safety information for the Lexus Link System

Important! Read this information before using the Lexus Link System.

### ■ Exposure to radio frequency signals

The Lexus Link System to be installed in your vehicle is a low power radio transmitter and receiver. When the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode, it receives and also sends out radio frequency (RF) signals.

In August 1996, the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) adopted RF exposure guidelines with safety levels for mobile wireless phones. Those guidelines are consistent with the safety standards previously set by both U.S. and international standards bodies.

- ANSI (American National Standards Institute) C95.1 [1992]
- NCRP (National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurement) Report 86 [1986]
- ICNIRP (International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection) [1996]

Those standards were based on comprehensive and periodic evaluations of the relevant scientific literature. Over 120 scientists, engineers, and physicians from universities, government health agencies, and industry reviewed the available body of research to develop the ANSI Standard (C95.1).

The design of the Lexus Link System complies with the FCC guidelines in addition to those standards.

## Indicator and warning lights



### 1 Operation indicator light

The operation indicator light will go off a short time after your subscription expired.

### 2 Warning light

If the warning light (red light) comes on, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

## Airbag deployment notification

If an airbag deploys, an emergency call is automatically placed to the Lexus Link Call Center, and your vehicle's location is identified. The Lexus Link Advisor will attempt to contact you and assess the situation. The Advisor can quickly contact the nearest emergency services provider, describe the situation and request that assistance be sent to your location.

The Lexus Link Advisor can, if requested, connect you to an emergency services operator.

## Emergency assistance

When you press  button, a priority call is placed to the Lexus Link Call Center with your vehicle's location. At the Call Center, the Lexus Link Advisor can determine your vehicle's location, communicate with you, and, if appropriate, contact the nearest emergency service provider.

If you have accidentally pressed the button, tell the Lexus Link Advisor that you are not experiencing an emergency.

### Stolen vehicle location assistance

If your vehicle is stolen, call the Lexus Link Call Center at 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) (toll-free) and select the option for Lexus Link.

To protect subscribers' privacy, the location of a vehicle will not be provided to anyone other than a law enforcement authority.

### Remote horn/lights and remote door lock/unlock

The remote operations are performed by contacting the Lexus Link Call Center from the outside of the vehicle. When necessary, call the Lexus Link Call Center at 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) (toll-free) and select the option for Lexus Link.

- If you forget to lock the vehicle or you are locked out, the Lexus Link Call Center can send a signal to lock or unlock the vehicle remotely.
- If you forget where you parked the vehicle, such as in a large parking lot, the Lexus Link Call Center can send a signal to flash the headlights and sound the horn to help you locate the vehicle.

When contacting the Lexus Link Call Center from the outside of the vehicle, you need the Lexus Link PIN (Personal Identification Number). Write the PIN down and carry it with you.

Ability to locate stolen vehicles and lock/unlock doors and activate horn/lights will vary with conditions. Lexus Link is unable to remotely lock doors when the electronic key is left inside the vehicle and is unable to remotely unlock doors when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

### Other services

Press  in the vehicle or call the Lexus Link Call Center at 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) (toll-free), and then select the option for Lexus Link. The services provided will depend on the service plan level.

## Advanced services

This service allows you to use personal calling minutes to obtain weather, traffic information and financial reports.

## Advisor record

### ■ Recording a conversation with an advisor

Press  to record a conversation. To stop recording, press  again.

- Up to 2 minutes of recording time is available.
- Recording a new conversation deletes the previously recorded conversation.

### ■ Playing the recorded conversation

**STEP 1** Press  or .

**STEP 2** Say “Advisor playback”.

Press the button again to stop the playback.

To restart the playback, press , say “Advisor playback” and then select either of the following methods:

- Say “Resume” to resume the playback.
- Say “Play” to start from the beginning.

### Personal calling from OEM telematic services

The Lexus Link System provides access to personal calling, a hands-free phone service provided by OEM telematic services. You can purchase a package of minutes that works best for you. As you make and receive calls, minutes are deducted from your plan. They are easily billed to a credit card that is kept on file so no separate phone bill is needed.

Personal calling universal voice recognition commands:

- **“Help”** The system will provide a list of available commands.
- **“Clear”** When you are entering digits, this command will erase the last digit entered.
- **“Cancel”** This command takes you from the current function to the “Lexus Link ready” prompt. If the last response from the system was “Lexus Link ready”, this command will exit voice mode.

Voice recognition command error message:

- **“Pardon”** The system responds with this message if the system does not recognize your voice command properly. Say the command slowly again. After the third time this happens, the system will try to guess the command you are requesting. If correct, say “Yes”. If not, say “No”, and the system will prompt you with its next-best guess.
- **“Slower please”** The system responds with this message if you say a command before the system is ready to listen or if your voice command cannot be recognized because of substantial background noise. Try to wait slightly longer before speaking.

### ■ There are 5 ways to make a call.

#### ► Dialing a specific phone number

**STEP 1** Press . When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Dial”.

**STEP 2** When the system responds with “Phone number to dial, please”, say the entire number you wish to dial without pausing.

**STEP 3** The system will repeat the number and ask “Yes or No”.

**STEP 4** Say “Yes” (or “No” to try again).

**STEP 5** The system responds with “Dialing”. (Your call will then be connected.)

#### ► Dialing digit-by-digit (“Digit Dial”)

“Digit Dial” enables you to dial a phone number by individual digit. This is helpful when there is background noise and also improves voice recognition.

**STEP 1** Press . When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Digit Dial”.

**STEP 2** When the system responds with “Digit please”, say the first digit of the number to be dialed and wait for it to be repeated back to you.

**STEP 3** Continue one digit at a time until all digits are entered.

**STEP 4** When finished, say “Dial”. The system responds with “Dialing” and your call is placed.

If you have problems storing a number using the continuous number method, you can store numbers one digit at a time using “Digit Store”. Simply follow the instructions above for “Digit Dial”, except say “Digit Store” in STEP 1 and “Store” in STEP 4.

#### ► Dialing a phone number saved as a nametag

A nametag is a convenient way to store important or frequently called phone numbers for easy access at any time. To do this, choose a frequently-called number to store, the example below uses your home telephone number.

#### ● How to store a nametag

**STEP 1** Press . When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Store”.

**STEP 2** When the system responds with “Phone number to store, please”, say the entire number you wish to store with no pauses. The system will repeat the number and ask “Yes or No”.

**STEP 3** Say “Yes” (or “No” to try again).

**STEP 4** When the system responds with “Nametag, please”, say “My home”.

**STEP 5** When the system responds with “About to store my home. Does that sound OK?”, say “Yes” (or “No” to try again).

**STEP 6** The system responds with “Storing my home”.

-The system can store up to 20 nametags.

-Try to use multi-syllable nametags such as “my home” and “the office”.

-Try to avoid similar-sounding nametags like “Tim” and “Kim”.

When using the “Dial” and “Store” commands, the system will recognize 7-, 10-, and 11-digit phone numbers. When dialing or storing a phone number, you can say “zero” or “oh” for 0.

● How to place a call using a stored nametag

**STEP 1** Press . When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Call”.

**STEP 2** When the system responds with “Nametag, please”, say a nametag.

**STEP 3** The system responds with “Calling nametag”.

● How to hear a list of your stored nametags

**STEP 1** Press . When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Directory”.

**STEP 2** The system will list your nametags.

▶ Dialing the last number you called (“Redial”)

You can dial the last number you called by using the “Redial” feature.

**STEP 1** Press . When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Redial”.

**STEP 2** The system will respond with “Redialing [#]”.

▶ Dialing a number a Lexus Link Advisor downloaded to your vehicle

**STEP 1** Press . When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Number recall”.

**STEP 2** The system will respond with “Connecting to number recall”.

■ Receiving a call

When someone calls you, you will hear a ring tone. Press  to answer the call.

If you do not answer within 30 seconds, the system will terminate the incoming call.

■ Ending a call

When your call is finished, press  to end the call.

### ■ Accessing voicemail and sending number tones to an automated phone system

You can access a voicemail system and respond to number request from an automated phone system. When you receive the request for a number while in a call, press .

If you do not say any commands within 5 seconds after pressing the button, or if you press the button twice, the system cannot receive the number tones you are trying to send. Press the button to try again.

### ■ How to retrieve your phone number

**STEP 1** Press . When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “My number”.

**STEP 2** The system responds with “Your number is [#]”.

If the response is “Personal calling unavailable”, this means your personal calling feature is not yet active; this may take a few days from vehicle delivery. It could also mean that personal calling service is not available in your area. Press  to check with an Advisor. Now that you have your number, take a moment to practice by making your first call to your home phone. Remember, the system recognizes numbers better when you say them quickly.

### ■ Verifying remaining units (minutes)

► To verify remaining minutes

**STEP 1** Press . When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Units”.

**STEP 2** When the system responds with “Verify or add”, say “Verify”.

**STEP 3** The system responds with “You have [#] units remaining”.

► To add more calling units (minutes)

**STEP 1** Press . When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Units”.

**STEP 2** When the system responds with “Verify or add”, say “Add”.

**STEP 3** The system responds with “Connecting to the Personal Calling Center”.

### ■ Security code/locking your system

The personal calling function can be locked using a 4-digit security code. While the system is locked, it is only possible to communicate with the Lexus Link Call Center.

To turn on/off the security

**STEP 1** Press . When the system responds with “Lexus Link ready”, say “Security”.

**STEP 2** When the system responds with “Enter first digit of code, please”, say your 4-digit code one digit at a time.

**STEP 3** After the fourth digit, the system responds with “Security (code #####) is now on/off”.

### ■ Speech recognition information

The Lexus Link speech recognition systems use speech technology that is designed to understand a wide range of speakers of American English. However, the technology may not work as well if a regional or ethnic accent is encountered. If the speech recognition system does not work properly, refer to the following:

- The system does not recognize your command properly if noise is present. Perform the following to improve voice command recognition:
  - Turn down or off the air conditioning system.
  - Slow down to reduce wind noise.
  - Close the windows and the moon roof to block outside noise.
  - Have all occupants be quiet so that the system does not recognize their conversation as a command.
- When to speak
  - Say a command within 5 seconds after the system prompts you to speak.
- How to speak
  - Speak forcefully and clearly.
  - Speak calmly and naturally.
  - The driver should speak while facing forward, and the passenger should speak facing the inside rear view mirror.
  - Avoid speaking with a rising intonation. Use a flat or falling intonation.

## 3-8. Other interior features

- Tips for one-word commands
  - The system recognizes only one word at a time for personal calling. (There are some exceptions, such as “Advanced services” and “My number”.)
  - When inputting the security codes or voice-activated keypad number, you must say them one digit at a time. When inputting a phone number, the speech recognition system can recognize 7-, 10-, and 11-digit numbers as well as the number 911.
- Tips for entering a phone number using the “Dial” and “Store” commands
  - You do not need to say “Dial”, “Store” or “Verify” after the phone number.
  - If the phone number entered is not 7-, 10-, or 11-digits, use the “Dial” or “Store” command.
  - Do not pause between the digits.
  - Speech recognition does not recognize the words “Hundred” or “Thousand”. Instead, say each digit.
  - Speech recognition often works better when the digits are combined smoothly into a single phrase.
  - If the system does not recognize your command properly, use the “Digit dial” command to enter one digit at a time.
- If problems continue
  - Say each one of the syllables in the word clearly.
  - Be sure to articulate each sound in the word.
  - If the system is confusing 2 commands that are similar, be sure to pronounce the distinction.
  - Avoid clipping short words and syllables.
  - Try speaking louder to prevent background noise from drowning out your voice.
- Audible voice prompts

Some of the voice guidance instructions can be changed to Spanish. Press  and ask a Lexus Link Advisor.

### ■ Information on Advanced Services

See the Lexus Link area of the Lexus website at [www.lexus.com/lexuslink/](http://www.lexus.com/lexuslink/) or call the Lexus Link Call Center at 1-800-255-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) (toll-free) for more information.

### ■ Certification for the Lexus Link System

FCC ID: SCWTR-423-A2

#### NOTE:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### CAUTION

#### ■ FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications in construction not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radio Frequency Exposure. This device is approved for Mobile Application only and, to comply with applicable FCC radio frequency exposure regulations, must be used with a distance of at least 7.9 in. (20 cm) between the antenna and the body of any person at all time during use.



# Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform the following to protect the vehicle and maintain it in prime condition.

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.  
Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.

If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

---

### ■ Automatic car washes

- Fold the mirrors back before washing the vehicle.
- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface and harm your vehicle's paint.

### ■ High pressure car washes

- Do not allow the nozzles of the car wash to come within close proximity of the windows.
- Before car wash, check that the fuel filler door on your vehicle is closed properly.

### ■ Aluminum wheels

Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners. Do not use strong or harsh chemical cleaners. Use the same mild detergent and wax as used on the point.

### ■ Bumpers and side moldings

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

### ■ To prevent deterioration and body corrosion

- Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:
  - After driving near the sea coast
  - After driving on salted roads
  - If you see coal tar or tree sap on the paint surface
  - If you see dead insects or insect droppings on the paint
  - After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
  - If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled in dust or mud
  - If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface
- If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Caution about the exhaust pipe

Exhaust gasses cause the exhaust pipe to become quite hot.

When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the pipe until it has cooled sufficiently, as touching a hot exhaust pipe can cause burns.

### NOTICE

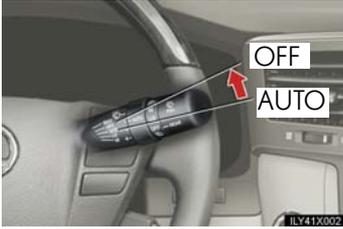
#### ■ To protect your vehicle's painted surfaces

Do not use organic cleaners such as benzene or gasoline.

#### ■ Cleaning the exterior lights

- Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.
- Do not apply wax on the surfaces of the lights. Wax may cause damage to the lenses.

#### ■ When using an automatic car wash



Set the wiper switch to "OFF"

If the wiper switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.

# Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

The following procedures will help protect your vehicle's interior and keep it in top condition:

### ■ Protecting the vehicle interior

Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.

### ■ Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.

Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.

- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in a shaded ventilated area.

### ■ Synthetic leather areas

- Remove loose dirt using a vacuum cleaner.
- Apply a mild soap solution to the synthetic leather using a sponge or soft cloth.
- Allow the solution to soak in for a few minutes. Remove the dirt and wipe off the solution with a clean, damp cloth.

### ■ Cleaning the inside of the rear window

Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires or antenna. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires or antenna.

### ■ Caring for leather areas

Lexus recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

### ■ Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not apply water. Excellent results are obtained when keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

### ■ Seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Water in the vehicle

- Be careful not to splash or spill liquid on the floor.
- Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet. (→P.118)

Electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or severe injury.

 NOTICE**■ Cleaning detergents**

Do not use the following types of detergent, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces.

- Non-seat portions: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, or bleach.
- Seats: Acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, or alcohol.

**■ Preventing damage to leather surfaces**

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces.

- Remove any dust or dirt on leather surfaces immediately.
- Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.
- Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or that contain wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

**■ Water on the floor**

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.

Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components under the floor of the vehicle, and may also cause the body to rust.

**■ Cleaning the inside of the rear window**

Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.

## 4-2. Maintenance

# Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance is essential. It is the owner's responsibility to perform regular checks. Lexus recommends the following maintenance.

### ■ General maintenance

Should be performed on a daily basis. This can be done by yourself or by a Lexus dealer.

### ■ Scheduled maintenance

Should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

For details about maintenance items and schedules, read the "Warranty and Services Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Scheduled Maintenance".

### ■ Do-it-yourself maintenance

You can perform some maintenance procedures yourself.

Please be aware that do-it-yourself maintenance may affect warranty coverage.

The use of Lexus repair manuals is recommended.

For details about warranty coverage, refer to the separate "Owner's Guide", "Warranty and Services Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Warranty Booklet".

---

### ■ Repair and replacement

It is recommended that genuine Lexus parts be used for repair to ensure performance of each system. If non-Lexus parts are used in replacement or if a repair shop other than a Lexus dealer performs repairs, confirm the warranty coverage.

**■ Allow inspection and repairs to be performed by a Lexus dealer**

- Lexus technicians are well-trained specialists and are kept up to date with the latest service information. They are well informed about the operations of all systems on your vehicle.
- Keep a copy of the repair order. It proves that the maintenance that has been performed is under warranty coverage. If any problem should arise while your vehicle is under warranty, your Lexus dealer will promptly take care of it.

**⚠ CAUTION****■ Warning in handling of battery, oils, fuels, and fluids**

- Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and a wide variety of automobile components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and other reproductive harm. Work in a well ventilated area.
- Oils, fuels and fluids contained in vehicles as well as waste produced by component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Avoid exposure and wash any affected area immediately.
- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (→P. 575)

## 4-2. Maintenance

### General maintenance

Listed below are the general maintenance items that should be performed at the intervals specified in the “Warranty and Services Guide” or “Owner’s Manual Supplement”. It is recommended that any problem you notice should be brought to the attention of your Lexus dealer or qualified service shop for advice.

#### Engine compartment

Items	Check points
Battery	• Maintenance-free (→P. 575)
Brake fluid	• At the correct level? (→P. 571)
Engine coolant	• At the correct level? (→P. 569)
Engine oil	• At the correct level? (→P. 563)
Exhaust system	• No fumes or strange sounds?
Power steering fluid	• At the correct level? (→P. 573)
Radiator/condenser/hoses	• Not blocked with foreign matter? (→P. 570)
Washer fluid	• At the correct level? (→P. 578)

## Vehicle interior

Items	Check points
Accelerator pedal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Moves smoothly (without uneven pedal effort or catching)?</li> </ul>
Automatic transmission “Park” mechanism	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Can the vehicle be held securely on an incline with the shift lever in “P”?</li> </ul>
Brake pedal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Moves smoothly?</li> <li>• Does it have appropriate clearance and correct amount of free play?</li> </ul>
Brakes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pulls to one side when applied?</li> <li>• Loss of brake effectiveness?</li> <li>• Spongy feeling brake pedal?</li> <li>• Pedal almost touches floor?</li> </ul>
Head restraints	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move smoothly and lock securely?</li> </ul>
Indicators/buzzers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Function properly?</li> </ul>
Lights	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do all the lights come on?</li> <li>• Headlights aimed correctly?</li> </ul>
Parking brake	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Moves smoothly?</li> <li>• Can hold the vehicle securely on an incline?</li> </ul>

Items	Check points
Seat belts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Does the seat belt system operate smoothly?</li> <li>• Are the belts undamaged?</li> </ul>
Seats	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do the seat controls operate properly?</li> </ul>
Steering wheel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Moves smoothly?</li> <li>• Has correct free play?</li> <li>• No strange noises?</li> </ul>

### Vehicle exterior

Items	Check points
Doors	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Operate smoothly?</li> </ul>
Engine hood	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The lock system works properly?</li> </ul>
Fluid leaks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Is there any leakage after parking?</li> </ul>
Tire	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inflation pressure is correct?</li> <li>• Tire surfaces not worn or damaged?</li> <li>• Tires rotated according to the maintenance schedule?</li> <li>• Wheel nuts are not loose?</li> </ul>

### CAUTION

#### If the engine is running

Turn off the engine and ensure that there is adequate ventilation before performing maintenance checks.

Some states have vehicle emission inspection programs which include OBD (On Board Diagnostics) checks. The OBD system monitors the operation of the emission control system.

### ■ If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on

The OBD system determines that a problem exists somewhere in the emission control system. Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test and may need to be repaired. Contact your Lexus dealer to service the vehicle.

### ■ Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test:

- When the battery is disconnected or discharged

Readiness codes that are set during ordinary driving are erased. Also, depending on your driving habits, the readiness codes may not be completely set.

- When the fuel tank cap is loose

The malfunction indicator lamp comes on as a temporary malfunction and your vehicle may not pass the I/M test.

### ■ When the malfunction indicator lamp goes off after several driving trips

The error code in the OBD system will not be cleared unless the vehicle is driven 40 or more times.

### ■ If your vehicle does not pass the I/M test

Contact your Lexus dealer to prepare the vehicle for re-testing.

## 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

### Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedures given in these sections.

Items	Parts and tools
Battery condition (→P. 575)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Warm water</li><li>• Baking soda</li><li>• Grease</li><li>• Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts)</li></ul>
Brake fluid level (→P. 571)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid</li><li>• Rag or paper towel</li><li>• Funnel (used only for adding brake fluid)</li></ul>
Engine coolant level (→P. 569)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology. For the U.S.A.: “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is pre-mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. For Canada: “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is pre-mixed with 55% coolant and 45% deionized water.</li><li>• Funnel (used only for adding coolant)</li></ul>

Items	Parts and tools
Engine oil level (→P. 563)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” or equivalent</li> <li>• Rag or paper towel, funnel (used only for adding oil)</li> </ul>
Fuses (→P. 599)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fuse with same amperage rating as original</li> </ul>
Power steering fluid (→P. 573)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON®II or III</li> <li>• Rag or paper towel</li> <li>• Funnel (used only for adding power steering fluid)</li> </ul>
Radiator and condenser (→P. 570)	—
Tire inflation pressure (→P. 588)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tire pressure gauge</li> <li>• Compressed air source</li> </ul>
Washer fluid (→P. 578)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Water or washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use)</li> <li>• Funnel</li> </ul>

### CAUTION

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury observe the following precautions.

#### ■ When working on the engine compartment

- Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from the moving fans and engine drive belt.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper or rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel or the battery. Fuel and battery fumes are flammable.
- Be extremely cautious when working on the battery. It contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.

#### ■ When working near the electric cooling fan or radiator grille

Be sure the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is OFF.

With the “ENGINE START STOP” switch in IGNITION ON mode, the electric cooling fan may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→P. 570)

#### ■ When working on or under the vehicle

- Do not get under the vehicle with just the jack supporting it.  
Always use automotive jack stands or other solid supports.
- Use eye protection to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc. from getting in your eyes.

 NOTICE**■ If you remove the air cleaner**

Driving with the air cleaner removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air. Also a backfire could cause a fire in the engine compartment.

## 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

### Hood

Release the lock from the inside of the vehicle to open the hood.



Pull the hood release lever.

The hood will pop up slightly.



Lift the hood catch and lift the hood.

#### CAUTION

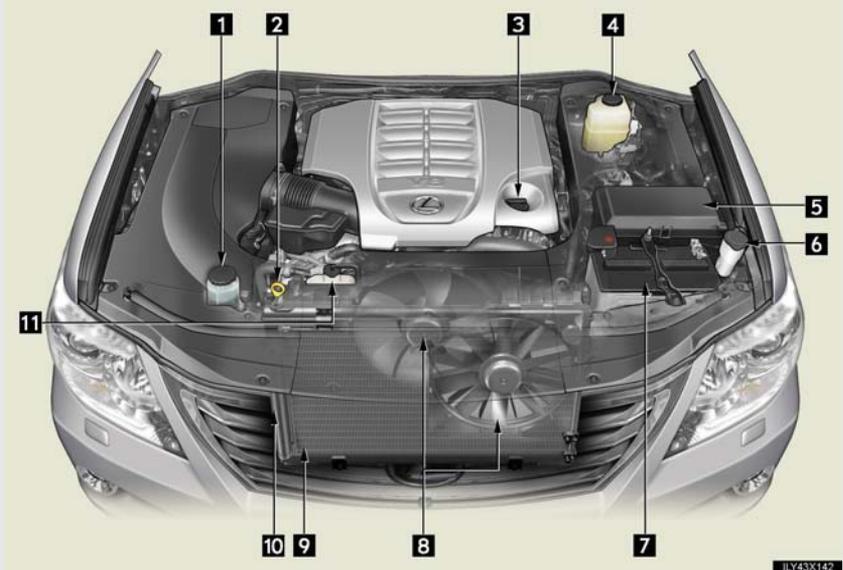
##### ■ Pre-driving check

Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.

If the hood is not locked properly, it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

## 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

### Engine compartment



- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>1</b> Power steering fluid reservoir<br>(→P. 573) | <b>5</b> Fuse box<br>(→P. 599)                  |
| <b>2</b> Engine oil level dipstick<br>(→P. 563)      | <b>6</b> Washer fluid tank (→P. 578)            |
| <b>3</b> Engine oil filler cap<br>(→P. 564)          | <b>7</b> Battery (→P. 575)                      |
| <b>4</b> Brake fluid reservoir<br>(→P. 571)          | <b>8</b> Cooling fans                           |
|  | <b>9</b> Condenser (→P. 570)                    |
|  | <b>10</b> Radiator (→P. 570)                    |
|  | <b>11</b> Engine coolant reservoir<br>(→P. 569) |

## Engine compartment cover

### ■ Removing the cover

#### ▶ Front



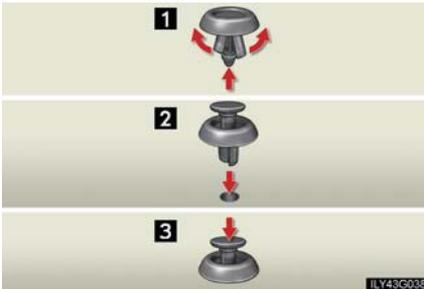
#### ▶ Right-hand side



#### ▶ Left-hand side



### ■ Installing the clips



- 1 Push up center portion
- 2 Insert
- 3 Press

## Engine oil

With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

### ■ Checking the engine oil

**STEP 1** Park the vehicle on level ground. After turning off the engine, wait a few minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.



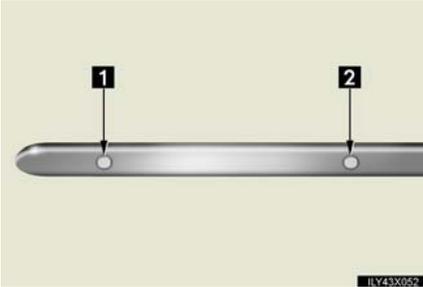
Hold a rag under the end and pull the dipstick out.

**STEP 3** Wipe the dipstick clean.

**STEP 4** Reinsert the dipstick fully.

**STEP 5** Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.

**STEP 6** Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.



**1** Low

**2** Full

### ■ Adding engine oil



If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as already in the engine.

Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

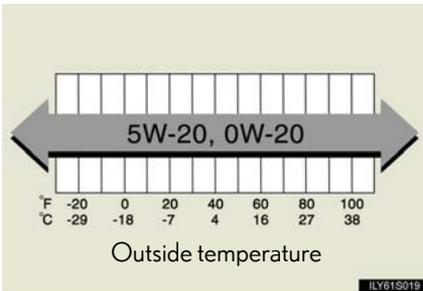
Oil grade	ILSAC multigrade engine oil
Oil quantity (Low→Full)	1.2 qt. (1.1 L, 1.0 Imp.qt.)
Items	Clean funnel

**STEP 1** Remove the oil filler cap.

**STEP 2** Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.

**STEP 3** Install the filler cap, turning it clockwise.

### ■ Recommended viscosity



SAE 5W-20 or 0W-20 engine oil may be used. However, SAE 0W-20 is the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

### ■ How to read oil container labels

The ILSAC (International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee) Certification Mark is added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



---

### ■ Engine oil consumption

- The amount of engine oil consumed depends on the oil viscosity, the quality of the oil and the way the vehicle is driven.
- More oil is consumed under driving conditions such as high speeds, frequent acceleration and deceleration.
- A new engine consumes more oil.
- When judging the amount of oil consumption, keep in mind that the oil may have become diluted, making it difficult to judge the true level accurately.
- Oil consumption: Max. 1.1 qt./600 miles, 0.9 Imp.qt./600 miles (1.0 L per 1000 km)
- If you consume more than 1.1 qt. (1.0 L, 0.9 Imp.qt.) every 600 miles (1000 km), contact your Lexus dealer.

### ■ Resetting the engine oil maintenance data (U.S.A. only)

The oil change system should be reset. Perform the following procedures:

- STEP 1** Switch the display to the trip meter A when the engine is running.  
(→P.177)
- STEP 2** Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.
- STEP 3** While pressing the trip meter reset button, set the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to IGNITION ON mode (but do not start the engine because otherwise the reset mode will be canceled). Continue to press and hold the button until the multi-information display indicates that the reset is complete.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Used engine oil

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation or skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground. Call your Lexus dealer, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

 NOTICE

■ **To prevent serious engine damage**

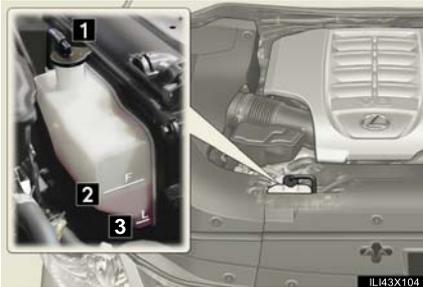
Check the oil level on regular basis.

■ **When replacing the engine oil**

- Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
- Avoid overfilling, as the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly tightened.

## Engine coolant

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the “F” and “L” lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.



**1** Reservoir cap

**2** FULL

**3** LOW

If the level is on or below the “L” line, add coolant up to the “F” line.

### ■ If the coolant level drops within a short time after replenishing

Visually check the radiator, hoses, reservoir cap, radiator cap, drain cock and water pump.

If you cannot find a leak, have your Lexus dealer, test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling system.

### ■ Coolant selection

Only use “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

U.S.A.: “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Enabled: -31°F [-35°C])

Canada: “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is a mixture of 55% coolant and 45% deionized water. (Enabled: -44°F [-42°C])

For more details about engine coolant, contact your Lexus dealer.

### CAUTION

#### ■ When the engine is hot

Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap. The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing burns or other injuries.

### NOTICE

#### ■ When adding engine coolant

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

#### ■ If you spill coolant

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent damage to parts or paint.

## Radiator and condenser

Check the radiator and condenser, and clear any foreign objects. If any of the above parts are extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

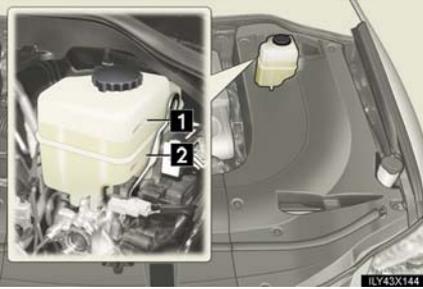
### CAUTION

#### ■ When the engine is hot

Do not touch the radiator or condenser, as they may be hot and you may be burned.

## Brake fluid

### ■ Checking fluid level



The brake fluid level should be between the “MAX” and “MIN” lines on the tank.

- 1 MAX
- 2 MIN

Make sure to check the fluid type and prepare the necessary items.

### ■ Adding fluid

Fluid type	FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid
Items	Clean funnel

### ■ Refilling brake fluid

**STEP 1** Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.

**STEP 2** Depress the brake pedal more than 40 times.

**STEP 3** Remove the reservoir cap by hand. Add brake fluid up to the “MAX” line.

If you do not follow the procedure above, the reservoir may overflow.

### ■ Brake fluid can absorb moisture from the air

Excess moisture in the fluid can cause a dangerous loss of braking efficiency. Use only newly opened brake fluid.

### CAUTION

#### ■ When filling the reservoir

Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces.

If fluid gets in your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water immediately.

If you still experience discomfort, see a doctor.

### NOTICE

#### ■ If the fluid level is low

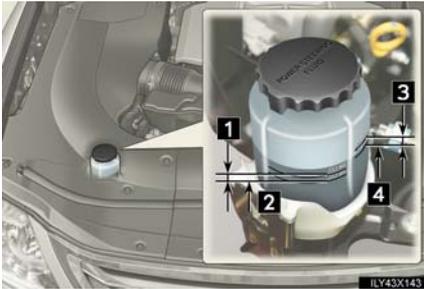
It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.

If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

## Power steering fluid

### Fluid level

The fluid level should be within the appropriate range.



- 1 Full (when cold)
- 2 Add fluid (when cold)
- 3 Full (when hot)
- 4 Add fluid (when hot)

**Hot:** Vehicle has been driven around 50 mph (80 km/h) for 20 minutes, or slightly longer in frigid temperatures. (Fluid temperature, 140°F - 175°F [60°C - 80°C]).

**Cold:** Engine has not been run for about five hours. (Room temperature, 50°F - 85°F [10°C - 30°C]).

### Checking the fluid level

Make sure to check the fluid type and prepare the necessary items.

Fluid type	Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON® II or III
Items	Rag or paper, Clean funnel (only for adding fluid)

**STEP 1** Clean all dirt off the reservoir.

**STEP 2** Remove the cap by turning it counterclockwise.

**STEP 3** Wipe the dipstick clean.

**STEP 4** Reinstall and remove the reservoir cap again.

**STEP 5** Check the fluid level.

 **CAUTION**

■ **When checking the reservoir**

Take care, as the reservoir may be hot.

 **NOTICE**

■ **When adding fluid**

Avoid overfilling, or the power steering may be damaged.

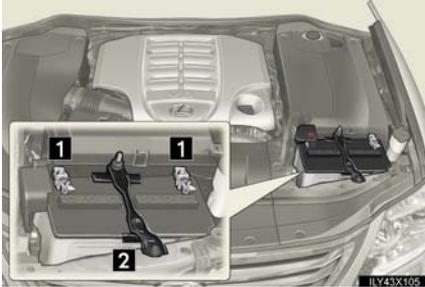
■ **After replacing the reservoir cap**

Check the steering box case, vane pump and hose connections for leaks or damage.

## Battery

### Battery exterior

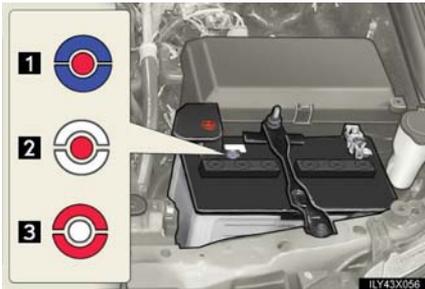
Make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.



- 1 Terminals
- 2 Hold-down clamp

### Checking battery condition

Check the battery condition using the indicator color.



- 1 Blue: Good condition
- 2 White: Charging is necessary. Have the battery checked by your Lexus dealer.
- 3 Red: Not working properly, have the battery checked by your Lexus dealer.

### ■ Before recharging

When recharging, the battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, before recharging:

- If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the battery.

### ■ After recharging/reconnecting the battery

The engine may not start. Follow the procedure below to initialize the system.

**STEP 1** Depress the brake pedal with the shift lever in "P" or "N".

**STEP 2** Open and close any of the doors.

**STEP 3** Restart the engine.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Chemicals in the battery

A battery contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

 **CAUTION****■ Where to safely charge the battery**

Always charge the battery in an open area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is not sufficient ventilation.

**■ How to recharge the battery**

Only perform a slow charge (5A or less). The battery may explode if charged at a quicker rate.

**■ Emergency measures regarding electrolyte****● If electrolyte gets in your eyes**

Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.

**● If electrolyte gets on your skin**

Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately.

**● If electrolyte gets on your clothes**

It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.

**● If you accidentally swallow electrolyte**

Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Follow with milk of magnesia, beaten raw egg or vegetable oil. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

 **NOTICE****■ When recharging the battery**

Never recharge the battery while the engine is running. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

## Washer fluid



If any washer does not work or the warning message appears on the multi-information display, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.

### CAUTION

#### ■ When refilling the washer fluid

Do not refill the washer fluid when the engine is hot or running, as the washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch fire if spilled on the engine etc.

### NOTICE

#### ■ Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid

Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of washer fluid. Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces.

#### ■ Diluting washer fluid

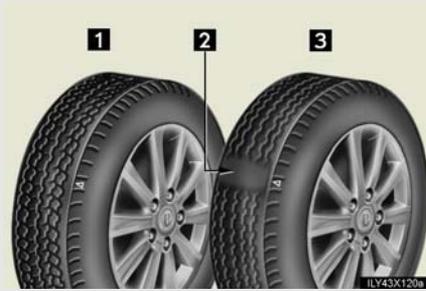
Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary. Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the washer fluid tank.

## 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

# Tires

Replace the tires when the treadwear indicators show.

### ■ Checking tires

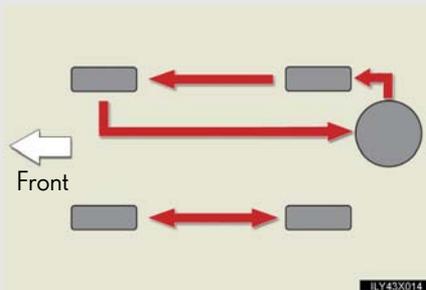


- 1 New tread
- 2 Treadwear indicator
- 3 Worn tread

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by the “TWI” or “△” marks, etc., molded on the sidewall of each tire.

Check spare tire condition and inflation pressure if not rotated.

### ■ Tire rotation



Rotate the tires in the order shown.

To equalize tire wear and extend tire life, Lexus recommends that tire rotation is carried out at the same interval as tire inspection.

Do not fail to initialize the tire pressure warning system after rotating the tires that the tire pressure has been changed for towing. (→P. 580)

### ■ The tire pressure warning system

Your Lexus is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise. (→P. 640)

### Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and tire pressure warning system must be initialized. Have tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes registered by your Lexus dealer. (→P. 580, 581)

### Initializing the tire pressure warning system

■ **The tire pressure warning system must be initialized in the following circumstances:**

- When the set tire pressure has been changed before towing with the P285/50R20 tires. (→P. 690)
- When rotating the tires in above situation.

When the tire pressure warning system is initialized, the current tire inflation pressure is set as the pressure benchmark.

## ■ How to initialize the tire pressure warning system

**STEP 1** Park the vehicle in safe place and turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to OFF.

While the vehicle is moving, initialization is not performed.

**STEP 2** Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. (→P. 690)

Make sure to adjust the tire pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. The tire pressure warning system will operate based on this pressure level.

**STEP 3** Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to IGNITION ON mode.



Push and hold the tire pressure warning reset switch until the tire pressure warning light blinks slowly 3 times and a message appears on the multi-information display.

**STEP 5** Wait for a few minutes with the IGNITION ON mode, and then turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to OFF.

## Registering ID codes

The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is equipped with a unique ID code. When replacing a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, it is necessary to register the ID code of tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. Have the ID code registered by your Lexus dealer.

### ■ When to replace your vehicle's tires

Tires should be replaced if:

- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric or bulges indicating internal damage
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage

If you are not sure, consult with your Lexus dealer.

### ■ Replacing tires and wheels

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 20 minutes, the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute to indicate a system malfunction.

### ■ Tire life

Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if they have seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

### ■ If the tread wears down 0.16 in. (4 mm) or more on snow tires

The effectiveness of snow tires is lost.

### ■ Maximum load of tire

Check that the maximum load of the replaced tire is greater than 1/2 of the Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR) of either the front axle or the rear axle, whichever is greater.

As for the maximum load of the tire, see the load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure mentioned on the sidewall of the tire, and as for the Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR), see the Certification Label. (→P. 588, 695)

### ■ Tire types

#### 1 Summer tires

Summer tires are high-speed performance tires best suited to highway driving under dry conditions. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as snow tires, summer tires are inadequate for driving on snow-covered or icy roads. For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, the use of snow tires is recommended. When installing snow tires, be sure to replace all four tires.

#### 2 All season tires

All season tires are designed to provide better traction in snow and to be adequate for driving in most winter conditions, as well as for use year round. All season tires, however, do not have adequate traction performance compared with snow tires in heavy or loose snow. Also, all season tires fall short in acceleration and handling performance compared with summer tires in highway driving.

#### 3 Snow tires

For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, we recommend using snow tires. If you need snow tires, select tires of the same size, construction and load capacity as the originally installed tires. Since your vehicle has radial tires as original equipment, make sure your snow tires also have radial construction. Do not install studded tires without first checking local regulations for possible restriction. Snow tires should be installed on all wheels. (→P. 282)

### ■ Initializing the tire pressure warning system

Initialize the tires with the tire inflation pressure adjusted to the specified level.

### ■ If you push the tire pressure warning reset switch accidentally

If initialization is performed, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level and initialize the tire pressure warning system again.

### ■ When the initialization of the tire pressure warning system has failed

Initialization can be completed in a few minutes. However, in the following cases, the settings have not been recorded and the system will not operate properly. If repeated attempts to record tire inflation pressure settings are unsuccessful, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- When operating the tire pressure warning reset switch, the tire pressure warning light does not flash 3 times and the setting message does not appear on the multi-information display.
- After carrying out the initialization procedure, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute then stays on after driving for about 20 minutes.

### ■ Routine tire inflation pressure checks

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

### ■ Tire pressure warning system certification

- ▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

#### NOTE:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

#### NOTICE:

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

#### FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

- ▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

#### NOTE:

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

 **CAUTION**

■ **Tire pressure warning system operation**

The tire pressure warning system may not provide warning immediately if a tire bursts or if sudden air leakage occurs.

■ **When inspecting or replacing tires**

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.

Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drive train, as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to fatal or injury accidents.

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models, tread patterns or treadwear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Lexus.
- Do not mix radial, bias-belted, or bias-ply tires.
- Do not mix summer, all season and winter tires.
- Do not use tires that have been used on another vehicle.  
Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.

■ **When initializing the tire pressure warning system**

Do not push the tire pressure warning reset switch without first adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.

 NOTICE**■ Repairing or replacing tires, wheels and tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

- When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.
- When replacing tires, make sure also to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

**■ To avoid damaging the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

Do not use liquid sealants on flat tires.

**■ Driving on rough roads**

Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes. These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

**■ If tire inflation pressures become low while driving**

Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

## 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

### Tire inflation pressure

#### ■ Tire inflation pressure

The recommended cold tire inflation pressure and tire size is displayed on the tire and loading information label. (→P. 690)



TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION			INFORMATION SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT		
SEATING CAPACITY - TOTAL X FRONT X; REAR X The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb.			NOMBRE DE PLACES ASSISES - TOTAL X AVANT X; ARRIERE X Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais être supérieur à XXX kg ou XXX lb.		
TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE	PNEUS	DIMENSION	PRESSION DE GONFLAGE À FROID
FRONT	PXXXXX/ROX	XXXXPa,XXPSI	AVANT	PXXXXX/ROX	XXXXPa,XXPSI
REAR	PXXXXX/ROX	XXXXPa,XXPSI	ARRIERE	PXXXXX/ROX	XXXXPa,XXPSI
SPARE	PXXXXX/ROX	XXXXPa,XXPSI	SECOURS	PXXXXX/ROX	XXXXPa,XXPSI
SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION			POUR DE PLUS AMPLES INFORMATIONS, VOIR LE MANUEL DU PROPRIETAIRE		

ILY43X157

### ■ Inspection and adjustment procedure



- 1 Tire valve
- 2 Tire pressure gauge

**STEP 1** Remove the tire valve cap.

**STEP 2** Press the tip of the tire pressure gauge onto the tire valve.

**STEP 3** Read the pressure using the graduations of the gauge.

**STEP 4** If the tire inflation pressure is not within the recommended levels, adjust tire pressure.

If you add too much air, press the center of the valve to lower.

**STEP 5** After completing the tire inflation pressure measurement and adjustment, apply soapy water to the valve and check for leakage.

**STEP 6** Reinstall the tire valve cap.

### ■ Tire inflation pressure check interval

You should check tire inflation pressure every 2 weeks, or at least once a month. Do not forget to check the spare.

### ■ Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel efficiency
- Reduced driving comfort and tire life
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drive train

If a tire needs frequent refilling, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

### ■ Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.  
If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours and has not been driven for more than 1 mile or 1.5 km, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- Always use a tire pressure gauge.  
The appearance of the tire can be misleading. In addition, tire inflation pressures that are even just a few pounds off can degrade ride and handling.
- Do not bleed or reduce tire inflation pressure after driving. It is normal for the tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving.
- Never exceed the vehicle capacity weight.  
Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

 **CAUTION****■ Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance**

Keep your tires properly inflated. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in an accident causing death or serious injury.

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Poor sealing of the tire bead
- Wheel deformation and/or tire separation
- A greater possibility of tire damage from road hazards

 **NOTICE****■ When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure**

Be sure to reinstall the tire valve caps.

Without the valve caps, dirt or moisture could get into the valve and cause air leakage, which could result in an accident. If the caps have been lost, replace them as soon as possible.

# Wheels

If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause loss of handling control.

### ■ Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width, and offset.

Replacement wheels are available at your Lexus dealer.

Lexus does not recommend using:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened

### ■ Aluminum wheel precautions

- Use only Lexus wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1000 miles (1600 km).
- Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.
- Use only Lexus genuine balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer when balancing your wheels.

**■ When replacing wheels**

The wheels of your Lexus are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advanced warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be installed. (→P. 580)

**⚠ CAUTION****■ When replacing wheels**

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

**⚠ NOTICE****■ Replacing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at your Lexus dealer.
- Ensure that only genuine Lexus wheels are used on your vehicle. Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

## 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

### Air conditioning filter

The air conditioning filter must be cleaned or changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

#### ■ Removal method

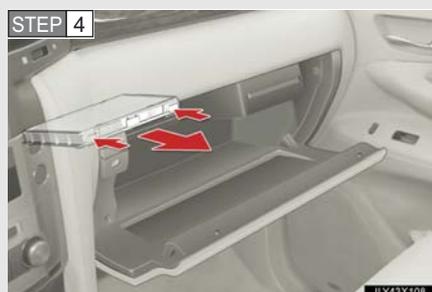
**STEP 1** Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch IGNITION ON mode and switch to recirculated air mode, then turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.



Open the glove box and remove the partition.



Remove the filter cover.



Remove the filter case.

### ■ Cleaning method

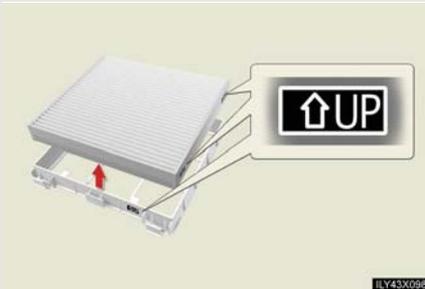


If the filter is dirty, clean by blowing compressed air through the filter from the downward side.

Hold the air gun 2 in. (5 cm) from the filter and blow for approximately 2 minutes at 72 psi (500 kPa, 5.0 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup> or bar).

If it is not available, have the filter cleaned by your Lexus dealer.

### ■ Replacement method



Remove the air conditioning filter and replace it with a new one.

The “↑UP” marks shown on the filter should be pointing up.

### ■ Checking interval

Inspect, clean and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, more frequent cleaning or early replacement may be required. (For scheduled maintenance information, refer to the “Warranty and Services Guide”, “Owner’s Manual Supplement” or “Scheduled Maintenance”.)

### ■ If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

#### NOTICE

#### ■ To prevent damage to the system

- When using the air conditioning system, make sure that a filter is always installed.
- When cleaning the filter, do not clean the filter with water.

## 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

### Electronic key battery

Replace the battery with a new one if it is discharged.

■ You will need the following items:

- Flathead screwdriver (To prevent damage to the key, cover the tip of the screwdriver with rag.)
- Small Phillips-head screwdriver
- Lithium battery (CR1632)

■ Replacing the battery

STEP 1



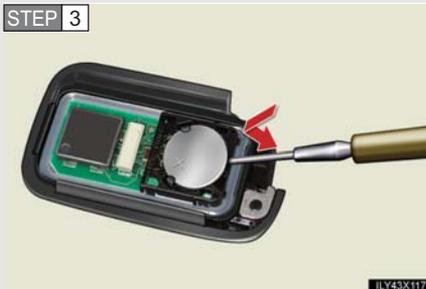
Take out the mechanical key.

STEP 2



Remove the cover.

STEP 3



Remove the depleted battery.

Insert a new battery with the “+” terminal facing up.

### ■ If the electronic key battery is discharged

The following symptoms may occur.

- The smart access system with push-button start and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range is reduced.

### ■ Use a CR1632 lithium battery

- Batteries can be purchased at your Lexus dealer, jewelers, or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by your Lexus dealer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

### ■ When the card key battery needs to be replaced

The battery for the card key is available only at Lexus dealer. Your Lexus dealer can replace the battery for you.

#### CAUTION

#### ■ Removed battery and other parts

Keep away from children.

These parts are small and if swallowed by a child they can cause choking.

#### NOTICE

#### ■ For normal operation after replacing the battery

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.

- Always work with dry hands.  
Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other components inside the electronic key.
- Do not bend the battery terminals.

## 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

# Checking and replacing fuses

If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

**STEP 1** Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.

**STEP 2** The fuses are located in the following places. To check the fuses, follow the instructions below.

► Engine compartment

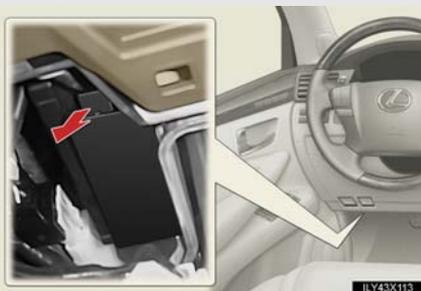


Push the tab in and lift the lid off.

▶ Driver's side instrument panel



Remove the bolts and the cover.

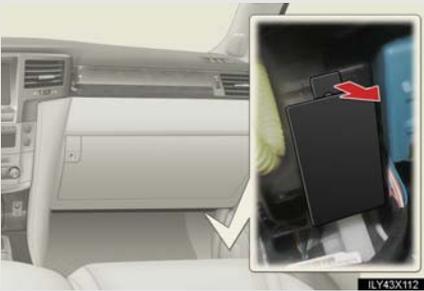


Remove the lid.

## ▶ Passenger's side instrument panel

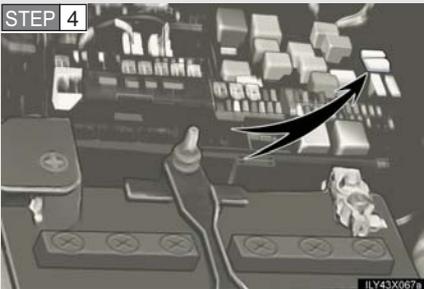


Remove the cover.



Remove the lid.

**STEP 3** After a system failure, see “Fuse layout and amperage ratings” (→P. 604) for details about which fuse to check.



**STEP 4** Remove the fuse with the pull-out tool.

**STEP 5** Check if the fuse has blown.

► Type A and B

Type A

**1**



**2**



ILY45X119

**1** Normal fuse

**2** Blown fuse

Replace it with one of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

Type B

**1**



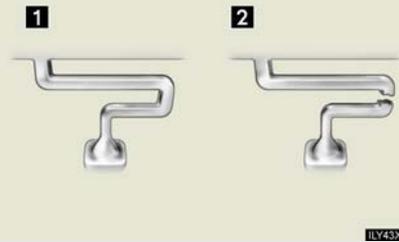
**2**



ILY45X121

► Type C and D

Type C

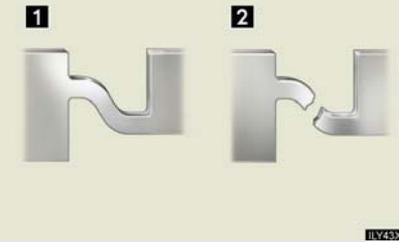


**1** Normal fuse

**2** Blown fuse

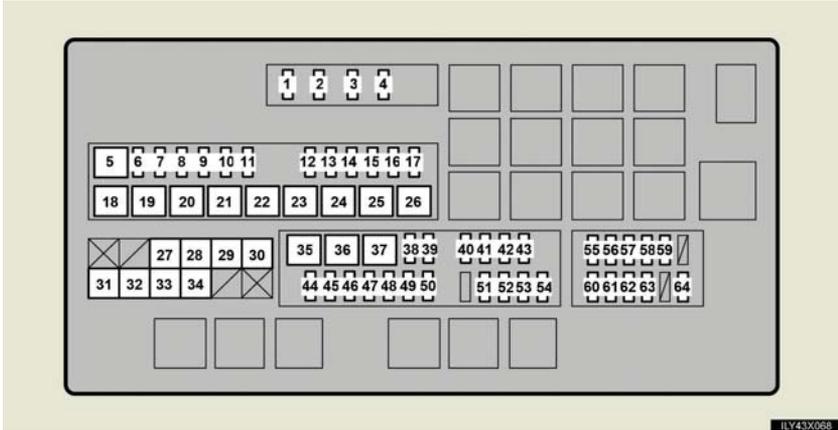
Contact your Lexus dealer.

Type D



Fuse layout and amperage ratings

■ Engine compartment



Fuse		Amperage	Circuit
1	A/F	15 A	Exhaust system
2	HORN	10 A	Horn
3	EFI MAIN	25 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system, EFI NO.2, exhaust system
4	IG2 MAIN	30 A	Injector, ignition, meter
5	RR A/C	50 A	No circuit
6	SEAT-A/C LH	25 A	Seat heater and ventilators
7	RR S/HTR	20 A	Rear seat heater
8	DEICER	20 A	Windshield wiper de-icer
9	CDS FAN	25 A	Condenser fan
10	TOW TAIL	30 A	Towing tail light system

	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
11	RR P/SEAT	30 A	Second seat adjustment
12	ALT-CDS	10 A	Alternator condenser
13	FR FOG	15 A	Front fog lights
14	SECURITY	5 A	Security horn
15	SEAT-A/C RH	25 A	Seat heater and ventilators
16	STOP	15 A	Stoptlights, high mounted stoplight, trailer brake system, towing converter, ABS, VSC, main body ECU, EFI
17	TOW BRK	30 A	Trailer brake system
18	RR AUTO A/C	50 A	Rear blower control
19	PTC-1	50 A	PTC heater
20	PTC-2	50 A	PTC heater
21	PTC-3	50 A	PTC heater
22	RH-J/B	40 A	Cowl side junction block RH
23	SUB BATT	40 A	Towing
24	VGRS	40 A	VGRS ECU
25	H-LP CLN	30 A	Headlight cleaner
26	DEFOG	30 A	Rear window defogger
27	AHC	60 A	Active height control
28	HTR	50 A	Blower controller
29	PBD	30 A	Power back door ECU
30	LH-J/B	150 A	Cowl side junction block LH

## 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

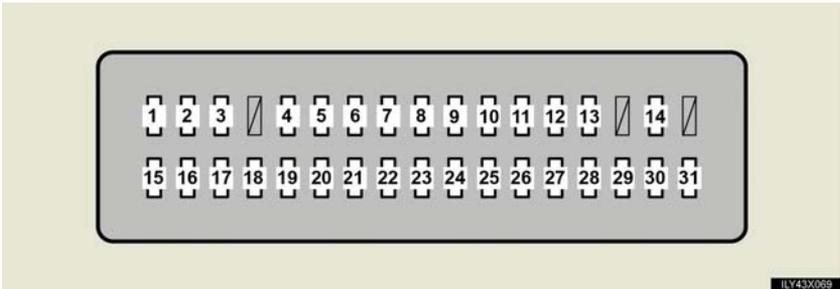
Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
31	ALT	180 A	Each fuse
32	A/PUMP NO.1	50 A	Air injection driver
33	A/PUMP NO.2	50 A	Air injection driver2
34	MAIN	40 A	Headlight, daytime running light system
35	ABS1	50 A	ABS
36	ABS2	30 A	ABS
37	ST	30 A	Starter system
38	IMB	7.5 A	ID code box, smart access system with push-button start
39	AM2	5 A	Main body ECU
40	DOME2	7.5 A	Vanity lights, overhead module
41	ECU-B2	5 A	Driving position memory system, power back door ECU, third seat adjustment
42	TEL	5 A	Bus buffer, Lexus link system
43	RSE	7.5 A	Rear seat entertainment system
44	TOWING	30 A	Towing converter
45	DOOR NO.2	25 A	Main body ECU
46	STR LOCK	20 A	Steering lock system
47	TURN-HAZ	15 A	Gauges and meters, front turn signal lights, rear turn signal lights, towing converter

	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
48	EFI MAIN2	20 A	Fuel pump
49	ETCS	10 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system
50	ALT-S	5 A	IC-ALT
51	AMP	30 A	Audio system, radio receiver assem- bly
52	RAD NO.1	10 A	Radio receiver assembly, satellite radio, parking assist system
53	ECU-B1	5 A	Smart access system with push-button start, overhead module, yaw rate & G sensor, tilt and telescopic steering, gauges and meters, cool box, gateway ECU, steering sensor, VGRS
54	DOME1	5 A	Illuminated entry system
55	HEAD LH	15 A	Headlight high beam (left)
56	HEAD LL	15 A	Headlight low beam (left)
57	INJ	10 A	Injector, ignition
58	MET	5 A	Gauges and meters
59	IGN	10 A	Circuit open, SRS air bag system, gateway ECU, occupant detection ECU, smart access system with push- button start, ABS, VSC, steering lock system, Lexus link system
60	HEAD RH	15 A	Headlight high beam (right)

### 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
61	HEADRL	15 A	Headlight low beams (right)
62	EFI NO.2	7.5 A	Air injection system, air flow meter
63	RR A/C NO.2	7.5 A	No circuit
64	DEF NO.2	5 A	Outside rear view mirror heater

## ■ Driver's side instrument panel



Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	CIG	15 A	Cigarette lighter
2	BK/UP LP	10 A	Back-up lights, trailer
3	ACC	7.5 A	Stereo component amplifier assembly, parking assist system, multi-display assembly, gateway ECU, radio receiver assembly, main body ECU, Lexus link system, mirror ECU, rear seat entertainment system, satellite radio, smart access system with push-button start

### 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

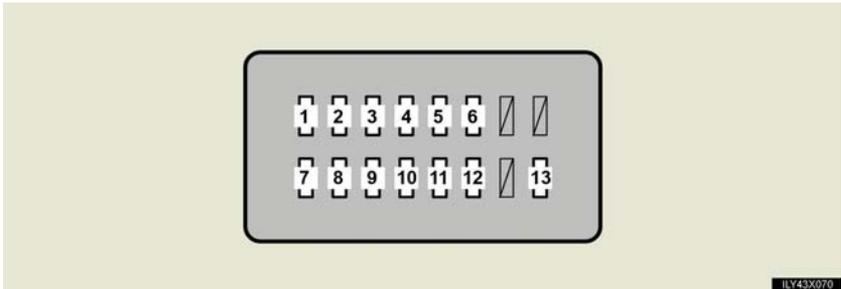
Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
4	PANEL	10 A	Ashtray, trailer brake system, cigarette lighter, cool box, center differential lock, driving mode switches, multi-information display, seat heater and ventilator switches, glove box light, headlight unit, headlight cleaner switch, driving position memory switches, outside rear view mirror switches, overhead module, roll sensing of curtain shield airbags off switch, rear heater panel, shift lever switch, power back door main switch, camera switch, VSC OFF switch, steering switch, console switch, instrument panel light control switch
5	ECU-IG NO.2	10 A	Air conditioning system, rear heater panel, overhead module, ABS, VSC, steering sensor, yaw rate & G sensor, main body ECU, stoplights, moon roof, anti-glare inside rear view mirror
6	WINCH	5 A	No circuit
7	A/C IG	10 A	Cool box, condenser fan, cooler compressor, rear window defogger, exhaust system
8	TAIL	15 A	Tail lights, license plate lights, front fog lights, front position lights, side marker lights

	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
9	WIPER	30 A	Windshield wiper
10	WSH	20 A	Windshield washer
11	RR WIPER	15 A	Rear wiper
12	4WD	20 A	Four-wheel drive system
13	LH-IG	5 A	Alternator, towing, seat heater and ventilators, windshield wiper de-icer, seat belt pretensioners, emergency flasher, inverter switch, shift lever switch
14	ECU-IG NO.1	5 A	ABS, VSC, tilt and telescopic steering, gateway ECU, shift lock system, parking assist system, cruise control switch, pre-collision system, headlight cleaner, multi-display assembly, rain-sensing windshield wiper, driving position memory system, power door lock system
15	S/ROOF	25 A	Moon roof
16	RR DOOR RH	20 A	Power windows
17	MIR	15 A	Mirror ECU, outside rear view mirror heater
18	RR DOOR LH	20 A	Power windows
19	FR DOOR LH	20 A	Power windows
20	FR DOOR RH	20 A	Power windows

### 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
21	RR FOG	7.5 A	No circuit
22	A/C	7.5 A	Air conditioning system
23	AM1	5 A	No circuit
24	TI & TE	15 A	Tilt and telescopic steering
25	FR P/SEAT RH	30 A	Front seat adjustment
26	PWR OUTLET	15 A	Power outlet
27	OBD	7.5 A	Diagnosis
28	PSB	30 A	Pre-collision system
29	DOOR NO.1	25 A	Main body ECU
30	FR P/SEAT LH	30 A	Front seat adjustment
31	INVERTER	15 A	Inverter

## ■ Passenger's side instrument panel



Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	RSF LH	30 A	Third seat adjustment (left)
2	B/DR CLSR RH	30 A	Rear ECU
3	B/DR CLSR LH	30 A	Rear ECU
4	RSF RH	30 A	Third seat adjustment (right)
5	DOOR DL	15 A	No circuit
6	AHC-B	20 A	Active height control
7	AHC-B NO.2	10 A	Active height control
8	ECU-IG NO.4	5 A	VGRS, power back door, rear ECU, active height control, third seat adjustment, tire pressure monitor ECU
9	SEAT-A/C FAN	10 A	Ventilators
10	SEAT-HTR	20 A	Seat heaters
11	AFS	5 A	Adaptive front lighting system
12	ECU-IG NO.3	5 A	Adaptive front lighting system, radar cruise control system
13	TV	10 A	Multi-display assembly

### ■ After a fuse is replaced

- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P. 615)
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

### ■ If there is an overload in the circuits

The fuses are designed to blow before the entire wiring harness is damaged.

### CAUTION

#### ■ To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire

Observe the following precautions.

Failing to do so may cause damage, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent.  
Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.  
This can cause extensive damage or even fire.
- Do not modify the fuse or the fuse box.

### NOTICE

#### ■ Before replacing fuses

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Lexus dealer.

## 4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

# Light bulbs

You may replace the following bulbs yourself. The difficulty level of replacement varies depending on the bulb. If necessary bulb replacement seems difficult to perform, contact your Lexus dealer.

For more information about replacing other light bulbs, contact your Lexus dealer.

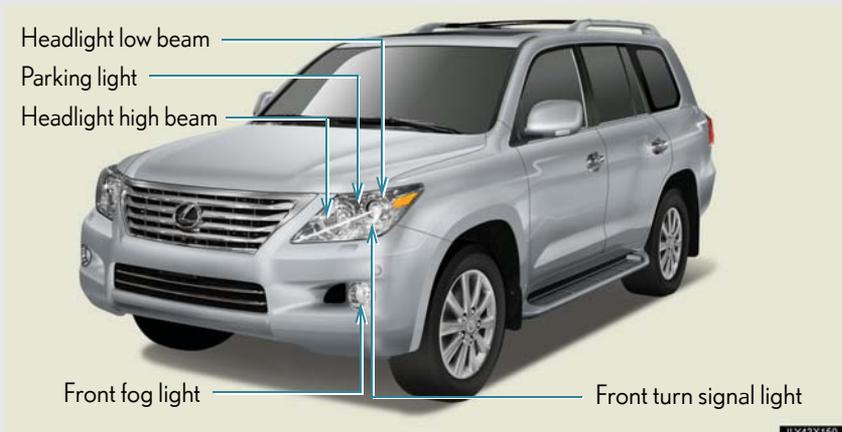
### ■ Prepare a replacement light bulb.

Check the wattage of the light bulb being replaced. (→P. 691)

### ■ Remove the engine compartment cover.

→P. 562

### ■ Front bulb locations



### ■ Rear bulb locations

Rear turn signal light — Back-up light



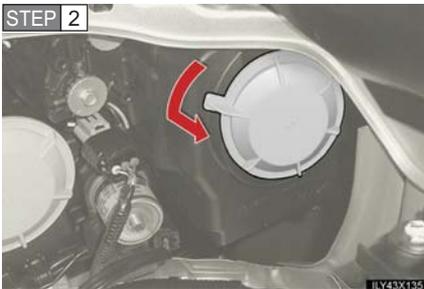
ILY43X148

## Replacing light bulbs

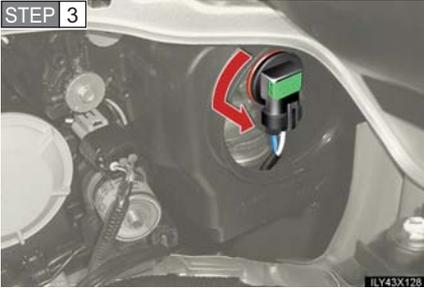
### ■ Headlight low beams



Left side only: Remove the securing bolt and move the washer fluid filler opener.



Turn the cover counterclockwise and remove it.



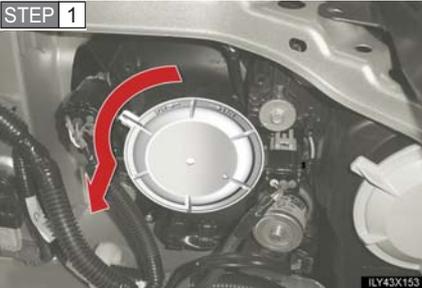
Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.



Unplug the connector while depressing the lock release.

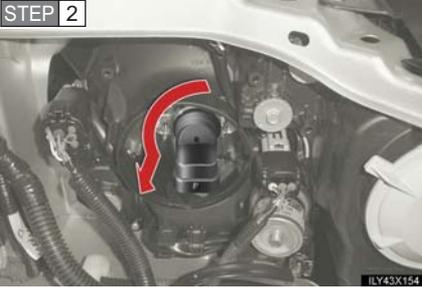
## ■ Headlight high beam

STEP 1



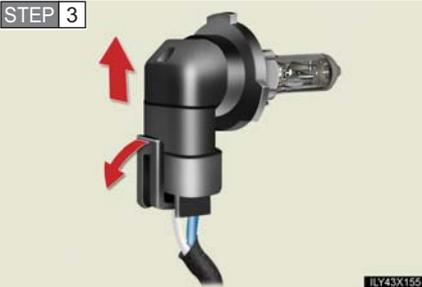
Turn the cover counterclockwise and remove it.

STEP 2



Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

STEP 3



Unplug the connector while depressing the lock release.

### ■ Front fog lights

STEP 1



Remove the fender liner bolts, loose the fender liner nut and remove the fender liner.

1 Fender liner nut

2 Fender liner bolts

STEP 2



Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

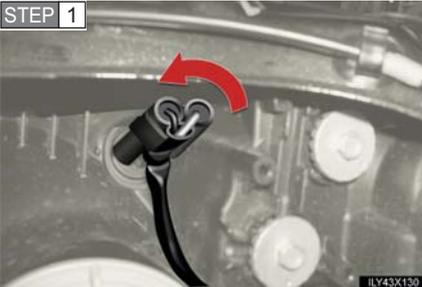
STEP 3



Unplug the connector while pushing the lock release.

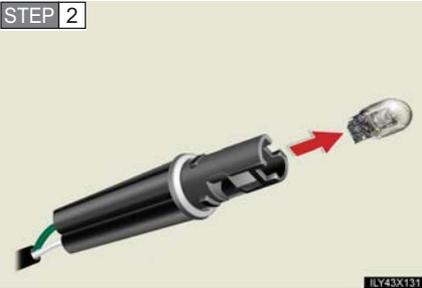
## ■ Parking lights

STEP 1



Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

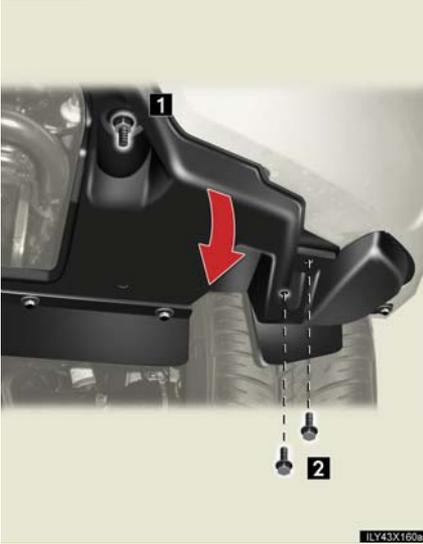
STEP 2



Remove the light bulb.

### ■ Front turn signal lights

STEP 1

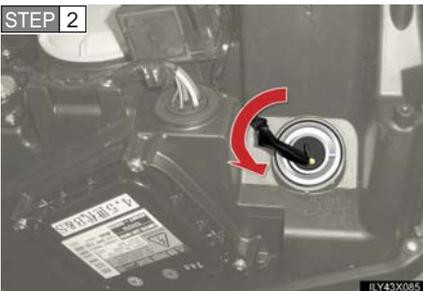


Remove the fender liner bolts, loose the fender liner nut and remove the fender liner.

1 Fender liner nut

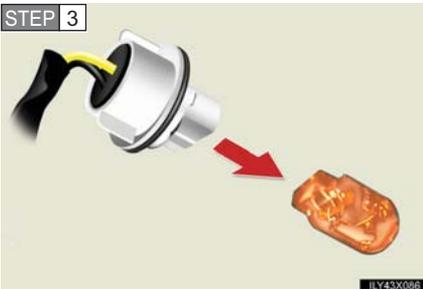
2 Fender liner bolts

STEP 2



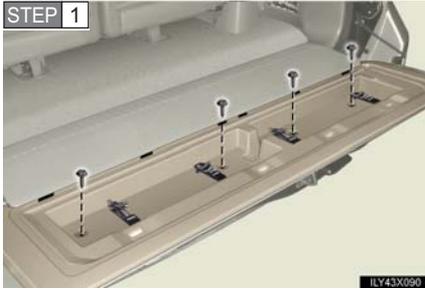
Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

STEP 3

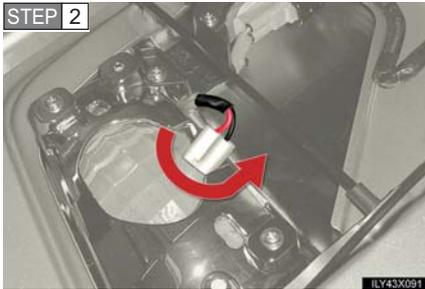


Remove the light bulb.

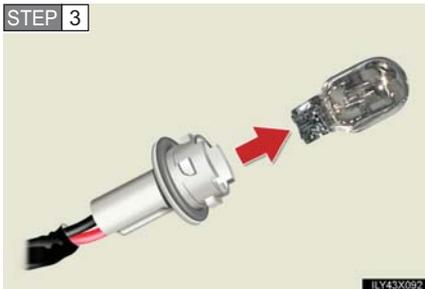
## ■ Back-up lights



Open the back door and remove the bolts and the cover.



Turn the bulb bases counterclockwise.

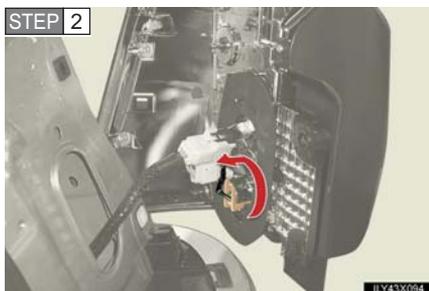


Remove the light bulb.

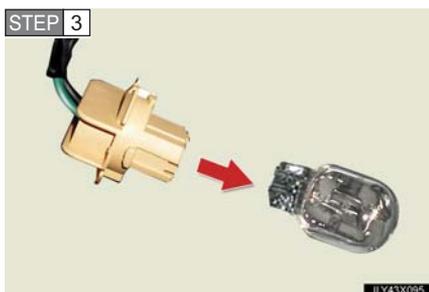
### ■ Rear turn signal lights



Open the back door and remove the bolts and lamp assembly.



Turn the bulb bases counterclockwise.



Remove the light bulb.

### ■ Lights other than the above

If any of the lights listed below has burnt out, have it replaced by your Lexus dealer.

- Front side marker lights
- High mounted stoplight
- Stop/tail lights
- Tail lights
- Rear side marker lights
- License plate lights

---

### ■ Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens

Contact your Lexus dealer, for more information in the following situations. Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction.

- Large drops of water are built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the headlight.

### ■ LED light bulbs

The front side marker lights, stop/tail lights, tail lights, rear side marker lights, high mounted stoplight and license plate lights consists of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer to have the light replaced.

 **CAUTION**

■ **Replacing light bulbs**

- Turn off the headlights. Do not attempt to replace the bulb immediately after turning off the headlights.  
The bulbs become very hot and may cause burns.
- Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. Hold the bulb by the plastic or metal portion.  
If the bulb is scratched or dropped it may blow out or crack.
- Fully install light bulbs and any parts used to secure them. Failing to do so may result in heat damage, fire, or water entering the headlight unit. This may damage the headlights or cause condensation to build up on the lens.
- Do not attempt to repair or disassemble light bulbs, connectors, electric circuits or component parts.  
Doing so may result in death or serious injury due to electric shock.

■ **To prevent damage or fire**

Make sure bulbs are fully seated and locked.

## 5-1. Essential information

### If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by your Lexus dealer, such as or a commercial towing service, using a lift-type truck or a flat bed truck.

Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.

Use a towing dolly or flat bed truck.

#### Before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact your Lexus dealer, before towing.

- The engine is running, but the vehicle will not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

## Emergency towing

If a tow truck is not available, in an emergency your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the following part. This should only be attempted on hard, surfaced roads for short distances at low speeds.

A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

### ► Towing hook



### ■ Emergency towing procedure

- STEP 1** The "ENGINE START STOP" switch must be in ACCESSORY mode (engine off) or IGNITION ON mode (engine running).
- STEP 2** Put the four-wheel drive control switch in "H4". (The center differential is unlocked.)
- STEP 3** Put the vehicle height in the "N" mode and press the height control switch to turn off the AHC.
- STEP 4** Put the shift lever in "N".
- STEP 5** Release the parking brake.

 **CAUTION**

■ **While towing**

- Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.  
Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which place excessive stress on the emergency towing hook and the cables or chains.
- If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

 **NOTICE**

■ **To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission**

- Never tow this vehicle wheels on the ground.
- Use only the front emergency towing hooks or towing eyelets when towing your vehicle.

## Towing with a sling-type truck



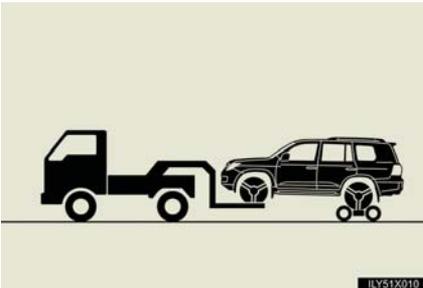
### NOTICE

#### ■ To prevent body damage

Do not tow with a sling-type truck, either from the front or rear.

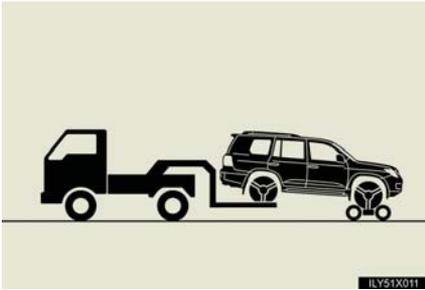
## Towing with a wheel lift-type truck

### ► From front



Use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

► From rear



Use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

 NOTICE

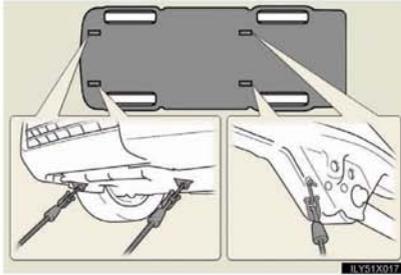
■ **To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission**

Never tow this vehicle wheels on the ground.

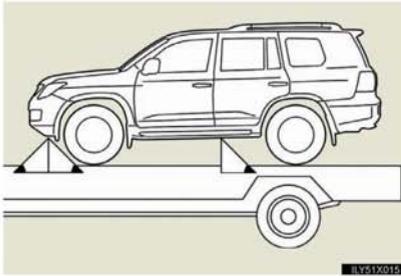
■ **To prevent damaging the vehicle**

- Do not tow the vehicle with the “ENGINE START STOP” switch off.  
The steering lock mechanism is not strong enough to hold the front wheel straight.
- When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.

## Using a flat bed truck



If your Lexus is transported by a flat bed truck, it should be tied down at the locations shown in the illustration. When attaching the hooks to the rear of the vehicle, make sure to attach them to the inside of the vehicle.



If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45°.

Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.

### NOTICE

#### ■ To avoid serious damage to your vehicle



Do not use the rear emergency towing hook.

## 5-1. Essential information

### If you think something is wrong

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

#### ■ Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle  
(Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge needle continually points higher than normal
- Engine oil pressure gauge continually points lower than normal.
- Voltmeter continually points higher or lower than normal.

#### ■ Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the engine

#### ■ Operational symptoms

- Engine missing, stumbling or running rough
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

## 5-1. Essential information

# Fuel pump shut off system

To minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or an air bag inflates upon collision, the fuel pump shut off system stops supplying fuel to the engine.

Follow the procedure below to restart the engine after the system is activated.

**STEP 1** Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to ACCESSORY mode or OFF.

**STEP 2** Restart the engine.



### NOTICE

#### ■ Before starting the engine

Inspect the ground under the vehicle.

If you find that fuel has leaked on to the ground, the fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Do not restart the engine.

## 5-1. Essential information

### Event data recorder

Your vehicle has computers that monitor and control certain aspects of your vehicle. These computers assist in driving and maintaining optimal vehicle performance.

Besides storing data useful for troubleshooting, there is a system to record data in a crash or a near car crash event. This is called an Event Data Recorder (EDR).

#### In a crash or a near car crash event

The SRS airbag sensor assembly contains the EDR. In a crash or a near car crash event, this device may record some or all of the following information:

- Engine speed
- Whether the brake pedal was applied or not
- Vehicle speed
- To what extent the accelerator pedal was depressed
- Position of the transmission shift lever
- Whether the driver and front passenger wore seat belts or not
- Driver's seat position
- Front passenger's occupant classification
- SRS airbag deployment data
- SRS airbag system diagnostic data

The information above is intended to be used for the purpose of improving vehicle safety performance. Unlike general data recorders, the EDR does not record sound data such as conversation between passengers.

## Disclosure of the data

Lexus will not disclose the data recorded in an EDR to a third party except when:

- An agreement from the vehicle's owner (or the leasing company for a leased vehicle) is obtained
- Officially requested by the police or other authorities
- Used as a defense for Lexus in a law suit
- Ordered by a court

However, if necessary Lexus will:

- Use the data for research on Lexus vehicle safety performance
- Disclose the data to a third party for research purposes without disclosing details of the vehicle owner, and only when it is deemed necessary
- Disclose summarized data cleared of vehicle identification information to a non-Lexus organization for research purposes

## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

### If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds...

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights turn on or flash. If a light turns on or flashes, but then turns off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system.

**Stop the vehicle immediately. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.**

The following warning indicates a possible problem in the brake system. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
 (U.S.A.)	<b>Brake system warning light (warning buzzer)*</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Low brake fluid</li><li>• Malfunction in the brake system</li></ul> This light also comes on when the parking brake is not released. If the light turns off after the parking brake is fully released the system is operating normally.
 (Canada)	

\*: Parking brake engaged warning buzzer:

A buzzer sounds to indicate that the parking brake is still engaged (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 3 mph [5 km/h]).

**Stop the vehicle immediately.**

The following warnings indicate the possibility of damage to the vehicle that may lead to an accident. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
	<b>Charging system warning light</b> Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system.

### Have the vehicle inspected immediately.

Failing to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer, immediately.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
 (U.S.A.)  (Canada)	<b>Malfunction indicator lamp</b> Indicates a malfunction in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The emission control system;</li> <li>• The electronic engine control system;</li> <li>• The electronic throttle control system;</li> <li>• The electronic automatic transmission control system.</li> </ul>
	<b>SRS warning light</b> Indicates a malfunction in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The SRS air bag system;</li> <li>• The seat belt pretensioner system.</li> </ul>
 (U.S.A.)  (Canada)	<b>ABS warning light</b> Indicates a malfunction in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The ABS;</li> <li>• The brake assist system</li> </ul>
	<b>Pre-crash safety system warning light (if equipped)</b> Indicates a malfunction in the pre-crash safety system.

**Follow the correction procedures.**

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning light turns off.

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	<p><b>Open door warning light (warning buzzer)*1</b> Indicates that a door is not fully closed.</p>	<p>Check that all doors are closed.</p>
	<p><b>Low fuel level warning light</b> Indicates that remaining fuel is about 4.0 gal. (15.0 L, 3.3 Imp. gal.) or less</p>	<p>Refuel the vehicle.</p>
	<p><b>Driver's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*2</b> Warns the driver to fasten his/her seat belt.</p>	<p>Fasten the seat belt.</p>
<p><b>PASSENGER</b>  (on the center panel)</p>	<p><b>Front passenger's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*2</b> Warns the front passenger to fasten his/her seat belt.</p>	<p>Fasten the seat belt.</p>
	<p><b>Tire pressure warning light</b></p>	
	<p>When the light comes on: Low tire inflation pressure.</p>	<p>Adjust the tire inflation pressure.</p>
<p>When the light comes on after blinking for 1 minute: Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system.</p>	<p>Have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.</p>	

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	<p><b>Unengaged “Park” warning light</b> Indicates that the transmission “Park” mechanism is not engaged.</p>	<p>Shift four-wheel drive control out of “N”. (→P. 249)</p>
	<p><b>Master warning light</b> A buzzer sounds and the warning light comes on or flashes to indicate that the master warning system has detected a malfunction.</p>	<p>Take appropriate action in accordance with the message displayed on the multi-information display.</p>

\*1: Open door warning buzzer:

The open door warning buzzer sounds to alert one or more of the doors is not fully closed (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 3 mph [5 km/h]).

\*2: Driver’s and front passenger’s seat belt reminders:

The driver’s and front passenger’s seat belts reminder sounds to alert the driver and front passenger that his/her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds for 10 seconds after the vehicle has reached a speed of at least 12 mph (20 km/h). Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 20 more seconds.

### ■ If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving

The malfunction indicator lamp will come on if the fuel tank becomes completely empty. If the fuel tank is empty, refuel the vehicle immediately. The malfunction indicator lamp will go off after several trips.

If the malfunction indicator lamp does not go off, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

### ■ If the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light or the center differential lock indicator light blinks

Take the specified steps.(→P. 252)

If the brake system warning light or the malfunction indicator light also comes on, or the low speed four-wheel drive indicator light or the center differential lock indicator light continues to blink after taking the specified steps, there may be a malfunction in the engine, the brake system or the four-wheel drive system. In this case, you may not be able to transfer between “H4” and “L4” modes, and the center differential lock may not be able to be locked or unlocked. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer, immediately.

### ■ Front passenger detection sensor and passenger seat belt reminder

- If luggage is placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash, even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.
- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

### ■ SRS warning light

This warning light system monitors the following:

- The airbag sensor assembly
- Front airbag sensors
- The curtain shield airbag sensors
- The side and curtain shield airbag sensors
- The seat belt buckle switches
- The driver's seat position sensor
- The inflators
- The interconnecting wiring and power sources
- The front passenger occupant classification ECU
- "AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights
- The seatbelt pretensioners
- The roll sensing of curtain shield airbags off indicator light

### ■ Changing the engine oil

- Make sure to reset oil change system

### ■ When the tire pressure warning light comes on

Check the tire inflation pressure and adjust to the appropriate level. Pushing the tire pressure warning reset switch does not turn off the tire pressure warning light.

### ■ The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes

The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks or tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

### ■ When a tire is replaced with a spare tire

The spare tire is also equipped with the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. The tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire inflation pressure of the spare tire is low. If a tire goes flat, even though the flat tire is replaced with the spare tire, the tire pressure warning light does not turn off. Replace the spare tire with the repaired tire and adjust the proper tire inflation pressure. The tire pressure warning light will turn off after a few minutes.

### ■ If the tire pressure warning system is inoperative

The tire pressure warning system will become inoperative in the following conditions: (When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If tires not equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are used.
- If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer.
- If the tire inflation pressure is more than 73 psi (500 kPa, 5.1 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup> or bar).

The tire pressure warning system may become inoperative in the following conditions: (When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If electronic devices or facilities using similar radio wave frequencies are nearby.
- If a radio set at similar frequencies is in use in the vehicle.
- If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed.
- If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, in particular around the wheels or wheel housings.
- If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used. (Even if you use Lexus wheels, the tire pressure warning system may not work properly with some types of tires.)
- If tire chains are used.
- If the spare tire is in a location subject to poor radio wave signal reception.
- If a large metallic object which can interfere with signal reception is put in the luggage compartment.

### ■ If the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute frequently

If the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking 1 minute frequently when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, have it checked by Lexus dealer.

 **CAUTION****■ If the tire pressure warning light comes on**

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

- Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If the tire is flat, change to the spare tire and have the flat tire repaired by the nearest Lexus dealer.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

**■ If a blowout or sudden air loss should occur**

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

 **CAUTION**

■ **Maintenance of the tires**

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label (tire and load information label). (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label [tire and load information label], you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS-tire pressure warning system) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light).

 **CAUTION**

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light). When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) to continue to function properly.

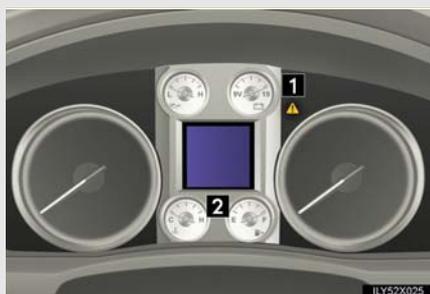
 **NOTICE****■ Precaution when installing a different tire**

When a tire of a different specification or maker is installed, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

### If a warning message is displayed

The multi-information display shows warnings of system malfunctions, incorrectly performed operations, or shows messages that indicate a need for maintenance. When a message is shown, perform the correction procedure appropriate to the message.



#### 1 Master warning light

The master warning light comes on or flashes when a message is being shown on the multi-information display.

#### 2 Multi-information display

If any of the warning messages is shown again after its correction procedure has been performed, contact your Lexus dealer.

### Messages and warnings

The warning lights and warning buzzers operate as follows depending on the content of the message. If a message indicates the need for inspection by a dealer, have the vehicle inspected immediately by your Lexus dealer.

	System warning light	Warning buzzer <sup>*</sup>	Warning
Comes on	—	Sounds	Indicates an important situation, such as when a system related to driving is malfunctioning or that danger may result if the correction procedure is not performed.
—	Comes on or flashes	Sounds	Indicates an important situation, such as when the system shown on the multi-information display may be malfunctioning.
Comes on	—	Does not sound	Indicates a condition, such as malfunction of electrical components, their condition, or indicates the need for maintenance.
Flashes	—	Does not sound	Indicates a situation, such as when an operation has been performed incorrectly, or indicates how to perform an operation correctly.

\*: A buzzer sounds first time a message is shown on the multi-information display.

### ■ Resetting the tire pressure warning data

After adjusting the tire inflation pressure, be sure to initialize the data. (→P. 581)

If the message remains on, the system may have malfunctioned. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

### ■ Warning messages in the cruise control mode

In the following instances, there is a possibility that the approach warning will not illuminate even when vehicle-to-vehicle distance is closing.

- When the speed of the vehicle ahead matches or exceeds your vehicle's speed.
- When the vehicle ahead is traveling at an extremely slow speed.
- Immediately after the cruise control speed has been set.
- At the instant the accelerator is applied.

### NOTICE

#### ■ Engine oil maintenance message

The warning message is based on the projected driving range after engine oil maintenance message is reset.

The system does not monitor the purity of the engine oil.

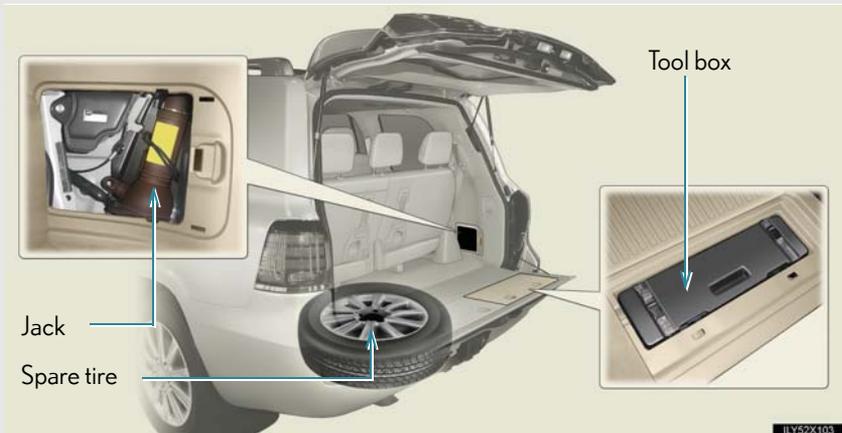
## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If you have a flat tire

Remove the flat tire and replace it with the spare provided.

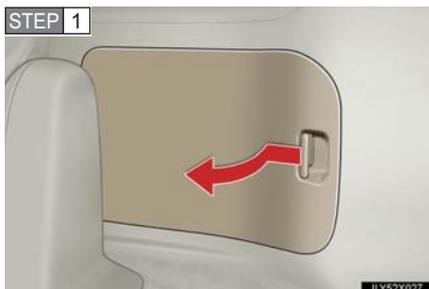
### ■ Before jacking up the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to “P”.
- Turn off the active height control suspension. (→P. 235)
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers.

### ■ Location of the spare tire, jack and tools



## Taking out the jack



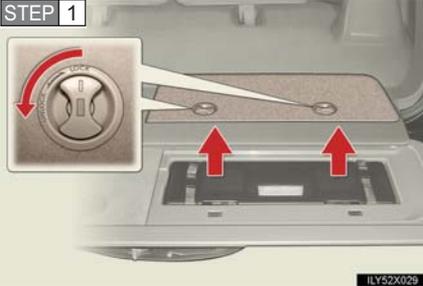
Remove the cover.



**1** Loosen  
**2** Tighten  
Loosen and remove the jack.

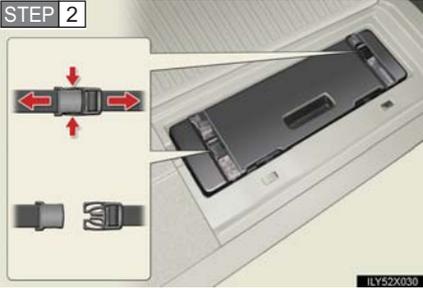
## Taking out the tool box

STEP 1



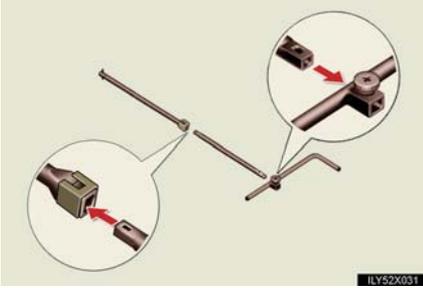
Remove the cover.

STEP 2



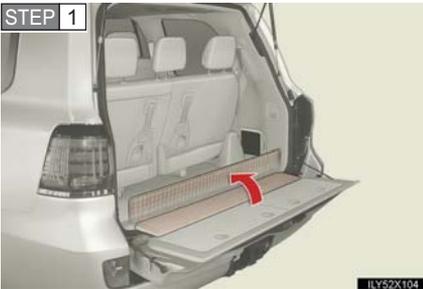
Take out the tool box.

### Assemble the jack handle (in the tool box)



Assemble the jack handle extension as shown. Be sure to tighten the bolt securely.

### Taking out the spare tire



Remove the cover.



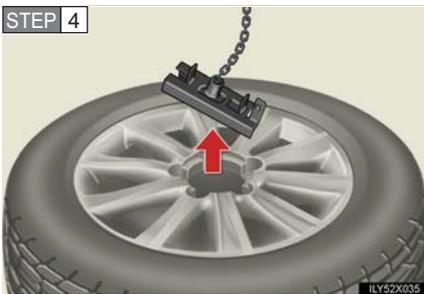
Insert the jack handle extension into the lowering screw.

- 1** Lower
- 2** Raise

Place a rag under the jack handle extension to protect the back door.



Lower the spare tire completely to the ground.



Pull out the spare tire and remove the holding bracket.

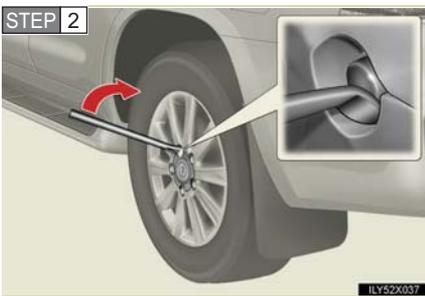
## Replacing a flat tire



Chock the tires.

## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

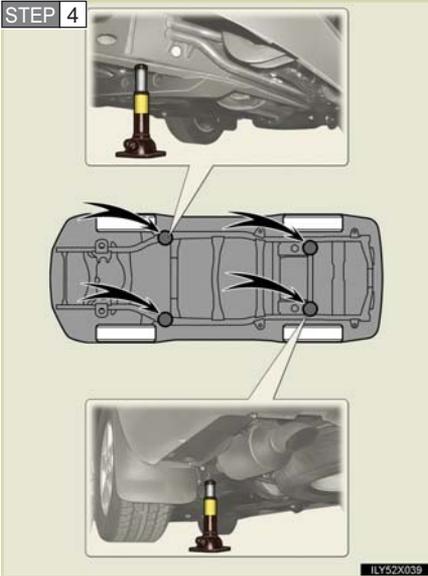
Flat tire		Wheel chock positions
Front	Left-hand side	Behind the rear right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	Behind the rear left-hand side tire
Rear	Left-hand side	In front of the front right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	In front of the front left-hand side tire



Pry off the wheel ornament, using the beveled end of the wheel ornament remover as shown.



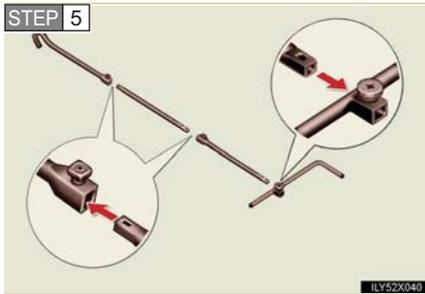
Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).



Position the jack at the jack points as shown.

Front - Under the chassis frame side rail

Rear - Under the rear axle housing

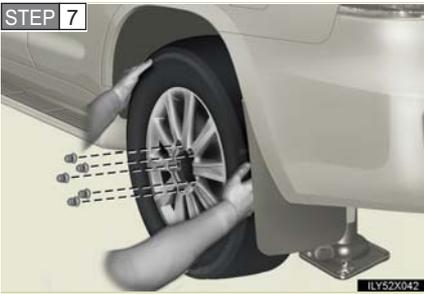


Assemble the jack handle extension as shown. Be sure to tighten each bolt securely.

## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency



Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.

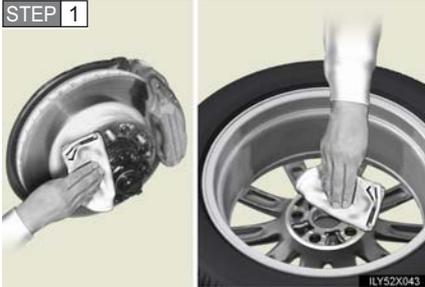


Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.

## Installing the spare tire

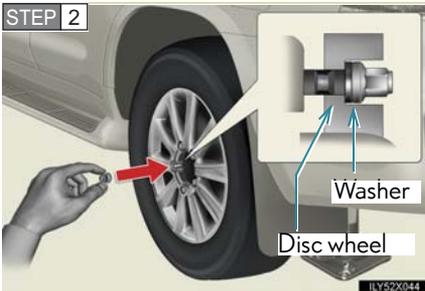
### STEP 1



Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, and the tire may come off the vehicle.

### STEP 2



Install the spare tire and loosely tighten each nut by hand to approximately the same amount.

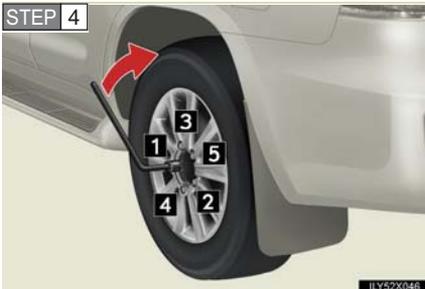
Turn the nut washers until they come into contact with the disc wheel.

### STEP 3



Lower the vehicle.

### STEP 4



Firmly tighten each nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

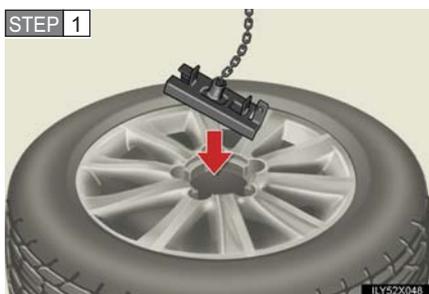
#### Tightening torque:

97 ft•lbf (131 N•m, 13.4 kgf•m)



Reinstall the wheel ornament.

### Stowing the flat/spare tire, jack and tools



Lay down the tire with the outer side facing up, and install the holding bracket.

**STEP 2** Raise the tire.

Vehicles with kinetic dynamic suspension: Pull the tire towards the rear of the vehicle when raising. After raising, visually check that the tire is not interfering with suspension components.

**STEP 3** Stow the tools and jack securely, and replace all covers.

---

#### ■ After completing the tire change

The tire pressure warning system must be reset. (→P. 581)

 **CAUTION****■ Using the tire jack**

Improper use of the tire jack may lead to death or injuries due to the vehicle suddenly falling off the jack.

- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire. Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Always check that the tire jack is securely set to the jack point.
- Be sure to turn off the active height control suspension and stop the engine.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle supported by a jack.
- Do not start or run the engine while your vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is in it.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.

Take particular care when lowering the vehicle to ensure that no one working on or near the vehicle will be injured.

**■ Using the jack handle**

Tighten all the jack handle bolts securely using a Phillips-head screwdriver, to prevent the extension parts from coming apart unexpectedly.

 **CAUTION**

■ **Replacing a flat tire**

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury.

- Lower the spare tire completely to the ground before removing it from under the vehicle.
- Do not try to remove the wheel ornament by hand. Take due care in handling the ornament to avoid unexpected personal injury.
- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.  
The oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen, causing a serious accident.  
Remove any oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
- Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 97 ft•lbf (131 N•m, 13.4 kgf•m) as soon as possible after changing wheels.  
Failure to follow these precautions could cause the nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, which could lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.
- Do not attach a heavily damaged wheel ornament, as it may fly off the wheel while the vehicle is moving.

 NOTICE**■ Do not drive the vehicle with a flat tire.**

Do not continue driving with a flat tire.

Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair.

**■ When stowing the flat tire**

Ensure that there is no object caught between the tire and the vehicle underbody.

**■ When replacing the tires**

- When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.
- Replace the grommets for the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters as well.

**■ To avoid damaging the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

Do not use liquid sealants on flat tires.

## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

### If the engine will not start

If the engine still does not start after following the correct starting procedure (→P. 166) or releasing the steering lock (→P. 168), confirm the following points.

#### ■ The engine will not start even when the starter motor operates normally.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem.

- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.  
Refuel the vehicle.

- The engine may be flooded.

Try to restart the engine once more following correct starting procedures. (→P. 166)

- There may be a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system.  
(→P. 108)

#### ■ The starter motor turns over slowly, the interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem.

- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 672)

- The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.

#### ■ The starter motor does not turn over.

The engine starting system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as an open circuit or a blown fuse. However, an interim measure is available to start the engine. (→P. 665)

■ **The starter motor does not turn over, the interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound.**

One of the following may be the cause of the problem.

- One or both of the battery terminals may be disconnected.
- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 672)
- There may be a malfunction in the steering lock system.

Contact your Lexus dealer, if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

### Emergency start function

When the engine does not start, the following steps can be used as an interim measure to start the engine if the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is functioning normally.

**STEP 1** Set the parking brake.

**STEP 2** Put the shift lever in “P”.

**STEP 3** Set the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to the ACCESSORY mode.

**STEP 4** Push and hold the “ENGINE START STOP” switch about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal firmly.

Even if the engine can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

### If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P

If the shift lever cannot be shifted with your foot on the brake, there may be a problem with the shift lock system (a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever). Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer, immediately.

The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted.

**STEP 1** Set the parking brake.

**STEP 2** Set the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to the ACCESSORY mode.

**STEP 3** Depress the brake pedal.



Pry the cover up with a flathead screw driver or equivalent.



Press the shift lock override button.

The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.

## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

### If you lose your keys

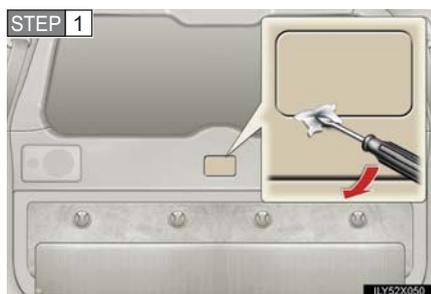
New genuine Lexus keys can be made by your Lexus dealer, using one of the other keys and the key number stamped on your key number plate.

## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

### If you cannot operate back door opener

If the back door opener does not operate, there may be a problem with the back door opener system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the back door can be opened from the inside.



Remove the cover on the back door trim.



Remove the screw and cover.  
(Vehicle without power back door)



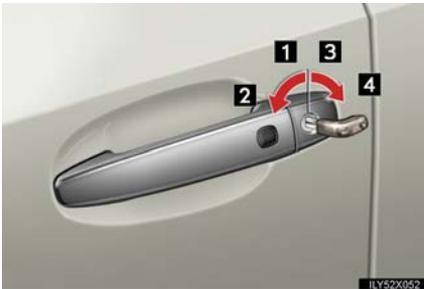
Push the lever with the back door motor, open the back door.

## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

### If the electronic key does not operate properly

If communication between the electronic key and vehicle is interrupted (→P. 34) or the electronic key cannot be used because the battery is depleted, the smart entry & start system and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors can be opened or the engine can be started by following the procedure below.

#### Locking and unlocking the doors and key linked functions



- 1 Locks all doors
- 2 Closes the windows/moon roof (turn and hold)
- 3 Unlocks the door  
Turning the key rearward unlocks the driver's door. Turning the key once again unlocks the other doors.
- 4 Opens the windows/moon roof (turn and hold)

## Changing “ENGINE START STOP” switch modes and starting the engine

**STEP 1** Shift the shift lever to “P” and apply the brakes.

**STEP 2**



Touch the Lexus emblem side of the electronic key (including the card key) to the “ENGINE START STOP” switch.

An alarm will sound to indicate that the start function cannot detect the electronic key that is touched to the “ENGINE START STOP” switch if any of the doors is opened while the key is touched to the switch.

**STEP 3** To change “ENGINE START STOP” switch modes: Within 5 seconds of the buzzer sounding, release the brake pedal and press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch. Modes can be changed each time the switch is pressed. (→P.167)

To start the engine: Press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch within 5 seconds after the buzzer sounds, keeping the brake pedal depressed.

In the event that the “ENGINE START STOP” switch still cannot be operated, contact your Lexus dealer.

---

**■ Stopping the engine**

Shift the shift lever to “P” and press the “ENGINE START STOP” switch as you normally do when stopping the engine.

**■ Replacing the key battery**

As this procedure is a temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic battery be replaced immediately when the battery depletes. (→P. 597)

**■ Alarm**

Using the mechanical key to lock the doors will not set the alarm system.

If a door is unlocked using the mechanical key when the alarm system is set, the alarm may be triggered. (→P. 110)

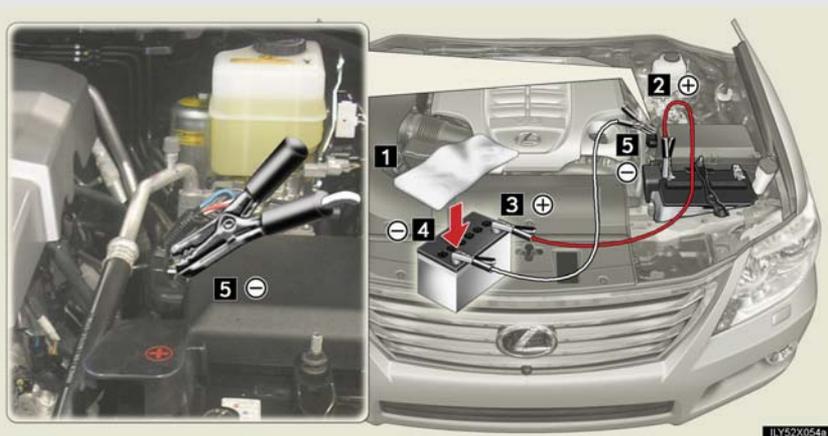
## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If the battery is discharged

The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the vehicle's battery is discharged.

You can call your Lexus dealer or qualified repair shop.

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a 12-volt battery, you can jump start your Lexus following the steps below.

**STEP 1** Connect the jumper cables.



- 1 If required, remove all vent plugs from the booster battery. Lay a cloth over the open vents on the booster battery. (This helps reduce the explosion hazard, personal injuries and burns.)
  - 2 Positive (+) battery terminal on your vehicle
  - 3 Positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle
  - 4 Negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle
  - 5 Connect the jumper cable to ground on your vehicle as shown in the illustration.
- STEP 2** Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain at that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery of your vehicle.
- STEP 3** Open and close any of the doors with the “ENGINE START STOP” switch off.
- STEP 4** Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to IGNITION ON mode, then start the vehicle’s engine.
- STEP 5** Once the vehicle’s engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order in which they were connected.

Once the engine starts, have the vehicle checked at your Lexus dealer, as soon as possible.

### ■ Starting the engine when the battery is discharged

The engine cannot be started by push-starting.

### ■ Avoiding a discharged battery

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the engine is turned off.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic, etc.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Avoiding battery fires or explosions

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery.

- Make sure the jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any part other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the jumper cables to come into contact with the “+” and “-” terminals.
- Do not allow open flame or use matches, cigarette lighters or smoke near the battery.

 **CAUTION****■ Battery precautions**

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery.

- When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- In the event that battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention.  
Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the battery.

 **NOTICE****■ When handling jumper cables**

Be careful that the jumper cables do not become tangled in the cooling fan or any of the belts when connecting or disconnecting them.

## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If your vehicle overheats

### If your engine overheats:

**STEP 1** Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system.

**STEP 2** Check to see if steam is coming out from under the hood.

If you see steam:

Stop the engine and carefully lift the hood.

If you do not see steam:

Leave the engine running and carefully lift the hood.

**STEP 3** Remove the engine compartment cover. (→P. 562)

**STEP 4** Check to see if the cooling fan is operating.

If the fan is operating:

Wait until the engine coolant temperature gauge begins to fall and then stop the engine.

If the fan is not operating:

Stop the engine and call your Lexus dealer.



After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, check the engine coolant level and inspect the radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.

## STEP 6



Add engine coolant if necessary.

Water can be used in an emergency if engine coolant is unavailable. (→P. 686)

Have the vehicle checked at the nearest your Lexus dealer, as soon as possible.

### ■ Overheating

If you observe the following, your vehicle may be overheating.

- The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone or a loss of power is experienced.
- Steam is coming from under the hood.

### ⚠ CAUTION

#### ■ To prevent an accident or injury when inspecting under the hood of your vehicle

- Keep hands and clothing away from the fan and other belts while the engine is running.
- Do not loosen the coolant reservoir cap while the engine and radiator are hot. Serious injury, such as burns, may result from hot coolant and steam released under pressure.

 NOTICE

■ **When adding engine coolant**

Wait until the engine has cooled down before adding engine coolant.

When adding coolant, do so slowly. Adding cool coolant to a hot engine too quickly can cause damage to the engine.

## 5-2. Steps to take in an emergency If the vehicle becomes stuck

Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow.

- STEP 1** Stop the engine. Set the parking brake and put the shift lever in “P”.
- STEP 2** Remove the mud, snow, or sand from around the stuck tire.
- STEP 3** Place wood, stones or some other material to help provide traction under the tires.
- STEP 4** Restart the engine.
- STEP 5** Turn off VSC. (→P. 260)
- STEP 6** Shift the shift lever to the “D” or “R” position and carefully apply the accelerator to free the vehicle.

### CAUTION

#### ■ When attempting to free a stuck vehicle

If you choose to rock the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear, to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or persons. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

#### ■ When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed. This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

### NOTICE

#### ■ To avoid damaging the transmission and other components

- Avoid spinning the wheels and do not rev the engine.
- If the vehicle remains stuck after trying these procedures, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.



## 6-1. Specifications

### Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)

#### Dimensions and weight

Overall length		196.5 in. (4990 mm)
Overall width		77.6 in. (1970 mm)
Overall height* <sup>1</sup>		75.6 in. (1920 mm) <sup>*2</sup> 75.2 in. (1910 mm) <sup>*3</sup> 73.4 in. (1865 mm) <sup>*4</sup>
Wheelbase		112.2 in. (2850 mm)
Tread	Front	64.6 in. (1640 mm)
	Rear	64.4 in. (1635 mm)
Vehicle capacity weight (Occupants + luggage)		1230 lb. (560 kg)
Towing capacity (trailer weight + cargo weight)	With brake	8500 lb. (3855 kg)
	Without brake	1653 lb. (750 kg)

\*1: Unladen vehicles

\*2: Vehicles with roof luggage carrier

\*3: Vehicles with an antenna and without roof luggage carrier

\*4: Vehicles without an antenna and roof luggage carrier

## Vehicle identification

### ■ Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.

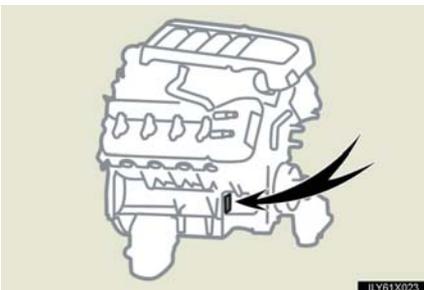


This number is stamped on the top left of the instrument panel.



This number is also on the Certification Label.

### ■ Engine number



The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.

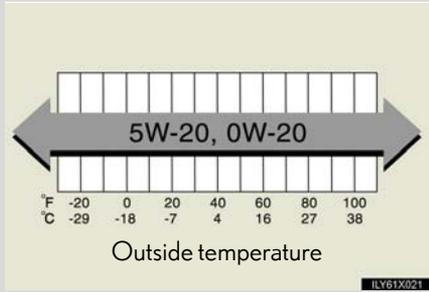
### Engine

Model	3UR-FE
Type	8-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	3.70 x 4.02 in. (94.0 x 102.0 mm)
Displacement	345.6 cu.in. (5663 cm <sup>3</sup> )
Valve clearance (engine cold)	Automatic adjustment
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

### Fuel

Fuel type	Premium unleaded gasoline only
Octane rating	91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher
Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	24.5 gal. (93 L, 20.4 Imp.gal.)

## Lubrication system

Oil capacity Drain and refill (Reference) With filter Without filter	7.4 qt. (7.0 L, 6.2 Imp.qt.) 7.0 qt. (6.6 L, 5.8 Imp.qt.)
Oil grade	ILSAC multigrade engine oil
Recommended oil viscosity	<p>Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the grade and viscosity shown below.</p> 

### Oil viscosity

- The 0W portion of the oil viscosity rating indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the oil viscosity when the oil is at its operating temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load condition.

### Cooling system

Capacity	17.6 qt. (16.7 L, 14.6 Imp.qt.)
Coolant type	<p>Use either of the following.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant”</li> <li>• Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology</li> </ul> <p>Do not use plain water alone.</p>

### Ignition system

Spark plug		
Make	DENSO	SK20HR11
Gap		0.043 in. (1.1 mm)

 NOTICE

**■ Iridium-tipped spark plugs**

Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust gap when tuning engine.

## Electrical system

Battery	
Open voltage at 68°F (20°C):	12.6 — 12.8 V Fully charged 12.2 — 12.4 V Half charged 11.8 — 12.0 V Discharged (Voltage is checked 20 minutes after the engine and all lights are turned off.)
Charging rates	5 A max.

## Differential

Oil capacity	
Front	2.01 qt. (1.90 L, 1.67 Imp.qt.)
Rear	4.44 qt. (4.20 L, 3.70 Imp.qt.)
Oil type and viscosity	Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent

“Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil” is filled in your Lexus vehicle at factory fill.

Use Lexus approved “Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil” or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

### Automatic transmission

Fluid capacity	With air-cooled type ATF cooler	12.6 qt. (11.9 L, 10.5 Imp.qt.)
	Without air-cooled type ATF cooler	12.3 qt. (11.6 L, 10.2 Imp.qt.)
Fluid type		Toyota Genuine ATF WS

The fluid capacity is the quantity of reference. If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

#### NOTICE

##### ■ Automatic transmission fluid type

Using transmission fluid other than “Toyota Genuine ATF WS” may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage the transmission of your vehicle.

### Transfer

Oil capacity	1.53 qt. (1.45 L, 1.28 Imp.qt.)
Oil type	Gear oil API GL-5
Recommended oil viscosity	SAE 75W-90

## Brakes

Pedal clearance <sup>*1</sup>	2.6 in. (67 mm) Min.
Pedal free play	0.04 — 0.24 in. (1.0 — 6.0 mm)
Brake pad wear limit	0.04 in. (1.0 mm)
Parking brake lining wear limit	0.04 in. (1.0 mm)
Parking brake lever travel <sup>*2</sup>	5 — 7 clicks
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3

\*1: Minimum pedal clearance from Tibia-pad when depressed with a force of 110 lbf (490 N, 50 kgf) while the engine is running

\*2: Parking brake lever travel when pulled up with a force of 45.0 lbf (200 N, 20.4 kgf)

## Chassis lubrication

Propeller shafts	Lithium base chassis grease, NLGI No.2 Molybdenum-disulfide lithium base chassis grease, NLGI No.2 or Lithium base chassis grease, NLGI No.2
Spider	
Slide yoke	

## Steering

Free play	Less than 1.18 in. (30 mm)
Power steering fluid type	Automatic transmission fluid DEXRON <sup>®</sup> II or III

## Suspension

Fluid type	Suspension fluid AHC
------------	----------------------

## Tires and wheels

Tire size	P285/60R18 114V, P285/50R20 111V
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	<p>Normal driving</p> <p>Front: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup> or bar)</p> <p>Rear: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup> or bar)</p> <p>Spare: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup> or bar)</p> <p>Trailer towing Add 2 psi (10 kPa, 0.1 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup> or bar) to the P285/50R20 rear tires.</p>
Wheel size	18 × 8J, 20 × 8 1/2J
Wheel nut torque	97 ft•lbf (131 N•m, 13.4 kgf•m)

## Light bulbs

	Light Bulbs	Bulb No.	W	Type
Exterior	Headlights			
	Low beam	—	55	A
	High beam	9005	60	B
	Front turn signal lights	3457	28	C
	Parking lights	—	5	C
	Front fog lights	—	55	A
	Rear turn signal lights	—	21	C
	Back-up lights	921	16	C
Running board lights	—	3.8	C	
Interior	Front interior light	—	8	C
	Rear interior lights	—	8	C
	Vanity lights	—	2	D
	Door courtesy lights	—	5	C
	Glove box light	—	1.2	C
	Luggage compartment light	—	8	E
	Deck light*	—	5	E

A: H11 halogen bulbs

B: HB3 halogen bulbs

C: Wedge base bulbs

D: Single end bulbs

E: Double end bulbs

\*: Vehicles with power back door

## 6-1. Specifications

### Fuel information

Your vehicle must use only unleaded gasoline.

Premium unleaded gasoline with an Octane Rating 91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher required for optimum engine performance.

At minimum, the gasoline you use should meet the specifications of ASTM D4814 in the U.S.A. and CGSB3.5-M93 in Canada.

---

#### ■ Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your Lexus has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

#### ■ If premium gasoline is not available

If 91 Octane cannot be obtained, you may use unleaded gasoline with an Octane Rating as low as 87 (Research Octane Number 91).

However, use of unleaded fuel with an Octane Rating lower than 91 may result in engine knocking or drastically reduce output to protect itself while driving with a heavy load. Persistent knocking can lead to engine damage and should be corrected by refueling with higher octane unleaded gasoline.

#### ■ If your engine knocks

- Consult your Lexus dealer.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

#### ■ Gasoline quality

In very few cases, driveability problems may be caused by the brand of gasoline you are using. If driveability problems persist, try changing the brand of gasoline. If this does not correct the problem, consult your Lexus dealer.

### ■ Gasoline quality standards

- Automotive manufacturers in the US, Europe and Japan have developed a specification for fuel quality called World-Wide Fuel Charter (WWFC) that is expected to be applied worldwide.
- The WWFC consists of four categories that are based on required emission levels. In the US, category 4 has been adopted.
- The WWFC improves air quality by lowering emissions in vehicle fleets, and customer satisfaction through better performance.

### ■ Lexus recommends the use of gasoline containing detergent additives

- Lexus recommends the use of gasoline that contains detergent additives to avoid build-up of engine deposits.
- All gasoline sold in the US contains detergent additives to clean and/or keep clean intake systems.

### ■ Lexus recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline

Cleaner burning gasoline, including reformulated gasoline that contains oxygenates such as ethanol or MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) is available in many areas.

Lexus recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline and appropriately blended reformulated gasoline. These types of gasoline provide excellent vehicle performance, reduce vehicle emissions and improve air quality.

### ■ Lexus does not recommend blended gasoline

- Lexus allows the use of oxygenate blended gasoline where the oxygenate content is up to 10% ethanol or 15% MTBE.
- If you use gasohol in your Lexus, be sure that it has an octane rating no lower than 87.
- Lexus DOES NOT recommend the use of gasoline containing methanol.

### ■ Lexus does not recommend gasoline containing MMT

Some gasoline contains octane enhancing additive called MMT (Methylcyclopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl).

Lexus DOES NOT recommend the use of gasoline that contains MMT. If fuel containing MMT is used, your emission control system may be adversely affected.

The malfunction indicator lamp on the instrument cluster may come on. If this happens, contact your Lexus dealer for service.

 NOTICE

■ **Notice on gasoline quality**

- Do not use leaded gasoline.

Leaded gasoline can cause damage to your vehicle's three-way catalytic converters causing the emission control system to malfunction.

- Do not use gasohol other than that stated here.

Other gasohol may cause fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems.

- Using unleaded gasoline with an octane number or rating lower than that stated here will cause persistent heavy knocking.

At worst, this will lead to engine damage.

■ **Fuel-related poor driveability**

If after using a different type of fuel, poor driveability is encountered (poor hot starting, vaporization, engine knocking, etc.), discontinue the use of that type of fuel.

■ **When refueling with gasohol**

Take care not to spill gasohol. It can damage your vehicle's paint.

## 6-1. Specifications

# Tire information

### Typical tire symbols



- 1** Tire size (→P. 697)
- 2** Summer tire or all season tire (→P. 583)  
An all season tire has “M+S” on the sidewall. A tire not marked “M+S” is a summer tire.
- 3** Uniform tire quality grading  
For details, see “Uniform tire quality grading” that follows.
- 4** DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN) (→P. 696)
- 5** Tire ply composition and materials  
Ply is a layer of rubber-coated parallel cords. Cords are the strands which form the plies in a tire.
- 6** Location of treadwear indicators (→P. 579)
- 7** Load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure (→P. 700)
- 8** Maximum cold tire inflation pressure (→P. 700)  
This means the pressure to which a tire may be inflated.

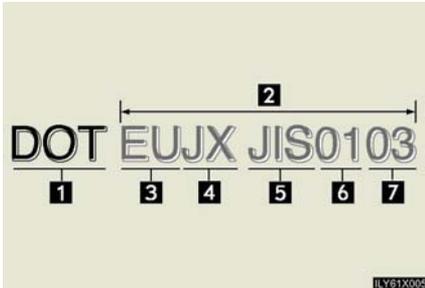
### 9 TUBELESS or TUBE TYPE

A tubeless tire does not have a tube and air is directly filled in the tire. A tube type tire has a tube inside the tire and the tube maintains the air pressure.

### 10 Radial tires or bias-ply tires

A radial tire has RADIAL on the sidewall. A tire not marked RADIAL is a bias-ply tire.

## Typical DOT and tire identification number (TIN)

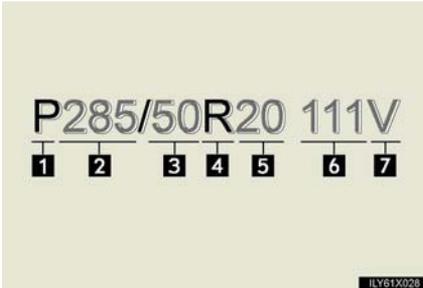


- 1 DOT symbol\*
- 2 Tire Identification Number (TIN)
- 3 Tire manufacturer's identification mark
- 4 Tire size code
- 5 Manufacturer's optional tire type code (3 or 4 letters)
- 6 Manufacturing week
- 7 Manufacturing year

\*: The DOT symbol certifies that the tire conforms to applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

## Tire size

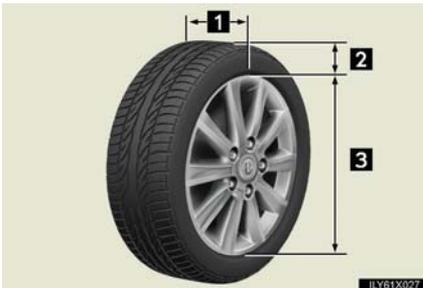
### Typical tire size information



The illustration indicates typical tire size.

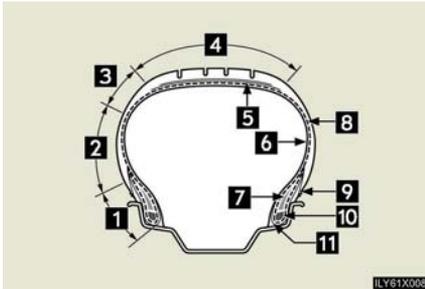
- 1** Tire use  
(P = Passenger car,  
T = Temporary use)
- 2** Section width (millimeters)
- 3** Aspect ratio  
(tire height to section width)
- 4** Tire construction code  
(R = Radial, D = Diagonal)
- 5** Wheel diameter (inches)
- 6** Load index (2 or 3 digits)
- 7** Speed symbol  
(alphabet with one letter)

### Tire dimensions



- 1** Section width
- 2** Tire height
- 3** Wheel diameter

## Tire section names



- 1 Bead
- 2 Sidewall
- 3 Shoulder
- 4 Tread
- 5 Belt
- 6 Inner liner
- 7 Reinforcing rubber
- 8 Carcass
- 9 Rim lines
- 10 Bead wires
- 11 Chafer

## Uniform Tire Quality Grading

This information has been prepared in accordance with regulations issued by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration of the U.S.A. Department of Transportation.

It provides the purchasers and/or prospective purchasers of Lexus vehicles with information on uniform tire quality grading.

Your Lexus dealer will help answer any questions you may have as you read this information.

### ■ DOT quality grades

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades. Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

## ■ Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1 - 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

## ■ Traction AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C, and they represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete.

A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on braking (straight ahead) traction tests and does not include cornering (turning) traction.

## ■ Temperature A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109.

Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning: The temperature grades for this tire are established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded.

Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

### Glossary of tire terminology

Tire related term	Meaning
Cold tire inflation pressure	Tire pressure when the vehicle has been parked for three hours or more, or has not been driven more than 1 mile or 1.5 km under that condition
Maximum inflation pressure	The maximum cold inflated pressure to which a tire may be inflated, shown on the sidewall of the tire
Recommended inflation pressure	Cold tire inflation pressure recommended by a manufacturer
Accessory weight	The combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not)
Curb weight	The weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment, including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil and coolant, and if so equipped, air conditioning and additional weight optional engine
Maximum loaded vehicle weight	The sum of: (a) Curb weight (b) Accessory weight (c) Vehicle capacity weight (d) Production options weight
Normal occupant weight	150 lb. (68 kg) times the number of occupants specified in the second column of Table 1* that follows
Occupant distribution	Distribution of occupants in a vehicle as specified in the third column of Table 1* below

Tire related term	Meaning
Production options weight	The combined weight of installed regular production options weighing over 5 lb. (2.3 kg) in excess of the standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim
Rim	A metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated
Rim diameter (Wheel diameter)	Nominal diameter of the bead seat
Rim size designation	Rim diameter and width
Rim type designation	The industry manufacturer's designation for a rim by style or code
Rim width	Nominal distance between rim flanges
Vehicle capacity weight (Total load capacity)	The rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lb. (68 kg) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity
Vehicle maximum load on the tire	The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight, and dividing by two
Vehicle normal load on the tire	The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with Table 1* below), and dividing it by two
Weather side	The surface area of the rim not covered by the inflated tire
Bead	The part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim

Tire related term	Meaning
Bead separation	A breakdown of the bond between components in the bead
Bias ply tire	A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at alternate angles substantially less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread
Carcass	The tire structure, except tread and sidewall rubber which, when inflated, bears the load
Chunking	The breaking away of pieces of the tread or sidewall
Cord	The strands forming the plies in the tire
Cord separation	The parting of cords from adjacent rubber compounds
Cracking	Any parting within the tread, sidewall, or innerliner of the tire extending to cord material
CT	A pneumatic tire with an inverted flange tire and rim system in which the rim is designed with rim flanges pointed radially inward and the tire is designed to fit on the underside of the rim in a manner that encloses the rim flanges inside the air cavity of the tire
Extra load tire	A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire
Groove	The space between two adjacent tread ribs
Innerliner	The layer(s) forming the inside surface of a tubeless tire that contains the inflating medium within the tire
Innerliner separation	The parting of the innerliner from cord material in the carcass

Tire related term	Meaning
Intended outboard sidewall	(a)The sidewall that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same molding on the other sidewall of the tire, or (b)The outward facing sidewall of asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle
Light truck (LT) tire	A tire designated by its manufacturer as primarily intended for use on lightweight trucks or multipurpose passenger vehicles
Load rating	The maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure
Maximum load rating	The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire
Maximum permissible inflation pressure	The maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated
Measuring rim	The rim on which a tire is fitted for physical dimension requirements
Open splice	Any parting at any junction of tread, sidewall, or inner-liner that extends to cord material
Outer diameter	The overall diameter of an inflated new tire
Overall width	The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs

Tire related term	Meaning
Passenger car tire	A tire intended for use on passenger cars, multipurpose passenger vehicles, and trucks, that have a gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) of 10,000 lb. or less
Ply	A layer of rubber-coated parallel cords
Ply separation	A parting of rubber compound between adjacent plies
Pneumatic tire	A mechanical device made of rubber, chemicals, fabric and steel or other materials, that, when mounted on an automotive wheel, provides the traction and contains the gas or fluid that sustains the load
Radial ply tire	A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread
Reinforced tire	A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire
Section width	The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, excluding elevations due to labeling, decoration, or protective bands
Sidewall	That portion of a tire between the tread and bead
Sidewall separation	The parting of the rubber compound from the cord material in the sidewall

Tire related term	Meaning
Snow tire	A tire that attains a traction index equal to or greater than 110, compared to the ASTM E-1136 Standard Reference Test Tire, when using the snow traction test as described in ASTM F-1805-00, Standard Test Method for Single Wheel Driving Traction in a Straight Line on Snow-and Ice-Covered Surfaces, and which is marked with an Alpine Symbol (  ) on at least one sidewall
Test rim	The rim on which a tire is fitted for testing, and may be any rim listed as appropriate for use with that tire
Tread	That portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road
Tread rib	A tread section running circumferentially around a tire
Tread separation	Pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass
Treadwear indicators (TWI)	The projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread
Wheel-holding fixture	The fixture used to hold the wheel and tire assembly securely during testing

\*: Table 1—Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Designated seating capacity, Number of occupants	Vehicle normal load, Number of occupants	Occupant distribution in a normally loaded vehicle
2 through 4	2	2 in front
5 through 10	3	2 in front, 1 in second seat
11 through 15	5	2 in front, 1 in second seat, 1 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat
16 through 20	7	2 in front, 2 in second seat, 2 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat

## 6-2. Customization

### Customizable features

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to your preferences. Programming these preferences requires specialized equipment and may be performed by an authorized Lexus dealership.

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact your Lexus dealer.

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Smart access system with push-button start (→P. 30)	Smart access system with push-button start	ON	OFF
	Operation signal (Emergency flashers)	ON	OFF
	Operation signal (Buzzer)	ON	OFF
Door lock (→P. 47)	Unlocking using a key	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps	All doors unlocked in one step
	Speed-detecting automatic door lock function	OFF	ON
	Shift the shift lever to position other than "P" locks all doors	ON	OFF
	Shift the shift lever to "P" unlocks all doors	ON	OFF
	Opening driver's door unlocks all doors	OFF	ON

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Wireless remote control (→P. 44)	Wireless remote control	ON	OFF
	Operation signal (Emergency flashers)	ON	OFF
	Open door warning function (when locking the vehicle)	ON	OFF
	Unlocking operation	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps	All doors unlocked in one step
	Time elapsed before automatic door lock function is activated if door is not opened after being unlocked	60 seconds	OFF
			30 seconds
			120 seconds
	Power back door operation*1	Push and hold	One short push
			Push twice
			OFF

## 6-2. Customization

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Power back door*1 (→P. 53)	Switch operation	Push and hold	One short push
	Operation signal	OFF	ON
	Wireless remote control linked operation (one-motion)	ON*2	OFF
Power windows (→P. 100)	Mechanical key linked operation (close)	ON	OFF
	Mechanical key linked operation (open)	ON	OFF
	Wireless remote control linked operation (open)	ON	OFF
	Linked entry function	ON	OFF
Automatic light control system (→P. 186)	Light sensor sensitivity	Level 3	Level 1 to 5
	Daytime running light system	ON	OFF*3
	Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn off after doors are closed	30 seconds	0 seconds
			60 seconds
90 seconds			

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Rear window wiper and washer (→P. 193)	Switching operation when the vehicle is stationary	ON	OFF
	Drip prevention function	ON	OFF
	Rear window wiper operation linked with washer	ON	OFF
	Linked operation when the shift lever in "R" position	ON	OFF
	Times of the linked operation when the shift lever in "R" position	Once	Continuously
Illumination (→P. 494)	Time period before lights turn off	15 seconds	7.5 seconds
			30 seconds
	Operation after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off	ON	OFF
	Operation when the doors are unlocked	ON	OFF
Operation when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person (When the interior light switch [ON/DOOR/OFF] is DOOR)	ON	OFF	

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Moon roof (→P.102)	Mechanical key linked operation (open)	ON	OFF
	Mechanical key linked operation (close)	ON	OFF
	Linked operation of components when door key is used	Slide only	Tilt only
	Wireless remote control linked operation (open)	ON	OFF
	Linked operation of components when wireless remote control used	Slide only	Tilt only
	Linked entry function	ON	OFF

\*1: If equipped

\*2: In this case, the power back door operation will be made only by push and hold.

\*3: Vehicles sold outside Canada

**Multi-information display (→P.183)**

Available languages

English (U.S.A.), English (UK), French, German, Spanish, Italian, Japanese, Simplified Chinese and Traditional Chinese

## 6-3. Initialization

### Items to initialize

The following items must be initialized for normal system operation in cases such as after the battery is reconnected, or maintenance is performed on the vehicle.

Item	When to initialize	Reference
Power back door*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• After reconnecting or changing the battery with power back door opened</li><li>• After changing a fuse with power back door opened</li></ul>	P. 55
Engine oil maintenance data	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• After changing engine oil</li></ul>	P. 567
Tire pressure warning system	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• When the set tire pressure has been changed before towing with the P285/50R20 tires.</li><li>• When rotating the tires in above situation.</li></ul>	P. 580

\*: If equipped

## Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying the Lexus Division of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc. (Toll-free: 1-800-25-LEXUS).

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or the Lexus Division of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Ave, S.E., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

## Seat belt instructions for Canadian owners (in French)

The following is a French explanation of seat belt instructions extracted from the seat belt section in this manual.

See the seat belt section for more detailed seat belt instructions in English.

### Utilisation adéquate des ceintures de sécurité



- Tirez sur la ceinture épaulière jusqu'à ce qu'elle recouvre entièrement l'épaule; elle ne doit cependant pas toucher le cou ni glisser de l'épaule.
- Placez la ceinture abdominale le plus bas possible sur les hanches.
- Réglez la position du dossier du siège. Tenez-vous assis dans le fond du siège, le dos droit.
- Ne vrillez pas la ceinture de sécurité.

## Entretien et soin

### ■ Ceintures de sécurité

Avec un tissu ou une éponge, nettoyez à l'aide d'un savon doux et de l'eau tiède. Vérifiez aussi les ceintures régulièrement pour vous assurer qu'elles ne présentent pas d'usure excessive, d'effilochage ou de coupures.

### ⚠ ATTENTION

- Lorsque vous utilisez la ceinture de sécurité centrale de la troisième rangée de sièges



N'utilisez pas la ceinture de sécurité centrale de la troisième rangée de sièges si l'une des boucles est retirée. Fixer une seule boucle pourrait occasionner des blessures graves, voire mortelles, en cas de freinage brusque ou de collision.

- Dommages et usure de la ceinture de sécurité

Vérifiez périodiquement le système de ceintures de sécurité. Assurez-vous qu'il n'y a pas de coupures, d'effilochures ni de pièces desserrées. N'utilisez pas une ceinture de sécurité endommagée avant qu'elle soit remplacée. Une ceinture de sécurité endommagée ne peut pas protéger les occupants contre des blessures graves, voire mortelles.

## Abbreviation list

# Abbreviation/Acronym list

ABBREVIATIONS	MEANING
A/C	Air Conditioning
ABS	Anti-lock Brake System
AFS	Adaptive Front-lighting System
AHC	Active Height Control Suspension
ALR	Automatic Locking Retractor
AVS	Adaptive Variable Suspension
CRS	Child Restraint System
DISP	Display
ECU	Electronic Control Unit
EDR	Event Data Recorder
ELR	Emergency Locking Retractor
GAWR	Gross Axle Weight Rating
GCWR	Gross Combination Weight Rating
GVWR	Gross Vehicle Weight Rating
GPS	Global Positioning System
HI	High
I/M	Emission inspection and maintenance
INT	Intermittent
L	Left
LED	Light Emitting Diode
LO	Low
M + S	Mud and Snow
MMT	Methylcy clopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl
MTBE	Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether

ABBREVIATIONS	MEANING
N	Normal
OBD	On Board Diagnostics
PCS	Pre-Collision System
PWR	Power
R	Right
RSCA	Roll Sensing of Curtain Shield Airbag
SRS	Supplemental Restraint System
TIN	Tire Identification Number
TPMS	Tire Pressure Monitoring (Warning) System
TRAC	Traction Control
VGRS	Variable Gear Ratio Steering
VIN	Vehicle Identification Number
VSC	Vehicle Stability Control

<b>A</b>	<b>A/C</b>	
	Air conditioning filter .....	594
	Automatic air conditioning system .....	314
	<b>ABS</b> .....	258
	<b>Active head restraint</b> .....	58
	<b>Active height control suspension</b> .....	235
	<b>Active traction control</b> .....	258
	<b>Adaptive front lighting system</b> .....	187
	<b>Adaptive Variable Suspension</b> .....	246
	<b>AFS</b> .....	187
	<b>AHC</b> .....	235
	<b>Air conditioning filter</b> .....	594
	<b>Air conditioning system</b>	
	Air conditioning filter .....	594
	Automatic air conditioning system .....	314
	<b>Airbags</b>	
	Airbag operating conditions.....	120
	Airbag precautions for your child.....	124
	Airbag warning light .....	639
	Curtain shield airbag operating conditions .....	120
	Curtain shield airbag precautions .....	124
	Front passenger occupant classification system.....	131
	General airbag precautions .....	124
	Locations of airbags.....	116
	Modification and disposal of airbags.....	129
	Proper driving posture .....	114, 124
	Roll sensing of curtain shield airbags off switch.....	130
	Side airbag operating conditions .....	120
	Side airbag precautions.....	124
	SRS airbags.....	116
	<b>Alarm</b> .....	110
	<b>Antenna</b> .....	341
	<b>Anti-lock brake system</b> .....	258
	<b>Armrest</b> .....	519
	<b>Ashtrays</b> .....	512
	<b>Audio system</b>	
	Antenna.....	341
	AUX adapter .....	407
	CD player/changer .....	344
	DVD player/changer .....	344
	MP3/WMA disc.....	351
	Optimal use .....	382
	Radio .....	335
	Steering wheel audio switch.....	408
	Video CD.....	355
	<b>Automatic air conditioning system</b> .....	314
	<b>Automatic headlight leveling system</b> .....	188
	<b>Automatic light control system</b> .....	186
	<b>Automatic transmission</b>	
	Automatic transmission .....	170
	If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P.....	666
	S mode.....	172
	<b>AUX adapter</b> .....	407
	<b>Auxiliary box</b> .....	506
	<b>AVS</b> .....	246

**B**

<b>Back-up lights</b>	
Replacing light bulbs .....	623
Wattage .....	691
<b>Back door</b>	
Back door .....	52
Wireless remote control key .....	44
<b>Battery</b>	
Checking .....	575
If the vehicle has discharged	
battery .....	672
Preparing and checking	
before winter .....	282
<b>Bluetooth®</b> .....	448
<b>Bottle holder</b> .....	504
<b>Brake</b>	
Fluid .....	689
Parking brake .....	176
<b>Brake assist</b> .....	258
<b>Break-in tips</b> .....	157
<b>Brightness control</b>	
Instrument light control .....	178

**C**

<b>Care</b>	
Exterior .....	544
Interior .....	547
Seat belts .....	548
<b>Cargo capacity</b> .....	274
<b>Cargo hooks</b> .....	521
<b>CD changer</b> .....	344
<b>CD player</b> .....	344
<b>Center differential</b>	
lock/unlock switch .....	247
<b>Chains</b> .....	282

**Child restraint system**

Booster seats, definition .....	137
Booster seats, installation .....	142
Convertible seats, definition .....	137
Convertible seats, installation .....	142
Infant seats, definition .....	137
Infant seats, installation .....	142
Installing CRS with ISOFIX	
rigid anchor .....	148
Installing CRS with seat	
belts .....	143
Installing CRS with top	
straps .....	150

**Child safety**

Airbag precautions .....	124
Battery precautions .....	576, 675
Child-protectors .....	48
Child restraint system .....	137
How your child should wear	
the seat belt .....	90
Installing child restraints .....	142
Moon roof precautions .....	104
Power window lock switch .....	100
Power window precautions .....	101
Removed key battery	
precautions .....	598
Seat belt precautions .....	91
Seat heater	
precautions .....	518
Child-protectors .....	48
Cigarette lighter .....	513
<b>Cleaning</b>	
Exterior .....	544
Interior .....	547
Seat belts .....	548

Clock*	510
Condenser	570
Console box	500
Cool box	500
Cooling system	
Engine overheating	676
Crawl Control	254
Cruise control	196, 200
Cup holder	503
Curtain shield airbags	116
Customizable features	706
<b>D</b> Daytime running light system	187
Defogger	
Rear window	330
Dimension	682
Dinghy towing	301
Display	
Crawl Control display	254
Intuitive parking assist system display	212
Shift position and shift range	172
Trip information	184
Warning message	648
Do-it-yourself maintenance	556
Door courtesy lights	
Door courtesy lights	494
Wattage	691
Door lock	
Back door	52
Side door	47
Wireless remote control key	44

Doors	
Door glasses	100
Door lock	30, 44, 47
Side mirrors	97
Driver's seat belt reminder light	640
Driving	
Break-in tips	157
Correct posture	114
Off-road precautions	269
Procedures	156
Winter driving tips	282
Driving position memory	77
DVD player/changer	344
Dynamic radar cruise control	200

<b>E</b> Electronic key	
If your electronic key battery is discharged	597
Emergency, in case of	
If the electronic key does not operate properly	669
If the engine will not start	664
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P	666
If the vehicle has discharged battery	672
If the warning buzzer sounds	638
If the warning light turns on	638
If the warning message is displayed	648
If you cannot operate back door opener	668
If you have a flat tire	651
If you lose your keys	667

If you think something is wrong.....	634
If your vehicle becomes stuck .....	679
If your vehicle needs to be towed.....	628
If your vehicle overheats.....	676
<b>Engine</b>	
Compartment .....	561
Engine switch .....	167
Hood .....	560
How to start the engine .....	166
Identification number.....	683
If the engine will not start.....	664
Ignition switch.....	167
Overheating.....	676
<b>Engine coolant</b>	
Capacity.....	686
Checking.....	569
Preparing and checking before winter.....	282
<b>Engine coolant temperature gauge</b> .....	177
<b>Engine immobilizer system</b> .....	108
<b>Engine oil</b>	
Capacity.....	685
Checking.....	563
Preparing and checking before winter.....	282
<b>Engine oil maintenance data</b> .....	567
<b>Engine switch</b> .....	166
<b>Event data recorder</b> .....	636

<b>F</b> First-aid kit holder.....	522
Floor mat .....	520
<b>Fluid</b>	
Brake.....	689
Power steering.....	689
Washer .....	578
<b>Fog lights</b>	
Replacing light bulbs.....	620
Switch.....	189
Wattage.....	691
<b>Four-wheel drive system</b> .....	247
<b>Front fog lights</b>	
Replacing light bulbs.....	620
Switch.....	189
Wattage.....	691
<b>Front passenger occupant classification system</b> .....	131
<b>Front passenger's seat belt reminder light</b> .....	640
<b>Front seats</b>	
Adjustment.....	58
Driving position memory .....	77
<b>Front turn signal lights</b>	
Replacing light bulbs.....	622
Wattage.....	691
<b>Fuel</b>	
Capacity .....	684
Fuel gauge.....	177
Fuel pump shut off system.....	635
Information .....	692
Refueling.....	105
Type.....	684

\*: Refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Fuel door ..... 105  
 Fuel filler door ..... 105  
 Fuel pump shut off system ..... 635  
 Fuses ..... 599

**G** Garage door opener ..... 523  
 Gauges ..... 177  
 Glove box ..... 499  
 Glove box light ..... 499

**H** Hands-free system ..... 448  
 Head restraints  
     Adjusting ..... 81  
 Headlight cleaner ..... 195  
 Headlights  
     Replacing light bulbs ..... 615  
     Switch ..... 186  
     Wattage ..... 691

Heaters  
     Seat heaters ..... 516  
     Side mirror ..... 330  
 Hill-start assist control ..... 258  
 Hood ..... 560  
 Hooks  
     Cargo hook ..... 521  
     Tie-down hooks ..... 521

**I** I/M test ..... 555  
 Identification  
     Engine ..... 683  
     Vehicle ..... 683

Ignition  
     Engine switch ..... 166  
     Keys ..... 26  
     Ignition switch ..... 166  
 Ignition switch ..... 166  
 Illuminated entry system ..... 494  
 Indicator lights ..... 180  
 Inside rear view mirror ..... 96  
 Instrument panel light  
     control ..... 178  
 Interior lights  
     Interior lights list ..... 494  
     Switch ..... 495  
     Wattage ..... 691  
 Intuitive parking assist ..... 211

**J** Jack  
     Replacing the wheel ..... 651  
 Jack handle ..... 654

**K** Keyless entry ..... 44  
 Keys  
     Electronic key ..... 26  
     If you lose your keys ..... 667  
     If your electronic key battery  
         is discharged ..... 597, 669  
     Ignition switch ..... 166  
     Keyless entry ..... 44  
     Key number ..... 28  
     Keys ..... 26  
     Mechanical key ..... 26  
     Wireless remote control key ..... 44  
 Knee airbags ..... 116

<b>L</b>	<b>Language</b>	
	Multi-information display.....	711
	<b>Lexus Link System</b> .....	529
	<b>License plate lights</b>	
	Replacing light bulbs .....	615
	<b>Light bulbs</b>	
	Replacing.....	615
	Wattage .....	691
	<b>Lights</b>	
	Door courtesy lights .....	494
	Fog light switch.....	189
	Headlights switch.....	186
	Interior light switch.....	495
	Personal light switch.....	496
	Replacing light bulbs .....	615
	Turn signal lever.....	175
	Vanity lights.....	509
	Wattage .....	691
	<b>Load capacity</b> .....	281
	<b>Lock steering column</b> .....	168
	<b>Luggage compartment lights</b>	
	Switch.....	497
	Wattage .....	691
<b>M</b>	<b>Maintenance</b>	
	Do-it-yourself maintenance.....	556
	General maintenance.....	552
	Maintenance data .....	682
	Maintenance requirements.....	550
	<b>Meter</b>	
	Instrument panel light control .....	178
	Meters.....	177
	<b>Micro dust and pollen filter</b> .....	320

<b>Mirrors</b>	
Inside rear view mirror .....	96
Mirror position memory.....	77
Side mirrors .....	97
Vanity mirrors.....	509
<b>Moon roof</b> .....	102
<b>MP3 disc</b> .....	351
<b>Multi-information display</b> .....	183
<b>O</b>	
<b>Odometer</b> .....	177
<b>Off road precautions</b> .....	269
<b>Oil</b>	
Engine oil.....	563
<b>Opener</b>	
Back door .....	52
Fuel filler door .....	105
Hood.....	560
<b>Outside rear view mirrors</b>	
Adjusting and folding.....	97
<b>Outside temperature display</b> .....	325
<b>Overhead console</b> .....	502
<b>Overheating, Engine</b> .....	676

<b>P</b>	<b>Parking brake</b> .....	176
	<b>Parking lights</b>	
	Replacing light bulbs.....	621
	Switch.....	186
	Wattage.....	691
	<b>PCS</b> .....	265
	<b>Personal lights</b>	
	Switch.....	496
	<b>Power back door</b> .....	53
	<b>Power outlet</b> .....	514

**R**

Power steering  
 Fluid ..... 689  
 Power windows ..... 100  
 Pre-collision system ..... 265

Radar cruise control ..... 200  
 Radiator ..... 570  
 Radio ..... 335  
 Rear air conditioning  
 system ..... 326  
 Rear seat  
 Adjustment ..... 60  
 Tumbling second seats ..... 61  
 Tumbling third seats ..... 64  
 Rear seat entertainment system ..... 412  
 Rear step bumper ..... 54  
 Rear turn signal lights  
 Replacing light bulbs ..... 624  
 Wattage ..... 691  
 Rear view monitor system ..... 221  
 Rear window defogger ..... 330  
 Rear window wiper ..... 193  
 Replacing  
 Key battery ..... 597  
 Fuses ..... 599  
 Light bulbs ..... 615  
 Tires ..... 651  
 Reporting safety defects for  
 U.S. owners ..... 714  
 Roll sensing of curtain shield  
 airbags off switch ..... 130  
 Roof luggage carrier ..... 274

**S**

**Seat belts**  
 Adjusting the seat belt ..... 85  
 Automatic Locking Retractor ..... 89  
 Child restraint system  
 installation ..... 142  
 Cleaning and maintaining  
 the seat belts ..... 548  
 Emergency Locking  
 Retractor ..... 88  
 How to wear your seat belt ..... 85  
 How your child should wear  
 the seat belt ..... 90  
 Pre-collision seat belts ..... 88  
 Pregnant women, proper seat  
 belt use ..... 89  
 Reminder light ..... 640  
 Seat belt instructions for  
 Canadian owners ..... 715  
 Seat belt pretensioners ..... 88  
**Seat heaters** ..... 516  
**Seat ventilators** ..... 516

**Seats**  
 Adjustment  
 precautions ..... 59  
 Child seats/child restraint  
 system installation ..... 142  
 Cleaning ..... 547  
 Driver's seat position  
 memory ..... 77  
 Front seat adjustment ..... 58  
 Head restraint ..... 81  
 Properly sitting in the seat ..... 114  
 Rear seat adjustment ..... 60  
 Seat heaters ..... 516

**Service reminder**  
 indicators ..... 180

Shift lever	
Automatic transmission.....	170
If the shift lever cannot	
be shifted from "P" .....	666
Side airbags.....	116
Side marker light .....	186
Side mirror	
Adjusting and folding .....	97
Mirror position memory .....	77
Smart access system with	
push-button start	
Entry function .....	30
Starting the engine.....	166
Spare tire	
Inflation pressure .....	690
Spare tire .....	651
Spark plug.....	686
Specifications.....	682
Speech command switch*	
Speedometer .....	177
Steering	
Column lock release .....	168
Steering wheel	
Audio switches.....	408
Adjustment .....	94
Steering wheel position	
memory .....	77
Stop lights	
Replacing light bulbs .....	615
Storage compartment.....	521
Storage feature .....	498
Storage precautions .....	274
Stuck	
If your vehicle becomes	
stuck .....	679

Sun visors .....	508
Sunshade	
Roof.....	103
Switch	
ECT switch.....	171
Engine switch.....	166
Fog light switch.....	189
Ignition switch.....	166
Light switches .....	186
Power back door.....	53
Power door lock switch .....	47
Power window switch.....	100
Rear window wiper and	
washer switch.....	193
Window lock switch.....	100
Wipers and washer	
switch.....	190, 193

<b>T</b> Tachometer .....	177
Tail lights	
Replacing light bulbs.....	615
Switch.....	186
Talk switch .....	315, 333, 460
Telephone switch.....	448
Theft deterrent system	
Alarm.....	110
Engine immobilizer system.....	108
Tie-down hooks.....	521
Tire inflation pressure .....	588
Tire pressure warning system .....	579
Tire information	
Glossary.....	700
Size.....	690
Tire identification number.....	696
Uniform tire quality grading.....	698

\*: Refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Tires	
Chains .....	282
Checking .....	579
If you have a flat tire .....	651
Inflation pressure .....	588
Replacing .....	655
Rotating tires .....	579
Size .....	690
Snow tires .....	282
Spare tire .....	651
Tools .....	651
Total load capacity .....	682
Touch screen .....	304
Towing	
Dinghy towing .....	301
Emergency towing .....	629
Trailer towing .....	287
Traction control .....	258
TRAC .....	258
Trailer towing .....	287
Trip information display .....	183
Trip meter .....	177
Turn signal lights	
Replacing light bulbs .....	622, 624
Switch .....	175
Wattage .....	691

<b>V</b> Vanity lights	
Vanity lights .....	509
Wattage .....	691
Vanity mirrors .....	509
Variable gear ratio steering .....	258
Vehicle identification	
number .....	683
Vehicle stability control .....	258
Ventilators .....	516

VGRS .....	258
VSC .....	258

**W** Warning buzzers

Brake system .....	638
Open door .....	640
Seat belt reminder .....	640

Warning lights

Anti-lock brake system .....	639
Brake system .....	638
Charging system .....	639
Fuel level .....	640
Malfunction indicator lamp .....	639
Master warning light .....	641
Open door .....	640
Pre-collision system .....	639
Seat belt reminder light .....	640
SRS airbags .....	639
Tire pressure .....	640
Unengaged "Park" .....	641

Warning messages .....

Warning reflector holder .....

Washer

Checking .....	578
Preparing and checking	
before winter .....	282
Switch .....	190, 193

Washing and waxing .....

Weight .....

Wheels .....

Wide view front & side monitor .....

Window glasses .....

Window lock switch .....

Windows	
Power windows .....	100
Rear window defogger .....	330
Washer .....	190, 193
Windshield wipers .....	190, 193
Windshield wiper de-icer .....	331
Wireless remote control key	
Replacing the battery .....	597
Wireless remote control key .....	44
WMA disc .....	351

## What to do if...

# What to do if...



A tire punctures

P. 651 If you have a flat tire



The engine does not start

P. 664 If the engine will not start

P. 108 Engine immobilizer system

P. 672 If the battery is discharged



The shift lever cannot be moved out

P. 666 If the shift lever cannot be shifted



The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone

P. 676 If your vehicle overheats



Steam can be seen coming from under the hood



The key is lost

P. 667 If you lose your keys



The battery runs out

P. 672 If the battery is discharged



The doors cannot be locked

P. 47 Side doors

P. 52 Back door



The horn begins to sound

P. 110 Alarm



The vehicle is stuck in mud or sand

P. 679 If the vehicle becomes stuck

 The warning light or indicator light comes on

P. 638 If a warning light turns on



nWarning lights

**BRAKE** Brake system warning light  
or  
 P. 638

**PCS** Pre-collision system warning light P. 639

 Tire pressure warning light P. 640

 Charging system warning light P. 639

 Open door warning light P. 640

 Malfunction indicator lamp  
or  
 P. 639

 Low fuel level warning light P. 640

 SRS warning light P. 639

**PASSENGER**  Front passenger's seat belt reminder light P. 640

**ABS** ABS warning light  
or  
 P. 639

**A/T P** Unengaged "Park" warning light P. 641

 Master warning light P. 641

## GAS STATION INFORMATION



Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	24.5 gal. (93 L, 20.4 Imp.gal.)	
Fuel type	Premium unleaded gasoline only	P. 684
Cold tire inflation pressure		P. 690
Engine oil capacity Drain and refill (Reference)	qt., (L, Imp.qt.) With filter 7.4 (7.0, 6.2) Without filter 7.0 (6.6, 5.8)	
Engine oil type	"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent Oil grade: ILSAC multigrade engine oil	P. 685